Ceremonial:

FOR THE USE OF THE

CATHOLIC CHURCHES

IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Published by order of the First Council of Baltimore,

WITH THE APPROBATION OF THE HOLY SEE.

THIRD EDITION,

CAREFULLY REVISED, AND CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED,

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS.

BALTIMORE:
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY KELLY & PIET,
No. 174 Baltimore Street.
1865.

BX1971
.A3
1865a

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1865, by
KELLY & PIET,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the State of Maryland.

Exchange
Conception College
March 25, 1936

We have had this third edition of the Ceremonial carefully revised by competent persons, and We hereby approve of the same, and recommend its adoption.

MARTIN JOHN,

Archbishop of Baltimore.

Baltimore—Feast of the Annunciation—1865.

The manner of singing Mass without deacon and sub-deacon, and Vespers without cope-bearers, is in accordance with approved usages of the best regulated churches in Italy. The mode of giving Benediction of the Blessed Sacrament with the Ostensorium or Pixis is presented in a more detailed form; and in this the ceremonial of Bishops, and the various decrees of the Sacred Congregation of Rites on this subject, are strictly followed.

Moreover, to preserve that uniformity which is requisite, even in the instruments for the various ceremonies of the Church, and in order to give a clearer idea of those which ought to be used, many engravings have been expressly added. These will be found very useful to pastors who desire to approach as closely as possible to the approved Roman Ceremonial.

The Gregorian notes, to guide the celebrant and sacred ministers in singing the Prayers, Epistle, Gospel, Confiteor, &c., are found in the last chapter of the Ceremonial.

The miscellaneous remarks, which, in the preceding edition, were at the end of the book, are now either embodied in the work or given in notes under corresponding matters.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

Ceremonies of Low Mass.

Chap.		Page.
I.—	Art. I.—What is to be prepared	13
	II.—On the Preparation for Mass by the Priest	15
	III.—On Leaving the Sacristy	19
	IV.—On approaching the Altar	21
	V.—From the Commencement of the Mass to the Introit	22
	VI.—From the Introit to the Epistle	25
	VII.—From the Epistle to the Offertory	27
	VIII.—From the Offertory to the Canon	30
	IX.—From the Canon to the Consecration	35
	X.—From the Consecration to the Pater Noster	40
	XI.—From the Pater Noster to the Communion	43
	XII.—From the Communion to the End of Mass	50
	XIII.—On Votive Masses	53
II.—	Order to be observed in celebrating two Masses on the same day	58
III.—	Low Mass for the Dead	60
IV.—	Low Mass when the Blessed Sacrament is exposed	63
V.—	Of Low Mass in the presence of Prelates	65
VI.—	Giving Communion	68
	Art. I.—Giving Communion during Mass	68
	II.—Purification of the Ciborium	71
	III.—On giving Communion at other times	72
VII.—	Manner of Serving a Priest at Low Mass	75
	Art. I.—General Remarks	75
	II.—Of the Vesting of the Priest	77
	III.—From the beginning of the Mass to the end of it	77
VIII.—	Manner of Serving a Bishop at Low Mass	82

CHAP. PAGE.
VIII.—ART. I.—Things to be prepared 82
II.—Of the Preparation and Vesting of the Bishop 83
III.—When there is but one Chaplain 88
IX.—Manner of Celebrating High Mass without Deacon or Subdeacon 91
ART. I.—Things to be prepared 91
II.—Vesting of the Celebrant 92
III.—Ceremonies of the Mass 92
X.—Vespers sung without Cope-bearers 96
ART. I.—Things to be prepared 96
II. 98

PART II.

CEREMONIES FOR HOLY WEEK AND OTHER FESTIVALS.

CHAP. PAGE.
I.—Blessing of Candles on Candlemas Day 104
ART. I.—Of what is to be prepared 104
II.—Ceremonies to be performed on Candlemas Day 106
II.—Of the Benediction of Ashes on Ash Wednesday 112
ART. I.—Things to be prepared 112
II.—Of the Sacred Rites to be performed 113
III.—Of Palm Sunday 116
ART. I.—What is to be prepared 116
II.—Of the Ceremonies to be performed 117
IV.—Of Maundy Thursday 125
ART. I.—What is to be prepared 125
II.—Of the Sacred Rites 126
V.—Of Good Friday 133
ART. I.—Of what is to be prepared 133
II.—Of the Sacred Rites 135
V.—Of Holy Saturday 151
ART. I.—What is to be prepared 151
II.—Of the Sacred Rites 152
VI.—The Asperges, when there is but one Priest 163
VII.—Benediction with the Blessed Sacrament 169
ART. I.—What is to be prepared 169
II.—Ceremonies (one Priest) 170
III.—When the officiating Priest is assisted by another Priest, &c. 175
IV.—When the Bishop gives Benediction 177

PART III.

Ceremonies of High Mass.

Chap. Page

I.—Rules to be observed by the Clergy in Choir 168
Art. I.—The order of going to the Choir 168
II.—The order to be observed in Choir 181
III.—Internal dispositions 184
IV.—The order to be observed in receiving Holy Communion 185
V.—The order in going from the Choir 186
II.—Instructions for the Officers 187
Art. I.—Things to be prepared 187
II.—Instruction for the Censer-bearer 189
III.—Instruction for the Acolytes 193
IV.—Duty of the Master of Ceremonies 198
V.—Instruction for the Sub-deacon 207
VI.—Instruction for the Deacon 217
VII.—Instruction for the Celebrant 228
III.—High Mass for the Dead 236
Art. I.—Things to be prepared 236
II.—What is to be particularly observed 237
IV.—Solemn Vespers 240
Art. I.—Things to be prepared 240
II.—General Rules to be observed 241
III.—Instruction for the Acolytes 243
IV.—Instruction for the Censer-bearer 245
V.—Instruction for the Master of Ceremonies 246
VI.—Instruction for the Cope bearers 251
VII.—Instruction for the Celebrant 254
V.—Of solemn Vespers, and of the Procession on Corpus Christi 257
Art. I.—Of solemn Vespers, the B essed Sacrament exposed 257
II.—Of the Procession on Corpus Christi 262
VI.—Vespers for the Dead on the 1st of November 264
Art. I.—Things to be prepared 264
II.—Ceremonies peculiar to these Vespers 265

PART IV.

Ceremonies for the Principal Festivals.

Chap. Page.

I.—Feast of the Purification 266
Art. I.—Necessary Preparations 266

CHAP. PAGE.

I.—ART. II.—From the Vesting of the Ministers to the Distribution of the Candles 268
III.—From the Distribution of the Candles to the Procession 270
IV.—The Procession 272
II.—Ash Wednesday 275
ART. I.—Necessary Preparations 275
II.—Of the Blessing and Distribution of the Ashes 276
III.—Of the Mass 279
III.—Sundays Lætare and Gaudete 280
IV.—Palm Sunday 280
ART. I.—Preparations 280
II.—From the Beginning of the Ceremony to the Distribution of the Palms 281
III.—Of the Distribution of the Palms 284
IV.—Of the Procession 286
V.—Of the Mass and Passion 289
V.—Office of the Tenebræ 293
ART. I.—Preparations 293
II.—From the Commencement to the End of the Office. 293
VI.—Maundy Thursday 295
ART. I.—Preparations 295
II.—Of the Mass 297
III.—Of the Procession 300
IV.—Of Vespers, and of the Stripping of the Altars 303
VII.—Of Good Friday 305
ART. I.—Preparations 305
II.—From the Vesting of the Ministers to the Uncovering of the Cross 306
III.—From the Uncovering of the Cross to the Procession 310
IV.—Of the Procession 314
V.—Of the remaining Part of the Office 316
VIII.—Holy Saturday 321
ART. I.—Things to be prepared 321
II.—From the Benediction of the New Fire to the Exultet 323
III.—From the Exultet to the Prophecies 327
IV.—From the Prophecies to the Benediction of the Baptismal Font 329
V.—From the Benediction of the Font to the Beginning of Mass 330
VI.—The Mass 334

PART V.

Ceremonies for Mass and Vespers, solemnly Celebrated by the Bishop, or in His Presence.

Chap.		Page.
I.	—Solemn Pontifical Vespers	338
Art. I.	—Things to be prepared	338
II.	—From the entrance of the Bishop and Clergy to the beginning of Vespers	339
III.	—From the beginning to the end of Vespers	340
II.	—Solemn Vespers, in the presence of the Bishop	343
III.	—Complins, when the Bishop officiates	345
IV.	—Matins, when the Bishop officiates	345
V.	—Lauds, when the Bishop officiates	348
VI.	—Solemn Pontifical Mass	348
Art. I.	—Things to be prepared	348
II.	—Of the Vesting of the Clergy and of the Bishop	353
III.	—The Pontifical Mass	358
VII.	—Solemn Mass, celebrated in presence of the Bishop, dressed in Cope	371
VIII.	—Solemn Mass in presence of the Bishop, in Rochet and Cape	376
IX.	—Vespers for the Dead, celebrated by the Bishop	377
X.	—Matins and Lauds for the Dead, celebrated by the Bishop	378
XI.	—Solemn Pontifical Mass for the Dead	379
Art. I.	—Things to be prepared	379
II.	—From the beginning to the end of Mass	380
III.	—The Absolution after Mass	383
XII.	—Solemn Mass for the dead, in the presence of the Bishop	386
XIII.	—Particular Instructions for the Officers who attend the Bishop	387
Art. I.	—Instruction for the assistant Priest	387
II.	—Instructions for the two assistant Deacons	392
III.	—Instruction for the officiating Deacon	396
IV.	—Instruction for the Sub-deacon	404
V.	—Instruction for the inferior Ministers	410

PART VI.

Other Different Solemnities at which the Bishop Officiates or is Present.

Chap.		Page.
I.	—Commemoration of all the Faithful departed	415
II.	—Sundays in Advent	416

Chap.		Page.
III.—	Christmas	417
IV.—	Festivals between Christmas and Candlemas	419
V.—	Candlemas	419
VI.—	Ash Wednesday	423
VII.—	Sundays in Lent	426
VIII.—	Palm Sunday	426
IX.—	Matins of the Tenebræ	431
X.—	Maundy Thursday	431
XI.—	Good Friday	444
XII.—	Holy Saturday	454
XIII.—	Ceremonies to be observed in Provincial Councils	462
Art. I.—	What is to be done before it opens	462
II.—	How the Metropolitan Church is to be adorned and arranged	463
III.—	The opening of the Council	464
IV.—	Mode of Procedure of the Council	471
V.—	Second Solemn Session	473
VI.—	Third Solemn Session	475
XIV.—	Ceremonies to be observed in Diocesan Synods	479
XV.—	Solemn administration of the Sacrament of Confirmation	485
Art. I.—	Things to be prepared	485
II.—	The administration of the Sacrament	487
XVI.—	Episcopal Visitation of Parishes	489
Art. I.—	The Bishop's reception when he visits the Parishes	489

APPENDIX.

Chap.		Page.
I.—	Forty Hours' Exposition	499
Art. I.—	Things to be prepared for the Mass of the Exposition	499
II.—	Of the Mass of the Exposition	500
III.—	Of the Procession for the Exposition	503
IV.—	Of the Mass *pro Pace*	507
V.—	Things to be prepared for the Mass of the Reposition	508
VI.—	Of the Mass for the Reposition	508
VII.—	From the Litany to the end of the Forty Hours	514
II.—	Different Intonations for Vespers and solemn Mass	518

CEREMONIAL.

PART I.

Ceremonies of Low Mass.

CHAPTER I.

Article I.

WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED.

On the Altar.

1. The altar, which should be of stone or marble, consecrated by the Bishop, or, at least, having on it an altar-stone, also consecrated by the Bishop, should be covered with three clean altar-cloths. The first two, long enough to cover the whole top, and the uppermost should reach the base of the altar on both sides. (*Rub. Miss.*, Part i., n. xx.

2. In the middle of the altar, a crucifix sufficiently large to be distinctly seen. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

3. At least two candlesticks, with candles, which should burn during the whole time of the Mass.*

* All priests (even prelates, who are not Bishops) should have at their private Mass only two candles and one server. (*S. R. C.*, 27th Sept., 1659.)

4. In front of the altar, the antipendium of the color of the vestments.* (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

5. If the blessed sacrament is in the tabernacle, the canopy covering the tabernacle should also be of the color of the vestments.

6. The altar cards.†

7. At the Epistle side, the book-stand.

8. On the *credence*,‡ or any suitable place, the cruets§ with wine and water on a plate, the finger-towel and the hand-bell. Should the priest be obliged to celebrate Mass without the assistance of a server, the plate with cruets and towel should be placed on a stand, near the altar, at the Epistle side, not on the altar.

In the Sacristy.

1. The sacred vestments, of the color prescribed. They should be placed on the sacristy altar,‖ or on the ambry; they should be so disposed that the priest may find them orderly as he vests. The chasuble should be adjusted first, so that the lower half of the front part will hang down from the ambry, and the lower part of the back be folded over the upper part. Next, the stole, folded in four parts, should be laid across the chasuble, and the maniple across the stole. The girdle, in a

---

* As the word antipendium is generally accepted to signify altar-veil, or frontal, it shall be made use of in this manual.

† "Tabernaculum, in quo assidue Divinissima servatur Eucharistia conopes serico, vel simili materiæ vestiri debet, ejus item coloris cujus est altaris Pallium; quanquam pro colore nigro violaceus congruentior erit in honorem Christi viventis." (*Merati.*)

‡ Credence, generally used for the side table near the altar.

§ Cruets should be of glass, not of silver. (*Gavan.*, P. 1, 7, xx.)

‖ St. Charles Borromeo recommends that the altar or ambry, on which the sacred vestments are laid, be covered with a white linen cloth.

serpentine form, should be placed on the maniple. The upper part of the alb should lie on the vestments, and over it the amice extended, the strings of which may be arranged on the amice itself.

2. The Missal.*

3. The chalice,† mass-bread, the purificator, the chalice-veil, the pall, and the burse with the corporal in it.

4. The priest's cap near the vestments, not on them, nor on the chalice.

5. A surplice for the server.

Article II.

On the Preparation for Mass by the Priest.

1. The priest, wishing to celebrate the most Holy Sacrifice, should prepare himself by prayer. *Aliquantulum orationi vacet.* (*Rub. Miss.*) He should also have said matins and lauds.

2. The suitable prayers for the occasion are those suggested by the Church, and laid down in the Missal, that is, the anthem, *ne reminiscaris*, with the Psalms and

---

* If there is no sacristy, the sacred vestments are prepared on a table near the altar, or, if there is no table, on the Gospel side of the altar itself, not in the middle of it, unless a Bishop is to celebrate. (*Rub. Miss.*)

† The chalice ought not to be carried to the altar, and fixed on it by any person before Mass, but the priest ought to carry it himself to the altar, not before he goes thither to begin Mass, but when vested with the sacred vestments he goes from the sacristy, or from the place where he dressed, to the altar, as directed. (*Ib.*, tit. ii., n. 1.) "Sacerdos omnibus paramentis indutus accipit manu sinistra calicem ut supra præparatum, quem portat elevatum ante pectus, bursam manu dextra super calice tenens, et facta reverentia cruci, et capite cooperto accedit ad altare cum ministro, cum Missali," &c.; any contrary custom is to be looked upon as an abuse, which should be abolished. (See *S. C. R.*, n. 4285.)

prayers that follow them. Should the priest say these prayers, he will take notice that the anthem above named is said entirely on feasts of double rite; and during Paschal time the *Alleluia* is added to it.

3. It is well not to omit the pious protestation, *Ego volo celebrare missam.* By reciting this, not only he can gain the indulgences annexed to it, but he can make his *memento.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

4. The priest, clad in his cassock, opens the Missal, and marks the places of the Mass and prayers, that he may not lose time at the altar. (*Rub. Miss.*) After which, he washes his hands, saying at the same time, in a low voice, *Da Domine*, &c.

5. Having washed his hands, he prepares the chalice by placing on it a clean purificator,* in such a way that it will hang equally on both sides. On the purificator he places the paten, and on the paten, the Host, which should be round, entire, and free from loose particles, to remove which, the priest will pass his thumb and fore-finger around the edge. (*Rub. Miss.*) Then he puts on it the pall,† which he covers with the veil. If the veil

* A piece of linen about twelve inches square, folded in four parts, with a small cross worked in the middle; it is not blessed, and should not be starched.

† According to the Rubric, the pall should be of linen. Formerly the pall formed a part of the corporal, which was large enough to cover the chalice. The inconvenience of its being too light can be obviated by having it made out of a piece of linen about eleven inches square, folded into four equal parts, sewed up at the edges, and well starched. "In sacrificio missæ uti non licet palla a parte superiori drapo serico cooperta." (*S. R. C.*, 2d Jan., 1701.) Nevertheless, by a late decision of the S. R. C., the pall may be of silk cloth, ornamented on the outside, while the inside is of linen; but it should not be black. "Permitti posse, dummodo palla linea subnecta calicem cooperiat, ac pannus superior non sit nigri coloris, aut referat aliqua mortis signa." (*S. R. C.*, 10th Jan. 1852.)

is not large enough to cover the whole chalice, he will arrange it so that it will hide that part of the chalice that will be towards the people while going to the altar. Last of all, he places the burse, containing the corporal,* on the veil. The opening of it should be towards himself as he proceeds to the altar. Nothing should be laid on the burse. (*S. C. R.*, 1st Sept., 1703.)

6. Everthing being prepared, the priest goes to the vestments. He will do well to make the sign of the cross, although the Rubric does not say so. If he does, he should make it without the amice in his hand. He then takes the amice by the two corners where the strings are connected, raises it so that he may kiss the cross supposed to be in the middle of the amice; he puts it on his head by adroitly turning his right hand over his left, saying at the same time, *Impone Domine*, &c.; and as he continues the prayers, he adjusts the amice around his neck, so that every article of his neck-dress be entirely covered by it; and after crossing the strings upon his breast, the left being under the right, he passes them behind, and ties them in front with a loose knot.† (*Rub. Miss.*)

* The corporal should be of beautiful linen, very clean, and starched. It should have a small cross worked in the middle, but not with gold or silver. It is generally folded by bending first one-third of it over, so as to cover the second third part; again, the other third folded over the first. Then one-third of its length over the middle third part, and the last part bent over the rest. A corporal will be found sufficiently large, if it be from twenty-two to twenty-four inches square. The corporal is blessed as well as the pall.

† In putting on the amice, he ought not to forget that the object of it is to cover entirely the usual dress, and that part of the cassock which is near the collar, and the collar itself; and, therefore, he ought to put it on so as to answer this purpose as directed. (*Ib.*, tit. i., n. 3.) "Ac primum accipiens amictum circa extremitates et chordulas, osculatur illud in medio ubi est crux et ponit super caput, et mox declinat ad

7. He puts on the alb (without kissing it) by passing it over his head; then he introduces his right arm into the right sleeve, and his left into the other sleeve. He adjusts it about his neck, and fits it around so that it descends about one inch above the floor all around, at the same time saying, *Dealba me Domine*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

8. As he girds himself with the cincture,* he says, *Præcinge me*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*) The common practice is to leave the tassels hanging down as low as possible, to be able afterwards to fasten the stole with the two ends of the cord.

9. He takes the maniple and kisses the cross on it, and passing it over his left arm fastens it between the hand and the elbow, saying, *Merear Domine*, &c.

10. Then having taken the stole, he kisses the cross on it, and, with both hands, he passes it over his head, fits it around his neck, so that both ends of the stole hang down at equal distances. Afterwards he crosses both ends of the stole, first passing towards his right the end that hangs on his left side, and drawing over it the other end which hangs upon his right. Then he confines the stole with the extremities of the cincture, which he allows to hang on each side under his arms, and not behind his back. In the meantime he says, *Redde mihi Domine*, &c.

11. Lastly, he puts on the chasuble without kissing it, saying, *Domine, qui dixisti*, &c. He will take care to

---

collum, et eo *vestium collaria circumtegens*," &c. The first Council of Baltimore has strictly enjoined the observance of this Rubric. Indusia vero privati apparatus sub amictu et alba lateant, ita ut non indecoro vel mundano more appareant. (*Con. Balt.* 1, Decr. 24.)

* Cinctures are made in the shape of round cord, of linen thread, not of silk or cotton. Congruentior est uti cingulo lineo. (*S. R. C.*, n. 3436, ad. 7.)

fit it around the neck and shoulders, and tie it in front with the strings. He may then fasten a white clean handkerchief to the cincture, but it should not be visible beneath the chasuble.

Article III.

On Leaving the Sacristy.

12. The priest being vested, puts on his cap. Then, taking with his left hand the chalice *per nodum*, he lays his right flatly on the burse, holding the chalice before his breast, not, however, too far, or too near himself, but in a natural position. He makes a low bow* to the cross or image in the Sacristy, and, preceded by the server, he proceeds to the altar, with a grave and modest deportment, his mind and heart occupied with the great mystery he is going to celebrate.

13. It is a laudable custom for the priest to take holy water and make the sign of the cross. (*S. R. C.*, 9th April, 1808.) Nevertheless, the Rubric does not prescribe it.

14. On going to the altar, if the priest passes before the tabernacle containing the Blessed Sacrament, he will make a genuflection† without removing his cap. If he passes before the high altar, he makes a low bow to the cross. Should he pass before an altar where there is a

* Rubricians distinguish three kinds of bows: the low, the moderate, and the simple. A low bow is made by bending the head and the shoulders, so that the person making it could touch his knees with the extremities of his fingers. The moderate is made by sufficiently lowering the head, and somewhat bending the shoulders. The simple bow consists in simply bending the head, without perceptibly moving the shoulders.

† A simple genuflection is made by bending the right knee to the floor, as near as possible to the left foot.

relic of a saint whose feast is celebrated, or some other remarkable relic, he makes a low bow, without taking his cap off. (*Rub. Miss.*) If it be a relic of the true cross, he will make a genuflection with his head covered. (*S. R. C.*, 7th May, 1766.)

15. If he should pass before the Blessed Sacrament exposed, or at the time of the elevation, or when Holy Communion is given, he will take off his cap, and kneel on both knees, being sure in the last two-named instances, not to rise until after the elevation, or before the priest giving communion has returned to the altar, and placed the ciborium on the corporal. (*Rub. Miss.*) If, however, in the latter case, the communicants should be too numerous, a genuflection on both knees will be sufficient, without remaining until the end. (*S. R. C.*, 5th July, 1698.)

16. When on these occasions the priest takes off his cap, either he will give it to the server to hold, until he is to put it on again, or he will hold it between his thumb and forefinger, with the opening of it towards himself, and with the last two fingers holding the burse, that it may not fall.

17. While the priest is going to, or coming from the altar, he should salute no one, except his Bishop or other great prelates, or some distinguished person, and then he should do so by a simple bow. He will do the same on meeting another priest, clad in sacred vestments, going to or returning from saying mass. If the two priests meet in a narrow passage, the one returning will give way to the one going to celebrate.

18. If, perchance, the priest should go to, or return from the altar, without the chalice (whenever he is to bow or make a genuflection), he should take off his cap.

Article IV.

On Approaching the Altar.

19. The priest having reached the foot of the altar on which he is to celebrate, he stops in the middle, takes off his cap, gives it to the server, and makes a low bow to the cross. If the Blessed Sacrament be in the tabernacle, he makes a genuflection on the floor, not on the step. (*Rub. Miss.*, Part ii., Rit. iii., n. 1.)

20. Then he ascends the steps, and having arrived in front of the middle of the altar,* without making any bow, he places the chalice on the Gospel side. If the veil, being large, is turned over the burse, he will lower it immediately, with both hands. Then he takes the burse, brings it to the middle of the altar, holds it with his left hand, and with his right he takes the corporal from it, which he lays on the altar; after which, with his right hand, he will place the burse at the Gospel side, against the *gradus*, so that the aperture of it be towards the tabernacle, unless some figure be marked on it, requiring another position. His left hand he will keep on the altar.†

21. Then with both hands he will spread out entirely the corporal in the middle of the altar, sufficiently, but not too near the edge, that neither the maniple nor the chasuble may disturb it.

---

* Some Rubricists direct that the priest, upon arriving at the altar, should make a bow to the cross. Nevertheless, neither the Rubrics of the Missal, nor any decree of the Sacred Congregation, makes such a prescription.

† As a general rule, when only one hand is employed, the other is kept on the altar; before the consecration and after communion, off the corporal; from the consecration to the communion, on the corporal.

22. Having spread the corporal, with his left hand he will take the chalice *per nodum*, and, putting his right on the chalice covered with the veil, he will place it in the middle of the corporal at such a distance that he may afterwards conveniently kiss the altar* without touching the chalice. He will be careful to extend the lower extremities of the veil, that the chalice may not be seen. (*S. R. C.*, 12th Jan., 1669.) After this, without making any bow, having his hands joined, he goes to the Epistle side,† opens the Missal where the Mass of the day is to be found (*Rub. Miss.*, n. 4), and then returns with his hands joined to the centre of the altar, where, having bowed moderately to the cross, he moves his right foot a little towards the Gospel side, in order to avoid turning his back to the cross, and descends to the foot of the altar, still keeping his hands joined. (*Rub. Miss.*)

Article V.

From the Commencement of the Mass to the Introit.

23. Having arrived in front of the last step, the priest

* Some writers on Rubrics are of opinion that the front part of the corporal should be laid over the foot of the chalice, giving as a reason, that there might remain on the corporal some consecrated particles; but the Rubrics of the Missal, Part 2, Art. 2, speaking of the corporal, says, *quod extendit super altare.* The general practice in Rome and Italy is to spread it entirely. The church supposes that every priest will follow exactly the Rubrics prescribed, and that, consequently, no consecrated particles will be left on the corporal.

† To join the hands, the palm and the fingers extended, of both hands, should be brought together, the thumb of the right to be crossed over the thumb of the left, except from the consecration till after the ablution. The hands, thus joined, should not be kept either too near or too far from the breast, nor too much turned towards the face, nor towards the floor, but naturally directed somewhat towards heaven. The elbows should recline gently towards the hips.

turns on his right to the altar, and makes a low bow to the cross, or, if the Blessed Sacrament is in the tabernacle, he makes a genuflection on the last step, without making any other bow. Then standing modestly erect, he will commence Mass, by making on himself the sign of the cross (*Rub. Miss.*), pronouncing the words distinctly, and sufficiently loud to be heard by the faithful near the chapel.

24. Having signed himself,* he says, in the same tone of voice, the antiphon, *Introibo*, and the psalm, *Judica me Deus.* While he says the *Gloria Patri*, he inclines his head, and becomes erect at the *Sicut erat.* At the *Adjutorium nostrum*, &c., he makes the sign of the cross.

25. At the *Confiteor*, he inclines profoundly, still keeping his hands joined. At the words, *Vobis fratres* and *Vos fratres*, he does not turn towards the server, this being only done at High Mass. In saying *mea culpa*, he strikes gently and unaffectedly his breast with the extremities of the fingers of his right hand, while he holds his left extended below his breast. (*Rub. Miss.*)

After the *Mea maxima culpa*, he rejoins his hands, and remains inclined until (the server having said *Misereatur tui*, &c.) he answers, *Amen*, upon which he resumes his former attitude.

26. The server, having terminated the *Confiteor*, the priest says, *Misereatur vestri*, &c.; and while he says *Indulgentiam*, &c., he makes the sign of the cross.

---

* He makes the sign of the cross by putting his left hand extended under his breast, then he raises his right to his forehead, and touching it with the extremity of his fingers, he says, *In nomine Patris;* then, with the same hand, touching his breast, says, *Et Filii;* touching his left and right shoulders, *Et Spiritus Sancti;* and again joining his hands, he says, *Amen.*

(*Rub. Miss.*) Then, inclining moderately, he says, *Deus tu conversus*, &c., and remains in that attitude till *Oremus* inclusively, which he says in the same tone of voice, extending his hands* and immediately rejoining them, and having become erect, he ascends the steps slowly, saying at the same time, in a low voice, *Aufer a nobis.*†

27. Having arrived in front of the altar, he inclines moderately, puts his hands joined on the edge of the altar, so that the little fingers, joined and extended, touch the front of it, and the other fingers, being also joined and extended, rest on the top. (In this manner are the hands to be placed whenever the Rubric prescribes to place them joined upon the altar.) In this position, he says *Oramuste,* and at the words, *Quorum reliquiæ hic sunt*, he extends his hands upon the altar, on either side of the corporal, and kisses the altar.‡ After which he becomes erect, joins his hands, and turns towards the Epistle side, to which place he goes to commence the *Introit*, without making any bow to the cross.

---

* In extending the hands, the priest should not allow them to pass the width of his body.

† The Missal (with many Rubricists) does not prescribe any elevation of the hands in this case. The ceremonial of Bishops, however, enjoins it, perhaps only for Bishops; nevertheless, it would seem that priests could also do so.

‡ It is to be remarked, that whenever the priest kisses the altar, he does so in the middle, not on one side, nor on the edge of it; and that to do this properly, he should neither be too near, nor too far from the altar, lest he be awkward or affected. Neither is it sufficient in these cases to put the fingers on the altar, and it is too much to place the wrists there; yet it is required to lay the hands on the altar-cloth.

Article VI.

From the Introit to the Epistle.

28. Having arrived opposite to the Missal, he commences the Introit aloud, making on himself the sign of the cross, and then having joined his hands, he continues in the same tone of voice;* as he says *Gloria Patri*, &c., he makes a simple bow to the cross, turning himself a little towards it, without, however, moving his feet.

Should the holy name of *Jesus* occur during the Introit, he bows to the cross. If the name of Mary is mentioned, or the Saint whose feast is celebrated on that day, he bows towards the book. After the *Sicut erat*, he repeats the Introit, but does not make the sign of the cross.

29. At the end of the *Introit*, he returns to the middle, having his hands joined; and, facing the chalice, he says alternately with the server, the *Kyrie*. (*Rub. Miss.*)

30. After the last *Kyrie*, if there are no prophecies to be read, and the *Gloria* is to be said, he will disjoin the hands, and raise them as high as his shoulders, and without raising the eyes, he says, *Gloria in excelsis*, &c., and in the same tone of voice, in saying *Deo*, he joins the hands again, making a simple bow to the cross, and remains in that position till the end of the *Gloria*. At the words, *Adoramus te*, *Gratias agimus tibi*, *Jesu Christe*, *Suscipe deprecationem nostram*, he makes a simple bow to the cross. Whilst he says *Cum Sancto Spiritu*, &c., he makes the sign of the cross on himself,

* Sufficiently so to be heard by the faithful who assist near the altar.

and having said *Amen*,* he kisses the altar in the usual way, joining his hands afterwards.

31. If there are Prophecies to be read, as is the case on the Ember days, the priest, after the *Kyrie* (without making any bow), returns to the Missal, and says *Oremus*, &c. He reads the Prophecies in the same tone of voice, having at the same time both his hands either on the Missal, or on the stand. The Prophecies being concluded, he returns to the middle of the altar to say the *Gloria*.

32. After having kissed the altar, the priest becomes erect, turns on his right, facing the people, and extending his hands and rejoining them again, he says *Dominus vobiscum*.† (*Rub. Miss.*)

33. Then he returns towards the Missal as before, he extends the hands, and rejoining them, he says, *Oremus*, at the same time making a simple bow towards the cross; and again extending his hands not higher than, nor beyond his shoulders, as has been already said.‡

34. At the conclusion of the prayer or prayers, when *Per Dominum nostrum* is to be said, the priest shall join

---

* Some Rubricians are of opinion, that at the word *Amen*, the priest should join his hands, but as the Missal and Baldeschi (whom we follow) are silent on the subject, we think it better to omit the joining of the hands.

† Whenever the priest says *Dominus vobiscum*, he does not look at the people, nor does he raise or lower the hands, and in extending them, he does not bring them beyond the limits of his body, but simply opens them so that the palm and fingers of one hand face the other, and rejoins them again. Neither does he bend the head towards the people, nor does he rest his back against the altar.

‡ The same thing is to be done whenever *Oremus* is to be said, unless something else is prescribed. Also, in pronouncing that word, care should be taken not to prolong the letter O, nor should it be said in any way affectedly.

his hands, and bow simply to the cross; he shall remain erect, with hands joined, till the end of the conclusion of the prayer. If, however, the prayer concludes with the words, *Qui vivis et regnas*, or, *Qui tecum vivit et regnat*, without making any bow, he joins the hands while saying, *In unitate Spiritus Sancti.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

35. When there is more than one prayer, he says *Oremus* only at the commencement of the first and of the second, so, also, the conclusion is said at the end of the first prayer and of the last.

If, during the prayers, he pronounces the holy name of *Jesus*, or of Mary, or the Saint whose feast is celebrated that day, or the name of the Pope, he makes a simple bow, in the first case to the cross, in the others towards the Missal.*

Article VII.

From the Epistle to the Offertory.

36. At the end of the prayer or prayers, the priest reads the Epistle in the same tone of voice, having his hands on the book or book-stand, in such a manner, however, that he touches the Missal. (*Rub. Miss.*) If, in reading the Epistle, he happens to pronounce the holy name of *Jesus*, he will bow as was said before. If he is to make a genuflection, as is the case when he says, *In nomine Jesu genuflectatur*, &c., or, *Adjuva nos Deus*, he bends only the right knee to the floor. The last words of the Epistle he may say in a lower tone, as an

* In the prayer, *A cunctis*, the Patron Saint to be named is that of the place in which he celebrates. The name of the saint, founder of the community to which the priest happens to belong, is mentioned after that of the Patron Saint of the place.

indication to the server that he is to answer, *Deo Gratias*, but he should not turn his head towards him. After which, he reads, in the same former tone of voice, the gradual, the tract, or the *sequentia*, if these are to be read.

37. This done, he goes with his hands joined to the middle of the altar, where, having raised his eyes to the cross, he inclines profoundly, keeping his hands joined between his breast and the altar, and in that attitude he says, *Munda cor meum.* Then, *Jube Domine*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

38. Should there be no server, the priest will move the Missal to the Gospel side, so that the opening of it be somewhat towards the middle of the altar. In moving the book, he makes a simple bow to the cross, and having adjusted it in its place, he returns to the middle to say the prayer above named. (*Rub. Miss.*)

39. The prayer being over, he becomes erect, and having his hands joined, he goes to the book, his face turned partially towards the Gospel side, and in the same loud tone of voice he says, *Dominus vobiscum.* In saying *Sequentia* or *Initium Sancti Evangelii*, he disjoins his hands, and with the thumb of his right, the finger extended, he makes a cross on the commencement of the Gospel he is to read, at the same time keeping his left hand extended on the Missal. (*S. R. C.*, 17th Sept., 1816.) Then he forms a cross with the same thumb on his forehead, his lips, and his breast, holding his left hand on his breast. (*Rub. Miss.*, n. 2.)

40. After this, he joins his hands, and continues to read the Gospel in the same tone of voice. Should the holy name of *Jesus*, or any other name at which (according to what has been said before) he is to bow, be

mentioned, he does so towards the book. So, also, should he be required to make a genuflection, it is to be made towards the book, his hands supported on the altar. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) The Gospel being read, he raises the Missal with both hands, at the same time bending a little over it, and kisses the commencement of the same Gospel, saying, in a low voice, *Per Evangelica dicta*, &c.

41. When he is to read the *Passion*, he makes a simple bow to the cross, as he goes from the Epistle side to the Gospel; he reads the passion in the same attitude as at the Gospel, without, however, making any sign of the cross. At the words, *Emisit Spiritum*, he kneels on both knees, his hands supported upon the altar, and again joins his hands, in which position he meditates for a few moments on the passion of our Lord. Then, resting his hands on the altar, he rises, rejoins the hands, and continues to read until where he is to say the *munda cor meum*, which he says in the middle of the altar, in the same attitude prescribed above. After the *munda cor meum*, he returns to the book, his hands being joined, and finishes reading the Passion; at the end of which (except on Good Friday) he kisses the Missal as above, saying, *Per Evangelica dicta*, &c.

42. Having kissed the Missal, he replaces it on the stand, and, with both hands, he takes the stand with the Missal on it, and brings it nearer to the corporal, placing it so that he may conveniently read in it thereafter, and having rejoined his hands, he returns to the middle.

43. There (if the *Credo* is to be said) he extends his hands, raises them (not higher than his shoulders) at the word *Credo*, and joins them again at the words, *In unum Deum*, making at the same time a simple bow to the cross. In this position he continues the *Credo* to

the end, in the same tone of voice, except that at the words, *Et Incarnatus est*, having placed the hands upon the altar, on either side of the corporal, he makes a genuflection with his right knee only (*S. R. C.*, 22d Aug., 1818) in such a manner that, by commencing it at the *Et Incarnatus*, he touches the floor with his knee at the words *Et Homo factus est;* as he makes the genuflection, he does not bend his head. He makes a bow at *Simul adoratur;* whilst he says *Et vitam*, &c., he makes on himself the sign of the cross, as at the end of the *Gloria.*

Article VIII.

From the Offertory to the Canon.

44. After the *Credo*, if it has been said, or after having arranged the Missal, the priest kisses the altar; and, turning towards the people, he says, *Dominus vobiscum.* He turns again to the altar, and, with the usual moving of the hands and bowing of the head, he says, *Oremus*, and keeping his hands joined, he reads the Offertory. (*Rub. Miss.*)

45. At the end of the Offertory, he removes the veil from the chalice with both hands, folds it, and places it at the right hand, near the corporal, on which he may afterwards place the pall, if he chooses, or, without folding it, he gives it to the server. Then, having placed his left hand on the altar, near the corporal, he takes the chalice *per nodum* with his right, and places it at the right side of the corporal.* Then, with the same hand, he removes the pall from the paten, and places it on the

* If the chalice is not purified, he puts the pall first, where the chalice is to be placed.

folded veil, or on the corporal against the altar-card.* Then, taking the paten, upon which the Host is, between the thumb and the forefinger of his right hand, he brings it opposite to him, over and in the middle of the corporal, at the height of his breast, and there he takes it also with the thumb and forefinger of his left hand, in such a manner that the paten is supported by the named four fingers at equal distances from each other, and that the other fingers are extended and joined underneath it; after this, he raises his eyes, immediately lowering them on the Host, and says, *Suscipe, Sancte Pater*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

46. The prayer being entirely finished, still holding the paten in the same manner, but nearer to the corporal, he forms a cross in straight lines of about eight inches in length; then bending the paten towards the corporal, he causes the Host to slide on the middle of the anterior part of the corporal. Then he places the paten somewhat under the corporal, at the right, holding at the same time his left hand on the altar.† (*Rub. Miss.*)

If there are small hosts to consecrate, either in a Ciborium,‡ or on the corporal, he directs his intention to the offering of them, having previously opened the Ciborium, and drawn it nearer towards the middle. Before saying *Suscipe*, &c., he covers it, and places it back in its former position, after having located the paten under the corporal. If he should be presented

* It is always with the right hand that the priest uncovers and covers the chalice.

† It is not permitted to make *any marks* with the paten, or anything else, on the Host.

‡ According to *Gavantus*, *De Mensuris*, the Ciborium should have a veil or cover made out of rich materials, either of silk or silver, or even gold cloth, through respect for the Blessed Sacrament.

with any small Hosts at that moment, he places them on the paten, and, after the Offertory, he puts it on the corporal, a little higher up than the Host, at the Gospel side.

47. Next, having joined his hands, he repairs to the Epistle side. From there, he takes the chalice *per nodum* with the left hand, brings it before him, and, with the fingers of his right hand, he puts a portion of the corporal in the cup of the chalice, and purifies it, while he holds it with his left hand.

48. Then, holding the chalice, with his left hand on the altar, he places the purificator between the cup and the thumb of his left hand, that it may serve to gather drops which might fall from the cruets.

Then, with his right hand, he receives the cruet with wine from the server, and pours a sufficient quantity of it in the Chalice.* Then, having returned the cruet to the server, he forms with the same hand, extended, a cross over the cruet containing water, saying, *Deus qui humanæ substantiæ.* He takes the same cruet, and pours a little water in the chalice,† saying, at the same time, *Da nobis per hujus aquæ et vini mysterium* (*Rub. Miss.*, n. 4), he returns the cruet to the server, continuing the prayer, taking care to make a simple bow towards the cross, at the holy name of *Jesus.* It is advisable to absorb with the purificator the drops within the chalice,

* It is generally supposed, that the quantity of the wine should cover the bottom of the chalice, or such quantity that the priest, in consuming it, may be able, without effort, to take it all at one draught without lowering the hand (*uno haustu*).

† The quantity of water poured in the chalice should be very small, three or four drops of it are sufficient, and should be less than the third part of the wine. (See *Pope Eugenius IV.*, in *Decreto pro Armenis.*)

that might have gathered around the cup. (*S. R. C.*, 7th Sept., 1816.)

49. This done, he places the chalice sufficiently near the corporal with his left hand, goes to the middle of the altar, and lays the purificator, folded in two, on that part of the paten that remains outside of the corporal. Then, having placed his left hand on the altar, he takes with his right the chalice *per nodum*, carries it over the corporal, and advances his left hand under the foot of it; then, holding it raised, so that the top of it may not be higher than his eyes, he says, *Offerimus tibi Domine*, &c., looking at the cross the whole time of that offering. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

50. After the *Offerimus*, the priest forms with the chalice a cross over the corporal, without passing over the Host. Then, having placed the chalice in the middle of the corporal, behind the Host, he covers it with the pall. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

51. Then he inclines moderately, and places his joined hands on the edge of the altar, and says, *In Spiritu humilitatis*, &c. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Having finished the prayer, he becomes erect, extends his hands, and, having raised them as high as his eyes, he joins them again, in the mean time saying, *Veni sanctificator*, &c. Then he forms a cross with his right hand over the chalice and the Host together, saying, *Et benedic hoc sacrificium tuo Sancto nomini preparatum*,* while he holds his left hand on the altar near the corporal.

---

* When the priest is to make a cross over the offerings, the hands are first joined before his breast, and, in forming the cross, the left hand is placed on the altar, and the right should be straight, and the fingers united, according to the decree of the S. R. C., 24th July, 1683. Also, when the cross is made on the chalice and Host conjointly, the

52. After this, he joins his hands again, and goes to the Epistle side, where, a little beyond the altar, he washes the extremities of the thumbs and forefingers of his hands, at the same time saying, *Lavabo*, &c., which he continues while he wipes his fingers; and there he may stand, his hands joined, until the completion of that Psalm.

53. At the *Gloria Patri* he bows to the cross, whilst he goes to the middle of the altar, although he may say it on arriving there.

54. Having reached the middle of the altar, his hands joined, he raises his eyes to the cross, and having lowered them immediately, he puts his hands, joined, on the edge of the altar, inclines moderately, and says, *Suscipe Sancta Trinitas*; at the end of which, extending his hands on the altar, he kisses it.

55. Then, becoming erect, and rejoining his hands, he turns to the people, and, extending and joining the hands, as at the *Dominus vobiscum*, with a voice a little louder, he says, *Orate Fratres;* and, having rejoined his hands, he turns to the altar by the Gospel side, making the complete circle, and saying, at the same time, in a low voice, *ut meum ac vestrum sacrificium*, &c. (*Rub., ib.*) The server having answered, *Suscipiat*, &c., the priest answers, to himself, *Amen.*

56. Here he extends his hands, as at the prayers, and, without saying *Oremus*, he reads the *Secrets* in a low voice. The number of these should equal that of the prayers said before the Epistle. If there is only one of

---

first line is commenced from the middle of the pall, and, without lowering the hand, it is drawn over the Host; and the second, or the transversal line, is drawn between the Host and the chalice, from one corner of the pall to the other, or not any longer than the first line.

them, he does not read the conclusion, but stops after having said, *Spiritus Sancti Deus.* If there are more than one, he will say the conclusion of the first, saying, also, *Amen;* and at the conclusion of the last *Secret*, he stops at the above-named words, which are considered as the commencement of the Preface. Then he turns the pages of the Missal for the Preface with his left hand, whilst his right is laid on the altar, off the corporal, unless, through necessity, he should be obliged to use both hands to find the Preface.

57. Having found the place for the Preface, he lays both hands on the altar, and says, with a loud voice, *Per omnia sæcula sæculorum*, &c., *Dominus vobiscum.* At the *sursum corda*, he raises his extended hands as high as his breast, so that both palms face each other. At the *Gratias agamus*, he rejoins his hands without raising them any higher. At *Deo nostro*, he looks at the cross and bows. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

58. When he commences *Vere dignum et justum est*, he opens his hands again, and holds them as he did during the prayers, until he reaches the *Sanctus*, &c., whereupon he rejoins his hands, inclines moderately, and says, in a moderate voice, *Sanctus*, *Sanctus*, &c., without, however, placing his hands upon the altar. At the word *Benedictus*, &c., he becomes erect, and makes on himself the sign of the cross in the usual manner.

Article IX.

From the Canon to the Consecration.

59. After the sign of the cross, the priest raises his hands as high as the shoulders, and his eyes to the cross, lowering them immediately. Then, joining his hands,

places them on the edge of the altar, and inclines profoundly, whilst he says, *Te igitur*, in a low voice. (*Rub. Miss.*) At the words, *uti accepta habeas et benedicas*, he extends his hands upon the altar, and kisses it. Then, having become erect, and joined his hands, at the words, *Hæc dona*, &c., he makes three signs of the cross on the offerings conjointly, saying at the first, *hæc* ✠ *dona*, at the second, *hæc* ✠ *munera*, and at the third, *hæc sancta* ✠ *sacrificia illibata;* and, having extended his hands without joining them, he continues, *In primis quæ tibi offerimus*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*) In pronouncing the name of the Pope, he makes a simple bow towards the Missal, but does not bow at the name of the Bishop in whose diocese he says Mass; or if the See is vacant, he does not say *Papa nostro*, or *Antistite nostro*.* (*Gav.*, p. 2, Tit. viii., n. 2.)

60. In saying *Memento, Domine*, he raises his hands only as high as his breast, and joins them slowly, and having somewhat bent his head (it is not requisite to look at the Host, it not being consecrated), he prays in silence, renewing his *memento* for the living, during a short time. Then, having extended his hands, he continues to read, in a low voice, *Et omnium circumstantium*, &c., till *muniamur auxilio*. (*Rub. Miss.*)

61. During *Communicantes*, he makes a simple bow towards the book, at the name of the Blessed Virgin, and towards the cross, at that of *Jesus;* he also bows towards the book at the name of the Saint whose Mass

* The Bishop named is that of the diocese in which the priest celebrates, although he may not be his Bishop. In case he does not know the name, it is sufficient to form his intention to pray for him. In Rome, the words *Et antistite nostro* are omitted, as the Pope is the Bishop of Rome.

he says, or of whom he makes a commemoration. (*Rub. Miss.*)

62. At the conclusion, *Per eundem Dominum*, &c., he joins his hands without bowing. Then, on commencing *Hanc igitur*, &c., he extends his two hands over the Host and the chalice together, without touching the pall, the thumbs still crossing each other above the hands, and the forefingers being united. (*S. R. C.*, 4th Aug., 1663.) At the conclusion of the prayer, he joins his hands, closing them without separating them previously, and draws them to himself before his breast, at the same time continuing to read, *Quam oblationem*, &c., till the words *Benedictam*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

63. Then, having placed his left hand on the altar, near the corporal, he makes three crosses on the offerings, in the same manner spoken of in n. 56. The first, as he says *Bene✝dictam*, the second at *Ad✝scriptam*, and the third (which is to be made slowly) during the words, *Ra✝tam*, *Rationabilem*, *acceptabilemque facere digneris;* and as he continues, he makes another cross on the Host at the words, *ut nobis Cor✝pus*, and another on the chalice whilst saying *Et San✝guis;* and immediately after, raising and joining his hands before his breast, he continues, *Fiat dilectissimi Filii tui Domini nostri Jesu Christi*, bowing at the same time that he pronounces the sacred name. (*Rub. Miss.*)

64. If there are Hosts to be consecrated, he uncovers the *Ciborium*, and moves it a little in advance of the chalice; should they be upon the corporal, and not in a Ciborium, he does not move them.

65. After this (if need be, says the Missal) the priest purifies his fingers, which is done by rubbing the thumbs and the forefingers on the side of the corporal, while he

says, *Qui pridie quam pateretur.* He takes the Host between the thumb and the forefinger of his right hand (*Rub. Miss.*), pressing it a little for that purpose with the forefinger of his left (which he should do, Baldeschi says, whenever he is to take it up), and immediately after taking it on the other side with the thumb and forefinger of his left, extends and joins the other fingers together; and, being erect, holding the Host somewhat raised above the corporal, he says in the mean time, *accepit panem in sanctas ac venerabiles manus suas.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

66. In saying, *Et elevatis oculis in cœlum*, he raises his eyes to the cross, and lowers them immediately. At *Tibi gratias agens* he bows, and at *Benedixit* he makes with his right hand a cross on the Host; while he still holds it with his left, he takes it again with the right hand, continuing, *Fregit, deditque discipulis suis*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

67. In this position of the hands, having ended the said words, not before, he leans with his elbows on the edge of the altar, in an unaffected manner, bends his head, and distinctly and reverently, without any twisting of the body or of the mouth, without at all raising his voice, or breathing violently on the Host, he pronounces the words of the consecration, saying, *Hoc est enim Corpus meum.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

68. After pronouncing these words, continuing to hold the sacred Host in the same manner, he becomes erect, drawing his hands a little more towards the edge of the altar; bends his right knee to the floor, and adores the Blessed Sacrament, without saying any thing. (*Rub. Miss.*) After the genuflection, following the Sacred Host with his eyes, he raises it respectfully in a perpen-

dicular line over the corporal, a little higher than his head, that the people may adore it; then, without stopping, he lowers it slowly towards the corporal, on which he places it, with his right hand, in its former position;* and, having placed his hands on the altar, the thumbs and forefingers being united, he makes another genuflection.

69. After rising, he uncovers the chalice, taking the pall with the fore and middle fingers of his right hand (in this manner he covers and uncovers the chalice hereafter), and, having purified his fingers by rubbing them over the cup of the chalice, he says, *Simili modo postquam cœnatum est;* then, with both hands taking the chalice between the cup and the *nodum*, he raises it a little over the corporal, and replaces it immediately, saying, in the mean time, *accipiens et hunc præclarum calicem;* and without taking his hands off, he will make a bow at the words, *Tibi gratias agens,* to the consecrated Host. In saying *Benedixit*, he makes a cross on the chalice with his right hand, still holding it with his left, and immediately holding it with both hands, he will continue, *Deditque discipulis suis.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

70. Having finished saying these words, he leans with the elbows on the edge of the altar, and holding the chalice *per nodum* with his right hand, and supporting it at the foot with the last three fingers of his left, with-

* From this moment until after the ablution, the thumb and the forefinger of each hand are kept united, and are not separated unless to touch the consecrated Host; consequently, in turning the pages of the Missal, he does so with the fore and middle fingers. Neither are the hands placed out of, but on the corporal (as was said before), except when they rest against the edge of the altar as before, with the exception that the thumbs and forefingers continue to be united together.

out bending it (as some do), having his head inclined, he devoutly pronounces the words of consecration, *Hic est enim calix*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

71. After the words of the consecration, he places the chalice upon the altar, and, in a low tone of voice, saying, *Hæc quotiescumque feceritis*, he makes a genuflection, his hands being placed on the altar as at the consecration of the Host, and mentally adores the precious blood. Having become erect, he takes the chalice with his right hand *per nodum*, and, with his left at the foot, and following it with his eyes, he raises it so that the cup is brought above his head, that the people may see it; then he puts it back on the corporal, in its former position, covers it with the pall, holding the foot with his left hand, and makes a genuflection (*Rub. Miss.*), paying attention in this, as in any other case, that the maniple may not touch the Host.

Article X.

From the Canon after the Consecration to the Pater Noster.

72. Having become erect, and having extended his hands as before, he says, in a low voice, *Unde et memores*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*), to the words *De tuis donis ac datis*, when he joins his hands. Then, having placed his left hand on the corporal, at the Gospel side, he makes three signs of the cross over the chalice and Host conjointly, saying, *hostiam ✠ puram, hostiam ✠ sanctam, hostiam ✠ immaculatam;* then he makes one on the Host only, saying, *panem sanctum ✠ vitæ æternæ*, and one on the chalice alone, saying, *et calicem ✠ salutis perpetuæ;* after which, he extends his hands, and in that position he continues the Canon, in the same low tone of voice, saying, *Supra quæ propitio*, &c.

73. After the words, *Immaculatam Hostiam*, he inclines profoundly, and puts his hands joined on the edge of the altar, and in that attitude he says, *Supplices te rogamus* (*S. R. C.*, 7th Sept., 1816) till *Ut quotquot*; and in saying, *Ex hac altaris participatione*, having extended his hands on the corporal, he kisses the altar in the middle, being careful not to touch the Host. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Then, becoming erect, and joining his hands at the words *Sacrosanctum Filii tui*, he places his hand on the corporal, making with the other a cross on the Host at the word, *Cor✝pus*, and another immediately after, on the chalice alone, at the words, *Sangui✝nem sumpserimus;* then, having placed his left hand under the breast, so that the thumb and forefinger do not touch the chasuble, he makes with his right hand a sign of the cross on himself, saying *Omni benedictione cœlesti, et gratia repleamur;* and immediately after, he joins his hands before his breast, while saying, *Per eundem Dominum*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*)

74. In saying, *Memento Domine*, &c., he extends and closes his hands slowly, so that they be joined at the *In somno pacis*. Then, thus joined, he raises them as high as his chin, without touching it, and somewhat lowers his head; and his eyes being fixed on the Blessed Sacrament, he makes the *memento* of the dead for whom he desires to pray.

75. After the *memento*, he raises his head; and, having extended his hands as before, he continues, *Ipsis Domine*, &c. At *Per eundem Christum*, he again joins his hands; and, in this particular case, although the holy *name* is not mentioned, he makes a simple bow. (*Rub. Miss.*)

76. Then having raised his head, and placed his left

hand on the corporal, with the three last fingers of his right he strikes his breast, saying, in a moderate voice, *Nobis quoque peccatoribus ;** then extending his hands, he continues in the low tone *famulis tuis.* (*Rub. Miss.*) Should the name of the Saint, whose feast he celebrates, occur in this prayer, he will bow on reading it.

77. At *Per Christum Dominum Nostrum* he joins his hands as usual, with saying *Amen ;* after which he places his left hand on the corporal, and with his right he forms three crosses on the chalice and Host conjointly; the first at *Sanc✠tificas*, the second at *vivi✠ficas*, and the third at *bene✠dicis et præstas nobis.*

78. Then holding the foot of the chalice with his left hand, he uncovers it with his right, and having placed his hands on the corporal, he makes a genuflection. Having become erect, with the thumb and forefinger of his right hand he takes the Host at the lower part, and having brought it over the chalice, he forms with the same Host, within the cup, and without touching it with the Host, three crosses, holding, at the same time, with his left hand the chalice *per nodum*, saying, *Per ✠ ipsum, et cum ✠ ipso, et in ✠ ipso ;* and immediately bringing the sacred Host out of the chalice, but still with his left holding the chalice, he makes two more crosses at the words, *Est tibi Deo Patri ✠ Omnipotenti, in unitate Spiritus ✠ Sancti.* (These crosses are formed between the chalice and himself.) Then bringing the Host over the chalice, and leaning the thumb and the forefinger on the edge of the cup, he raises the chalice a little with

* In this case, as well as at the *Agnus Dei*, and *Domine non sum dignus*, when again he is to strike his breast, he should take care that the thumb and the forefinger shall not separate, and that they may not touch the chasuble. (*Durandus, Lib.* IV., *cap.* 46.)

his left hand, at the same time saying, *omnis honor et gloria.* Then having replaced the chalice and the Host in their respective places, he purifies his fingers over the chalice, which he covers immediately after with his right hand, at the same time holding it with his left. After which, having placed his hand extended on the corporal, he makes a genuflection.

Article XI.

From the Pater Noster to the Communion.

79. The priest having risen, with his hands still on the corporal, says aloud, *Per omnia sæcula sæculorum.* The server having answered *Amen*, he joins his hands as usual, and says, *Oremus*, at the same time bending his head somewhat to the Blessed Sacrament. Having raised his head, he continues, with hands joined, the prayer till *Pater Noster*, when, having extended his hands before his breast, he continues the Lord's Prayer to the end, at the same time keeping his eyes fixed on the Blessed Sacrament. (*Rub. Miss.*)

80. The server having answered, *Sed libera nos a malo*, the priest says to himself, *Amen.* Then with his right hand he draws the paten from under the corporal, and cleans it, for which purpose he makes use of the purificator, which afterwards he places at some distance from the corporal at the Epistle side. During this action his left hand is held on the corporal. Then having taken the paten between the fore and middle fingers, he holds it upright, its edges resting near the corporal, and the concave part towards the sacred Host, and the hand above the paten, at the same time saying,

Libera nos, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*) In pronouncing *Mariæ* he bows to the book.

81. In saying, *Petro et Paulo*, he places his left hand under his breast, and with his right, holding the paten, he makes with it the sign of the cross on himself, at the same time that he says, *Da propitius pacem in diebus nostris.* After the sign of the cross he kisses the paten, not in the middle, but on the border (*S. R. C.*, 24th July, 1683), where it is not to touch the sacred Host. Then, as he continues, saying, *ut ope misericordiæ tuæ*, he places the paten under the Host, being helped to that effect by the forefinger of the left hand. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Then in the usual manner he uncovers the chalice, and makes a genuflection. Having risen, he takes the Host with the thumb and forefinger of his right hand, raises it over the chalice, and with the help of the thumb and forefinger of his left hand cautiously and skilfully breaks it in the middle, commencing from the upper part, and saying in the mean time, *Per eundem Dominum Nostrum Jesum Christum Filium tuum.** Having divided the Host, he places the portion remaining in his right hand on the paten, still holding the other half over the chalice; then with the thumb and forefinger of his right, he breaks a small piece from the lower part of the second half, at the same time saying, *Qui tecum vivit et regnat;* and holding the small piece over the chalice, he places the portion that is in his left hand on the paten, near the other half, saying, *In unitate Spiritus Sancti Deus.* Then, with his left hand, taking the chalice *per nodum*,

* To break it properly, it should be gently bent in and out two or three times, commencing at the top, then in the middle, and lastly at the end; and returning to the middle, bent again carefully, till it becomes divided. In this manner there is less danger of causing small particles to break off.

he says in a loud voice, *Per omnia sæcula sæculorum. Amen* being answered, he makes three crosses within the cup of the chalice with the small piece of the Host, saying, *Pax ✠ Domini sit ✠ semper vobis✠cum.* In forming these crosses he should not allow the particle to touch the chalice. The server having answered, *Et cum spiritu tuo*, the priest lets the particle fall into the chalice, at the same time saying in a low voice, *Hæc commixtio*, &c. Then having purified his fingers within the cup of the chalice, he covers it as usual, holding his left hand on the foot of the chalice, after which he makes a genuflection.

82. Having risen, he inclines moderately before the Blessed Sacrament, his hands being joined between his breast and the altar; and, in a loud voice, he says, *Agnus Dei qui tollis peccata mundi;* and, having placed his left hand on the corporal, he strikes his breast with the three fingers of his right hand that have not touched the sacred Host, at the same time saying, *Miserere nobis.* In the same manner (without joining the hands), he strikes his breast again at the second *Miserere nobis*, and at the *Dona nobis pacem.* (*Rub. Miss.*) Then, having joined his hands, and placed them as usual on the edge of the altar, but not on the corporal, according to the decree of the Sacred Congregation (7th Sept., 1816), he says, in a low voice, the three prayers prescribed before Communion, his eyes being fixed at the same time on the Sacred Host. (*Rub. Miss.*)

83. Having said the prayers, the priest makes a genuflection, saying, as he rises, *Panem cœlestem accipiam, et nomen Domini invocabo.* (*Rub. Miss.*) Then, with his right hand he takes both parts of the Host at the upper ends, from the paten, and places them between

the forefinger and the thumb of his left hand, in such a manner that the Host preserves its rotundity as much as possible. After this, he takes the paten with his right hand between himself and the chalice, a little above the corporal, and also being somewhat inclined towards the middle of the altar, without resting the left elbow on it, he says three times, in a moderate voice, *Domine, non sum dignus*, &c., slightly striking his breast with the last three fingers of his right hand as many times. Then he continues, in a low voice, *Ut intres*, &c. (*Rub. Miss.*, n. 4.)*

84. Having become erect, he places one part of the Sacred Host on the other; then, with the thumb and forefinger of his right hand, having taken both parts of the Host, thus joined at the bottom, he forms a perpendicular cross, at the same time holding the paten under it. He does not raise the Host so high as to allow the people to see it, nor does he pass the limits of the paten in drawing the transversal line; while he forms the cross, he says, *Corpus Domini nostri Jesu Christi* (inclining at the word *Jesu*) *custodiat animam meam in vitam æternam. Amen.* (*Rub., ib.*) After this, he inclines moderately, rests his elbows on the edge of the altar; and, thus inclined, and holding the paten under the Host, he communicates by reverently introducing the Sacred Host into his mouth.† Should the Host adhere to the

* To give himself time to pronounce these words, the priest may lay his right hand on the corporal, immediately after striking the breast, or he may move the hand slowly as he pronounces the words. (*Baldeschi.*)

† Rubricians differ in describing the method of communicating. It would be extremely difficult to reduce to practice what some of them prescribe on the subject. It is sufficient to say, that such an action is to be done with as much respect and reverence, and, at the same time, as unaffectedly as possible.

palate, he must use his tongue, not his fingers to loosen it.

85. Having received the Sacred Host, the priest becomes erect, lays the paten on the corporal near the edge of the altar, and joins his hands, which he raises towards his chin, without touching it, and his head being a little inclined, he meditates for a few moments. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

86. After a short meditation, he lays the left hand on the foot of the chalice, and, with the right, takes the pall from the chalice, saying, in a low voice, *Quid retribuam Domino pro omnibus quæ retribuit mihi?* and makes a genuflection. Then, having taken the paten between the first and the second fingers of the right hand, and holding it inclined, he passes it gently several times from right to left over the corporal, to gather the fragments that might have fallen on it, for that purpose, raising, with his left hand, the extremity of the corporal. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

87. Having gathered the fragments, he brings the paten over the chalice, and, holding it there, sufficiently inclined, he takes it between the first and second fingers of his left hand, as near as he can to the place where he held it with his right hand; then, with the thumb and forefinger of his right, rubs the paten from top to bottom, so as to bring all the fragments into the chalice; then rubs the same thumb and forefinger together in the middle of the chalice-cup, in order to remove any particle that may have remained on them. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Here the priest places his left hand (still holding the paten) on the corporal, and, with the three free fingers of his right, he takes the chalice under the *nodus*, saying, *Calicem Salutaris*, &c., till *salvus ero*, inclusively. Then he raises the chalice until the top of it

reaches his forehead, and with it he forms a perpendicular cross, in the same manner as he did with the Sacred Host, saying, at the same time, *Sanguis Domini nostri*, &c., and bowing at the word *Jesu*. (*Rub.*, *ib.*, *N. S.*) He then raises the paten under his chin, and brings the chalice to his mouth to receive the precious blood, which he does *uno vel duplici haustu*, together with the particle previously placed in the chalice. It is well to remark, that it is more becoming to hold the chalice steady to the mouth than to move it off and replace it again while the priest consumes the precious blood.

88. Having received the precious blood, or after the communion of the people,* the priest having laid on the corporal his left hand holding the paten, presents the chalice to the server, in order to receive wine for the purification, and at the same time he says, *Quod ore sumpsimus*, &c. Then he takes the wine, holding the paten under his chin, as he did in consuming the precious blood. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)†

---

* Attention should be paid to renew frequently the sacred species preserved in the Ciborium. St. Charles Borromeo ordained that they should be renewed every eighth day, The Sacred Congregation (3d Sept., 1662) prescribed the same thing. "In renovatione quæ quolibet octavo die fieri debet de Augustissimo Sacramento," &c. Clement VIII. (Const. Sanctissimus, 31 Maii, 1595) says, that the sacred species should be renewed at least every fifteen days, and more frequently in damp places. "Hostiæ consecratæ post quindecim dies ad summum (quod in locis humidis, præsertim pluvioso aut hiemato tempore, frequentius fieri debet), una cum minutissimis fragmentorum particulis, quæ in ciborio remanserunt, a sacerdote consumentur, et in ipsum ciborium, aut pyxidem, ab illis fragmentis et particulis mundatam, novæ hostiæ consecratæ reponantur; nec unquam illæ recentes cum his vetustioribus misceantur." The same thing is to be observed regarding the Sacred Host, which is kept for Benediction.

† From a letter of Pius V., 8th January, 1571, quoted by Benedict XIV. (*de Sacrif. Miss.*, lib. 2, ch. 21), we gather that the quantity of

89. After receiving the purification, he puts the chalice and the paten on the corporal, so that the chalice be in the middle, and the paten a little towards the Gospel side; then taking the chalice below the cup with the three last fingers of both hands, he puts the thumbs and forefingers, still joined, over the cup of the chalice, and in this manner he carries the chalice to the Epistle side, where, having placed it on the altar, the server pours on the fingers wine and water, while the priest says, *Corpus tuum Domine*, &c. It is well to remark that the Rubric says, *abluit pollices et indices*, therefore the priest not only washes the extremities of the fingers, but the fingers, by rubbing them against each other, as the server pours wine and water on them. Then holding the chalice in the same manner, he carries it near the purificator, where he places it; and still keeping the thumb and forefinger of the left hand on the cup, he takes the purificator with his right, and places it on the fingers of his left, and as he goes to the middle of the altar he dries his four fingers with the purificator.

90. Having reached the middle of the altar, he places the purificator between the thumb and the forefinger, so as to cover the fingers of the left hand, and with his right he takes the chalice *per nodum*, and takes the last ablution, at the same time holding the purificator under his chin. Then he puts the chalice in the middle of the corporal, wipes his lips gently with the purificator, and with the same in his right hand wipes the interior of the

---

wine poured in the chalice for the purification should be at least equal to that consecrated; also that the purification should be received at that part of the chalice where the precious blood was taken. Should, however, the wine for the purification happen to be less, it will suffice to move the chalice gently, so that it may touch the parts where the Blessed Sacrament reached.

cup of the chalice, holding it by the *nodus* with his left.

91. Lastly, the chalice being dried, he places it at the Gospel side (but not on the corporal); he extends the purificator over the cup as before, and places on it the paten and the pall. Having folded the corporal with both hands, and taken the burse with his right hand, he puts in it the corporal, which he lays on the middle of the altar. Then he covers the chalice with the veil, on which he places the burse, and taking the chalice with both hands, he puts it in the middle of the altar, and adjusts the veil in front as at the commencement of Mass. (*Rub.*, *ib.*; and from the *Sac. Con.*, 5th March, 1698.) Then he joins his hands and goes to the Epistle side, whither the server should have removed the Missal.*

Article XII.

From the Communion until the End of Mass.

92. Having arrived at the Epistle side, the priest, with his hands still joined, reads the Communion in a low voice; then he returns to the middle of the altar, kisses it, turns to the people and says in a loud voice, *Dominus vobiscum*. He rejoins his hands, returns to the Missal, and reads the prayer (or prayers) in the same manner and order in which he had previously read at the commencement of Mass.

93. At the end of the conclusion of the last prayer (unless there is a proper Gospel to be read), the priest

* The Sacred Congregation, consulted by the Bishop of Tuy: "An in Missis privatis, permitti possit ministro si fuerit sacerdos, vel Diaconus, vel Subdiaconus, ut præparet calicem, et ipsum extergat in fine post oblationes sicut in Missa solemni?" Answered: "Negative, et serventur Rubricæ." (7th Sept., 1816, no. 4376, ad. 12.)

closes the book in such a manner that the leaves be turned towards the chalice.

94. Then he goes to the middle of the altar, kisses it, and turning towards the people, he says, *Dominus vobiscum;* and having rejoined his hands, he says, *Ite Missa est*, or if the season or particular Mass requires it, he says, *Benedicamus Domino.* And in this case he says it turned towards the altar.

95. Having said *Ite Missa est*, he turns to the altar, inclines moderately with his joined hands on the edge of the altar, and says in a low voice, *Placeat tibi Sancta Trinitas.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

96. Then he kisses the altar, and having risen, he raises his eyes, extending his hands (which he has elevated as high as his shoulders), and then joining them again before his breast, he says, *Benedicat vos omnipotens Deus;* at this last word he inclines his head, and turns by the Epistle side towards the people, having his hands joined, and his eyes modestly lowered. Then having placed his hand extended below his breast, he blesses the people with his right hand, by forming a cross, and saying in a loud voice, *Pater et Filius, et Spiritus Sanctus.*

To give the blessing properly and unaffectedly, he extends his right hand, having all the fingers united, and the little finger turned towards the people; then without precipitancy drawing a straight line from his eyes to his breast, he says, *Pater et Filius;* he raises his hand vertically to his shoulders, and crosses the first line transversely from left to right, saying, *Et Spiritus Sanctus.* Then he rejoins his hands, and turns towards the Gospel side to the altar corner to say the Gospel of St. John.

97. The last Gospel is read in the same tone of voice, and with the same ceremonies as the first Gospel, except that, when the Gospel of St. John is read, in saying, *Initium Sancti Evangelii*, the priest forms the cross on the altar, or on the card instead of the book. At the *Et Verbum caro factum est*, he makes a genuflection, having the hands extended, and laid on the altar. He also makes a genuflection, if, on reading other Gospels, there are words requiring it, as is the case on the feast of the Epiphany.

98. The Gospel being ended, the priest goes, with his hands joined, to the middle of the altar, takes the chalice by the *nodus* with his left hand, puts his right on the burse, and, turning on his right, he descends to the foot of the altar, where he makes a profound bow; or a genuflection on the floor, if the Blessed Sacrament be in the tabernacle. Having risen, he takes the cap presented to him by the server. As he leaves the altar, he says the anthem *Trium Puerorum*,—the whole of it when the Mass is of double rite; or only commences it, when the Mass is semidouble; to which, in Paschal time, he adds Alleluija. Then he says the *Benedictus*, *Laudate Dominum in Sanctis ejus.* (*Rub. Miss.*)

99. On arriving in the sacristy, he makes a low bow to the cross or other image; then he places the chalice in the sacristy altar, or press, takes off his cap and unrobes. In taking off the vestments, he observes the contrary order from that observed in vesting; for in removing the alb, he draws off the left sleeve first, then passes the alb over his head, and, lastly, draws off the right sleeve. He then kisses the cross on the stole, maniple, and amice, as he did when vesting.

100. Finally, having washed his hands (a praiseworthy

practice, not ordered by the Rubric, but recommended by most Rubricists), without speaking to any person, he goes to make his thanksgiving. If he vested at the altar, he unvests there also, at the Gospel side, as soon as he has read the Gospel, without previously returning to the middle of the altar.

Article XIII.

*On Votive Masses.**

101. A *votive* Mass is one which a priest celebrates for his own devotion, or to comply with the wishes of the faithful, if such Mass differ from that prescribed by the Rubric, or if it do not accord with the Office. There ought to be a legitimate reason for a votive Mass, and it cannot be said on all days.†

The Masses for the dead are classed among votive on Sundays; Doubles; during the octaves of Christmas, Masses. Generally, *requiem* Masses are prohibited Epiphany, Easter, Pentecost, and Corpus Christi; on Ash Wednesday; during Holy Week, and on the vigils of Christmas, Epiphany, and Pentecost.

102. Votive Masses, generally speaking, are prohibited on days when *requiem* Masses cannot be celebrated.

Newly ordained priests who are charged by the Bishop to say three Masses—one of the Holy Ghost, the other

---

* This article is transcribed from the Ceremonies of Low Mass by Rev. James Hughes.

† Although the Mass, on Doubles, ought to accord with the Office, there is an exception for Quarter Tense Saturdays, on which a Bishop, if he confer Holy Orders, always says the Ferial Mass. This is an ancient usage, confirmed by many decrees of the Congregation of S. Rites. These are three in the general Collection. (11th July, 1739; 21st March, 1744; 11th Feb., 1764; n. 3942, 4004, and 4171.)

of the Blessed Virgin, and the third for the departed faithful, after their first Mass—can wait for the days on which these Masses may be celebrated; but the obligation is discharged by applying the Mass of the day to the intention prescribed, and by adding the oration of the votive Mass, after those of precept, if the Rubric permit it. If the faithful request a votive Mass to be celebrated on a day when it is not allowed, the obligation is discharged by saying the Mass of the day.

103. One solemn *requiem* Mass can be celebrated, if the body be present, on all days, except on the more solemn festivals of the first class and of precept, on the festival of the Titular, and on the three last days of Holy Week.* If an interment occur on such days, and if Mass can be said, the oration for the dead is not added after that of the day.

104. The Church considers that more latitude ought also to be given for *saying* the Mass *Pro Sponso et Sponsa* in which the nuptial benediction is conferred. The decree on this subject, dated the 20th of December, 1783, was confirmed by Pius VI., on the 7th of January, 1784, and the same Pontiff orders its publication and observance in the entire catholic world. This is the text: "In celebratione nuptiarum quæ fit extra diem Dominicum, vel alium diem festum de præcepto, seu in quo occurrat Duplex primæ vel secundæ classis; etiamsi fiat Officium et Missa de Festo Duplici per annum, sive majori, sive minori; dicendam esse Missam pro Sponso et Sponsa, in fine Missalis post alias Missas votivas specialiter assignatam: in diebus vero Dominicis, aliisque diebus festis de præcepto, ac Duplicibus primæ

* Decrees of 5th July, 1698; 11th Aug., 1736; 29th Jan., 1752; 8th April, 1808; n. 3328, 3901, 4074, *ad* 12 *et* 13, 4357, *ad* I.

et secundæ classis, dicendam esse Missam de Festo, cum Commemoratione Missæ pro Sponso et Sponsa."* Another decree of the 28th of February, referring to this, orders the Rubrics of votive Masses to be observed in the above-mentioned Mass: that is, to omit *Gloria in excelsis* and *Credo*, and to say three orations.

105. In votive Masses, those for the dead excepted, the psalm *Judica* and *Gloria Patri* at the *Lavabo* are said, even at votive Masses of the passion, or of the cross, which may happen to be celebrated in Passion time. But *Gloria in excelsis* is ordinarily omitted, except at Masses of the Blessed Virgin on Saturday, at Masses of angels, and at those of the Saints on the day of their death, which is considered as a species of festival.† It is likewise said at solemn votive Masses celebrated for some weighty cause,‡ unless *violet* ornaments are used.

106. Three orations are ordinarily said. The first is that of the votive Mass; the second is that of the office; and the third, that which would have been said in the second place in the Mass of the day, unless some commemoration is to be made. When the Blessed Sacra-

* This decree has been inserted in the *Rituale Romanum;* it is n. 4266 in the Collection. The other decree is n. 4394. It is easy to infer that the above Mass cannot be said on days which exclude either the greater or lesser Doubles; for instance, the entire octave of the Epiphany, the vigil of Pentecost, &c.

† Romsée, after Gavantus.

‡ By Masses *pro re gravi* the Congregation of Rites means those at which the Bishop and clergy, &c., assist. (Dec. of 19th May, 1607; n. 204, *ad* 14.) Clothing or religious profession is not to be reckoned among the causes which warrant the singing of a votive Mass of the Holy Ghost, on a Sunday or a Double. (Dec. of 24th July, 1683, n. 2060, *ad* 5.) Rubricians give the same decision regarding the first Masses of newly-ordained priests, and the Masses of the fiftieth year. (*Rit. sac. ad usum Diœc. Mechlin.*)

ment is exposed, the oration thereof is always added. If a votive Mass *de B. V. Maria* be said, the third oration is *de Spiritu Sancto.*

107. During Advent, *Alleluia* and its versicle are said at votive Masses, though not at ferial ones; and at the times of Septuagesima and Lent the tract is said, though not said at all ferial Masses in these times.

108. The *Credo* is generally omitted at votive Masses. At solemn Masses *pro re gravi*, it may be sung; if, however, violet ornaments be used, the *Credo* must be omitted, unless it be a Sunday. The *Credo* is not said in private votive Masses, during an octave.

109. If the votive Mass have a proper preface, it is said; if not, the common preface is used, or that of the time or of an octave, if there be a proper preface for either. For the *Communicantes*, see the note of no. 7. In votive Masses the Gospel of St. John is always said. *White* vestments are used at votive Masses De SS. Trinitate, De SS. Eucharistiæ Sacramento, De S. Maria, De Angelis, In Annivers. Elect. seu Consecr. Episcopi, Pro Sponso et Sponsa; *red*, at Masses De Spiritu Sancto, De Sancta Cruce, De SS. Apost., Pro eligendo S. Pontifice; *violet*, at those De Pass. D. N. J. C. Ad tollendum Schisma, Pro quâcumque necessitate; and at the eight other votive Masses which follow in the Missal. At those of saints, the color is the same as on their feasts; and at *requiem* Masses it is always black.

110. We can refer to this article the Mass which a priest ought to celebrate in a Church where the office differs from his own. What Mass then ought a priest

to celebrate where the *ordo* differs from his own, either with regard to the rite of a feast, or the day on which it is fixed?

111. If he say Mass in a church, where a festival is celebrated solemnly and with concourse of people, for instance, on the feast of its patron or on the day of its dedication, he ought to conform to the rite and to the color of this Church. He would even do better to say the Mass of such Church, without taking any notice of his own office, unless on a Sunday or a privileged feria, a commemoration of which is never omitted. If he celebrate High Mass, on a day of obligation, or even on a day when devotion attracts a concourse of people, he is obliged to follow, exclusively, the rite of the Church where he is, without paying any attention to the office he has recited.

112. If he go, through devotion, to say Mass in a Church where the festival of a saint is solemnly celebrated, he can say the proper Mass, if it have been granted to the whole Church; or, if not, he can say the common. This has been decided, with some exceptions, by many decrees of the Congregation of Sacred Rites.*

113. On other days, not celebrated with such solemnity, if the color be the same as that of his own church, he can say Mass conformably to his office.

114. If the office of the place be of double rite, or if votive or *requiem* Masses be inconsistent with the office of the place, he must conform at least to the color.

If his own office be of double rite, he cannot say a votive Mass, although the office of the place be com-

* See *Traité des SS. Mystères*, ch. 12, n. 5.

patible with it; nor a *requiem* Mass, unless there be in the same Church, on that day, solemn *Exequies* for the dead.*

CHAPTER II.

ORDER TO BE OBSERVED IN CELEBRATING TWO MASSES ON THE SAME DAY.

1. When a priest is authorized to say two Masses (which can only be done on Sundays and feasts of obligation), in order to afford an opportunity for a considerable number of people to comply with the precept of assisting at the Holy Sacrifice, he may be much perplexed as to how he should act with regard to the chalice and the ablution of the fingers, especially if he has to say the second Mass in another Church, and at some distance. The Sacred Congregation of Rites, in an instruction approved by Pope Pius IX. the 11th day of March, 1858, prescribes that when a priest is obliged to celebrate Mass in two different Churches on the same day, he should, in consuming the precious blood (during the first Mass), use the utmost diligence to take the whole of it. Then he places the chalice on the corporal, covers it with the pall, and with his hands joined, standing in the middle of the altar, he says, *Quod ore sumpsimus.* After which, drawing towards him the little water vase, he washes his fingers, saying at the same

* All these rules have been extracted from several decrees of the Congregation of Rites; 11th June, 1701; 4th Sept., 1745; 7th May, 1746; 29th Jan., 1752; n. 3437, ad 2, et 3; 4026, ad 8; 4032, ad. 13; 4074, ad 10, et 11. See also Romsée, tom. 1, art. 5, and tom. 5, n. 39.

time, *Corpus tuum Domine*, &c., and then wipes them. The chalice being still on the corporal, removing the pall, he places on it the purificator, then the paten, the pall, and lastly the veil. He then continues the Mass, and having finished reading the last Gospel, goes to the middle of the altar, where, uncovering the chalice, he examines whether any of the precious blood has collected at the bottom, which often happens, for although the sacred species were at first carefully consumed, nevertheless, in the very act of consuming, drops are spread around the surface, and will not collect at the bottom until the chalice is again in its position for a while. If, then, there still remains a drop of the divine blood, he will carefully take it from the same side of the chalice from which he had consumed. He should by all means do so, as the sacrifice still morally lasts, and by divine precept is to be completed by the consummation of the species still existing. After this, the priest will pour into the chalice at least as much water as he had before poured wine, and by gently moving the chalice cause the water to pass around, and then empty it in the vessel used for that purpose by the same side of the chalice from which he received the precious blood. Then wiping the chalice with the purificator, he covers it as usual, and leaves the altar.

2. The priest having unvested and made his thanksgiving, if he is to say mass on the following day, in the same place, he will preserve that water, and pour it in the chalice at the second purification; or he will cause it to be absorbed by raw cotton, or tow, which he burns; or if it be left to evaporate, he puts it in the *Sacrarium*, or in the *Piscina*.

3. This chalice having been used by the priest, being

now purified, if he needs it for the second Mass he can take it with him, or he can use another. (*S. R. C.*, 11th March, 1858.)

4. When a priest is obliged to say two Masses in the same Church, having received the precious blood, and covered the chalice with the pall, he says the *Quod ore*, &c., and washes his fingers with water while saying, *Corpus tuum*, &c. He then covers the chalice as directed above, and at the end of the Gospel he consumes the drops of the precious blood that may still remain in the chalice; he then covers the chalice with the purificator, paten, and pall, and then places it in the tabernacle, with the usual genuflections. Then having joined his hands he leaves the altar.

5. Having said the offertory of the second Mass, the priest extends the corporal on the altar, opens the tabernacle door, makes a genuflection, and takes out the chalice, being careful to place it on the corporal, or on the pall. After communion, having received from the server the last ablution, he adds to it the water with which he purified his fingers at the first Mass, and then continues as usual.

CHAPTER III.

LOW MASS FOR THE DEAD.*

1. There should be no flowers on the altar. The antipendium must be black, without any emblems of

* Low Mass for the dead, even *præsente cadavere*, cannot be said on Sundays, festivals of double rite, nor during the octaves of Christmas,

death either on it or around the altar. The canopy of the tabernacle ought to be removed, unless the color of it be purple. The vestments should be black.

2. At the commencement of Mass, the priest having made the sign of the cross and said the anthem *Introibo*, omits the psalm *Judica* and the *Gloria Patri*, &c., and says, *Adjutorium Nostrum in Nomine Domini*, making at the same time the sign of the cross.

3. He does not make the sign of the cross at the Introit, but having placed the left hand on the Missal (or on the altar), with the right extended, he makes the sign of the cross on the Missal, without, however, touching it. Instead of the *Gloria Patri*, he says, *Requiem æternum*, &c. The *Gloria in Excelsis* is not said. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii., rit. xiii.)

4. At the *Munda cor meum*, the *Jube Domine*, with *Dominus sit*, &c., are omitted. After the Gospel he does not kiss the book, nor does he say, *Per Evangelica*, &c. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

5. While saying *Deus qui humanæ substantiæ*, he does not bless the water; at the end of the Psalm *Lavabo* he omits the *Gloria Patri*, without saying any thing in its place. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

6. At the *Agnus Dei*, instead of saying *miserere nobis*, he says, *Dona eis requiem;* and at the third he says, *Dona eis requiem sempiternam.* He does not strike his breast in pronouncing these words, but keeps his hands joined before him, without touching the altar.

Epiphany, Easter, Pentecost, and Corpus Christi, nor on the vigils of Christmas, Epiphany, Pentecost, or on Ash-Wednesday, nor during Holy Week. "Missæ privatæ de requiem, etiam corpore presente et insepulto, dici non possunt diebus quibus fit de officio duplici, vel aliis a Rubrica exceptis." (*S. R. C.*, 29th Jan., 1752.)

7. He omits the first of the three prayers before Communion. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)*

8. At the end of the Mass, instead of *Ite missa est*, he says, *Requiescant in pace*, turned towards the altar, not to the people. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Having said the prayer *Placeat*, he does not say *Benedicat vos*, nor does he give the blessing to the people (even had he given communion during Mass), but goes to the Gospel side of the altar, where he says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the Gospel of St. John.

9. It is to be remarked, that as often as only one prayer is to be said, the *Dies iræ* should be said; and this occurs, 1st, on All Souls' Day; 2d, on the day of the death or interment; 3d, on the third, seventh, and thirtieth day after interment, and on the first anniversary, which are called privileged days for the dead.

---

* Communion may be given at Masses for the dead, either with particles consecrated at the same Mass, or with others which had been reserved in the tabernacle, provided there be no custom having force of law to the contrary in the diocese. This conclusion is drawn from the fact that there are a number of conflicting decrees about this matter. Benedict XIV., in his book *De Sacrificio Missæ* (lib. 3, cap. 18, n. 10, 11, 12), holds that communion may be given at Masses of the dead either with particles consecrated at Mass, or with others reserved in the tabernacle. This he maintains, notwithstanding the decree of the *S. C.*, 2d September, 1741, which says: "In paramentis nigri coloris non ministratur Eucharistia per modum Sacramenti, scilicet, cum particulis præconsecratis extrahendo pyxidem é custodia; potest tamen ministrari per modum sacrificii prout est quando Fidelibus præbetur communionem cum particulis intra eandam missam consecratis." The master of ceremonies of the Cathedral of Palermo having consulted the Sacred Congregation to learn whether he ought to follow Benedict XIV. or the above-mentioned decree, the answer given on the 12th of April, 1823, was, that the decision was referred until after a special examination of the question: from which answer the editor of the collection of decrees concludes, that every Church should conform to what has been hitherto practised therein.

CHAPTER IV.

LOW MASS WHEN THE BLESSED SACRAMENT IS EXPOSED.

1. It should be remarked, that it would be better not to celebrate Low Mass at an altar on which the Blessed Sacrament is exposed, according to the ceremonial of Bishops (lib. i., ch. xii., sec. 9), which states, that the discipline of the Church is very ancient, to which the practice of the Patriarchal Churches of Rome, and of the best regulated churches, is conformable. Nevertheless, when there is a just reason to celebrate at such an altar, the following ceremonies should be exactly observed.

2. In going to the altar, as soon as the priest comes in sight of the Blessed Sacrament, he takes off his cap, and gives it to the server. Being arrived at the foot of the altar, he kneels on both knees, and bows profoundly; he then ascends the altar, sets the chalice thereon, makes a genuflection only on one knee (which kind of genuflection is made when it is to be made on the platform), and arranges the corporal and chalice. He again makes a genuflection, goes to the Epistle side, opens the Missal, returns to the middle, makes a genuflection, and turning a little towards the Gospel side, he descends to the foot of the steps, makes a genuflection on one knee only, and, without bowing, begins Mass.

3. After the confession, without making a genuflection, he goes up to the altar, and makes there a genuflection, before he commences the *Oramus te Domine.*

After the *Oramus*, he again makes a genuflection, and goes to the Missal for the *Introit*.

A General Rule.—A genuflection is to be made, whenever the celebrant goes from the middle to either side of the altar; the same when he goes from either side to the middle, with this difference only, that when he goes from the middle, he first kisses the altar or performs any action prescribed, and then makes the genuflection, this being the last thing to be done. When he leaves any side to go to the middle, the first act on arriving there is to make the genuflection, then to kiss the altar, or perform any other duty.

4. At the *Dominus vobiscum*, he turns back a little towards the Gospel side; and only half turned towards the people, he says, *Dominus vobiscum*, which must be observed whenever he turns towards the people.

5. When he is about to wash his hands, he makes first a genuflection, then goes down the steps by the Epistle side, and avoiding to turn his back to the altar, turns so that his right side be next to the corner of the Epistle, and his face towards the people; and there he washes and wipes his hands, then returns to the middle of the altar, and makes a genuflection.

6. He says *Orate fratres* in the same way as the *Dominus vobiscum*, without completing a perfect circle. The remaining part, till communion, is the same as in other Masses.

7. After the first ablution, without removing from his place, he receives the second ablution, having his face turned as much as possible towards the Blessed Sacrament. (*Bauldry*, part iv., ch. ix., art. ii., n. 12.) Then he wipes his hand, takes the ablution, and adjusts the chalice as usual.

8. He then continues the Mass, observing the genuflections prescribed, and the manner of turning himself at the *Dominus vobiscum*, and *Ite, missa est.* Should he have to say, *Benedicamus Domino*, instead of the *Ite, missa est*, he turns round to the altar, and makes a genuflection before he says it.

9. After the *Placeat tibi*, he kisses the altar, says, *Benedicat vos omnipotens Deus*, and, instead of the usual bow, makes a genuflection, and turning towards the people, he gives his blessing. He does not, however, make a perfect circle, neither does he make another genuflection; but turning to the Gospel side, he says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and reads the last Gospel, recollecting to sign himself with the cross. (*Rub. Miss., Fer V., in Cœnâ Domini.*)

10. At the *Verbum caro factum est*, as on all other occasions without exception, he turns a little towards the Blessed Sacrament when he makes the genuflection

11. At the end, he goes to the middle, makes a genuflection, descends, a little on the right, to the floor, makes a genuflection on both knees, and bows. He then returns to the sacristy, putting on his cap at the place he had taken it off when going to the altar.

CHAPTER V.

OF LOW MASS IN PRESENCE OF PRELATES.

1. By prelates, are here understood Cardinals in every part of the world, Archbishops throughout their whole province, and Bishops in their dioceses. Others are not so considered; neither are the above when they are incognito, or not in their robes.

2. If possible, the priest should be vested and at the altar before the arrival of the prelate, and should be standing on the floor of the sanctuary, at the Gospel side, with his hands joined, waiting for him, and having previously prepared the chalice and Missal on the altar.

3. On the arrival of the prelate, he salutes him with a low bow, and on receiving the sign to begin Mass, he again bows to him; then turns a little towards the altar, makes a low bow, and begins Mass in the same place and position. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii., tit. iii., n. 2.)

The practice introduced, is to commence Mass immediately after the salutation, without waiting for a sign from the prelate.

4. If the prelate arrive before at the altar, the priest, whether he has the chalice or not, salutes him from a convenient place; then bowing to the altar, he arranges on it whatever is necessary, descends on the floor to the place above mentioned, and after bowing to the prelate, he commences Mass.

5. At the *Confiteor*, instead of saying, *et vobis fratres, et vos fratres*, turning and bowing to the prelate, he says, *et tibi Pater, et te Pater.* (*Rub., ib.*, n. 8): if there be more than one, *et vobis Patres, et vos Patres.*

6. After the confession, having said *Oremus*, he bows to the prelate, then ascends to the altar, and continues Mass as usual. (*Rub., ib.*, n. 10.)

7. At the end of the Gospel he does not kiss the book, neither does he say, *Per Evangelica dicta.* The attendant takes the book to the prelate to kiss. (*Rub., ib.*, tit. vi., n. 2.) Even should the prelate not kiss it (which happens when there are many, no one kisses it), the priest should also omit to kiss it.

8. After the *Agnus Dei*, except in Masses for the

dead, when he has said the first prayer before communion, he kisses the altar, then the instrument of peace (which the attendant presents, kneeling at his right hand), saying *Pax tecum*, the attendant answers, *Et cum spiritu tuo* (*Rub.*, *ib.*, tit. x., n. 3), and takes it, covered with a cloth, to the prelate to kiss; or, to several, saying to each one, *Pax tecum;* they answering, *Et cum spiritu tuo.* He makes a bow to them after they have kissed it, not before. (*Cærem. Episc.*, lib. i., ch. xxix., sec. 8.) The priest continues the other prayers.

9. In giving the blessing, after having said, *Benedicat vos Omnipotens Deus*, he bows to the cross; then turning to the Bishop, he makes a low bow, as if requesting permission to bless the people, and says, *Pater, et Filius, et Spiritus Sanctus*, blessing the people only on the side opposite the prelate. (*Rub.*, *ib.*, tit. xii., n. 3.) If the prelate should be in the middle, he blesses on the Gospel side.

10. After the last Gospel, without going to the middle of the altar, he turns to the prelate, and makes a low bow (*Rub.*, *ib.*, ii., 5), and remains there until the Bishop leaves.

11. Should the prelate remain, the priest goes to the middle, takes the chalice, descends from the altar, makes a low bow to the cross, and another to the Bishop, puts on his cap, and proceeds to the sacristy.

12. The instrument of peace is not presented to prelates out of their diocese. A bow is made to them in going to and coming from the altar, and, according to the opinion of some Rubricists, at the end of the Gospel. In other respects, every thing is done as if they were not present.

CHAPTER VI.

GIVING COMMUNION.

Article I.

Giving Communion during Mass.

1. The practice of giving communion to the people during Mass, being more conformable to antiquity, is preferable to that of giving it before or after Mass. A quantity of small Hosts should be prepared, corresponding with the number of persons to receive. If there are many, it is better to make use of a ciborium; if only a few, they may be placed either on the corporal at the left side, or on the paten; but, in all cases, they should be on the altar before the Offertory. In making the Offertory, the priest extends the intention also to the small Hosts; and after the Offertory, if the Hosts are on the paten, he will place them on the corporal, near the large Host, a little at the left side.

If the ciborium is used, before the Offertory, he brings it nearer to himself and uncovers it. After the Offertory, he covers it again, and places it a little in the rear of the chalice, but not off the corporal.

3. At the consecration, if the small Hosts are on the corporal, he does not touch them. If the ciborium is there, he uncovers it before pronouncing the words of consecration, as was said above for the Offertory; and after the elevation of the sacred Host, having made the genuflection, he covers it, and puts it in its place.

4. Having consumed the precious blood, and placed the chalice on the corporal, he covers it with the pall.

If the small Hosts are on the corporal, he makes a genuflection before touching them, and then he reverently places them on the paten, and again makes a genuflection. Meanwhile the server says the *Confiteor*; after which the priest turns to the right, and, facing the corner of the Epistle, says, in a loud voice, *Misereatur vestri* (not *tui*, although there may be only one communicant). The server having answered *Amen*, he says, *Indulgentiam*, &c., at the same time making a sign of the cross with his right hand over the communicants, in the same manner as he gives the blessing at the end of Mass. If the small Hosts are in a ciborium, after having covered the chalice with the pall, he brings the ciborium between himself and the chalice, uncovers it, makes a genuflection, and turns towards the people to say *Misereatur*, &c.

5. Having said *Indulgentiam*, &c., he turns to the altar, makes a genuflection, and between the middle and forefinger of his left hand he takes the paten or the ciborium by the *nodus;* and, having taken one of the Hosts with the thumb and forefinger of his right hand, he raises it a little above the paten or ciborium, and in that position turns to the people. Then, having his eyes modestly fixed on the Blessed Sacrament, he says, in a clear and unaffectedly devout tone of voice, *Ecce Agnus Dei, ecce qui tollit peccata mundi;* and then, three times, *Domine non sum dignus, ut intres sub tectum meum, sed tantum dic verbo, et sanabitur anima mea.* (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii., rit. x., 1, 6.)

6. Having said these words, he descends by the middle of the altar, not by the side (*S. R. C.*, Sept., 1737), and approaches the communicants, beginning at the Epistle side. Before giving communion, the priest makes, each

time, a sign of the cross with the Host, above the paten or ciborium, taking care not to pass the limits of either; while he says, *Corpus Domini nostri ✠ Jesu Christi*, bowing at these last words, he puts the Host in the mouth of the communicant, saying, *Custodiat animam tuam in vitam æternam. Amen.* In giving holy communion, the priest will be careful to lay the Host on the tongue of the communicant in such a manner that it will adhere to it; at the same time, he will carefully avoid touching the communicant's lips or tongue with his fingers.* When there are many communicants, and the first row have received, the priest should not continue to give communion by retrograding, but should recommence at the Epistle side; and, as he passes by the middle of the altar, he makes no genuflection, even should the Blessed Sacrament be exposed.

7. Having given communion, the priest returns to the altar, without saying any thing, keeping the thumb and forefinger of his right hand united over the paten or ciborium. If any Hosts remain, and there is no place to put them, he makes a genuflection and consumes them. If they had been on the corporal, he gathers the fragments with the paten, and causes them to fall in the chalice; then, receiving the purification, continues Mass as usual.

8. Should the priest give communion with Hosts already consecrated, having consumed the precious blood,

---

* If there are ecclesiastics in surplice to receive holy communion, they kneel on the top step of the altar. If there are priests or deacons, they should wear a stole, and receive first. Lay persons should kneel at the railing, or any other place where the communion cloth is prepared. It is not permitted to use the chalice veil or finger towel for a communion cloth.

he puts the chalice at the Gospel side, on the corporal, and covers it with the pall. Then, having removed the altar-card, he opens the door of the tabernacle, and makes a genuflection. Then he takes out the ciborium, places it in the middle of the corporal, closes the tabernacle door, uncovers the ciborium, and makes another genuflection. Meanwhile the server says the *Confiteor*, after which the priest says, *Misereatur*, &c., and then continues as described above.

9. After having given communion, he returns to the altar, makes a genuflection, covers the ciborium, opens the tabernacle, and places the ciborium within, makes another genuflection, closes the door, and replaces the card before it. Then he receives the purification, and continues Mass.

Article II.

Purification of the Ciborium.

10. The priest having received the precious blood, and given holy communion (if it had to be given), he consumes the small Hosts that remain in the ciborium. Then, taking with his left hand the ciborium by the *nodus*, brings the opening of it over the chalice, and, with the forefinger and thumb of his right hand, causes the particles to fall from the ciborium into the chalice. If necessary, he gets a little wine into the ciborium, and gently moves it in such a manner that the wine may pass all around, and detach the small particles that may still remain. To do this more thoroughly, he may use the forefinger of his right hand; and then he pours that wine into the chalice, after which he wipes the interior of the ciborium with the purificator. If newly conse-

ciated Hosts are to be placed in the ciborium, he does so; after which, he makes a genuflection, covers the ciborium, and replaces it in the tabernacle. Otherwise, he covers the empty ciborium, and puts it off the corporal. This being done, he presents the chalice to the server, to receive wine for the purification, and continues Mass.*

Article III.

On giving Communion at other times.

11. When circumstances require that communion should be given immediately before Mass, the priest proceeds to the altar, clothed in the vestments in which he is to celebrate (provided, however, that they are not black), he places the chalice on the Gospel side, the veil concealing it from the people, and then, having taken the corporal from the burse, extends it upon the altar. After which, he opens the tabernacle, makes a genuflection, takes the ciborium, places it on the corporal, and proceeds as directed in Nos. 4, 5, and 6. Communion being over, should he perceive any particle on his fingers, he must let it fall into the ciborium. Then he makes a genuflection, purifies his fingers in the little water-vase, which is kept near the tabernacle for this purpose, wipes them with the purificator, saying during this time, "O sacrum convivium in quo Christus sumitur, recolitur memoria Passionis ejus, mens impletur gratia, et futuræ gloriæ nobis pignus datur." During the Paschal time,

* Quarti, Murati, and other Rubricists remark, that, in purifying the ciborium, such particles as may be found in it should not be brought to the mouth with the fingers, nor received with the mouth at the edge of the ciborium; for, besides the impropriety of so doing, there is danger of losing some of the particles.

Alleluja is added to the above anthem. Then he says, *Panem de Cœlo prestitisti eis*, and the server answers, *Omne delectamentum in se habentem*, with *Alleluja* in Paschal time, and during the octave of *Corpus Christi*. Then, without adding, *Domine exaudi*, &c., and *Dominus vobiscum* (*S. R. C.*, 16th June, 1663), he says, *Oremus*.

"Deus qui nobis sub sacramento mirabili Passionis tuæ memoriam reliquisti; tribue quæsumus, ita nos corporis et sanguinis tui sacra mysteria venerari, ut redemptionis tuæ fructum in nobis jugiter sentiamus. Qui vivis et regnas cum Deo Patre," &c., and the server answers, *Amen*. During Paschal time, instead of the above prayer, the following is said. *Oremus*. "Spiritum nobis, Domine, tuæ caritatis infunde, ut quos Sacramentis Paschalibus satiasti, tua facias pietate concordes. Per Christum Dominum nostrum." The server answers, *Amen*. After this, he replaces the ciborium in the tabernacle, makes another genuflection, closes the door, locks it, and removes the key. (Should the priest foresee that he is to give communion during Mass, or immediately after, the key may be left in the door of the tabernacle.) Then he places the chalice in the middle of the altar, on the corporal, and gives the blessing (to those who received communion) in the following manner.

12. The chalice being arranged, the priest extends, elevates, and rejoins his hands, raising his eyes at the same time, and says, *Benedictio Dei omnipotentis;* at these words bowing to the cross. Having turned to those who received holy communion, he continues, *Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti*, and he makes the sign of the cross, adding the words, *Descendat super vos, et maneat semper*. The server answers, *Amen*. Then, without

turning to the altar, he descends the steps, and having made the requisite genuflection or bow, he commences Mass.

13. When communion is given immediately after Mass, the priest, having finished the last Gospel, goes to the middle of the altar, and puts the chalice on the Gospel side; then, taking the corporal from the burse, opens the tabernacle, and proceeds as in No. 11. The ciborium being replaced in the tabernacle, the door of it should be locked, and the key placed on the altar. After the blessing, the corporal is again put in the burse, which he places on the chalice, and on the burse he puts the key of the tabernacle, and he returns in the usual manner to the sacristy.

14. When communion is given at other times, the priest washes his hands, puts on a surplice and a stole of the same color as that used for the day, or white; should the priest wear a cape, he takes it off for the occasion. (*S. R. C.*, 12th July, 1628.) He goes to the altar with his head covered and his hands joined, being preceded by the server, who should have lighted the candles previously, and carried to the altar the burse, with the key of the tabernacle and the communion cloth, unless the latter had been already prepared. If the server be a layman, the priest will carry the burse before his breast, and take along also the key of the tabernacle. Having arrived in front of the altar, he gives his cap to the server, and makes a genuflection before ascending the steps. Then he goes up to the altar, unfolds the corporal, and places the burse against the gradus as at Mass. He opens the tabernacle, makes a genuflection, takes the ciborium from the tabernacle, and places it on the corporal; he uncovers the ciborium,

places the cover on the corporal, and again he makes a genuflection. He continues the rest as before noticed in No. 11. After communion he replaces the ciborium in the tabernacle, gives the blessing to those who have communicated, puts the corporal into the burse, bows to the cross, and, after descending the steps, he makes a genuflection, and puts on his cap; the burse is carried either by the priest or the server. He returns to the sacristy, where, having bowed to the cross, he takes off the stole and surplice, and the server returns to extinguish the lights.

CHAPTER VII.

MANNER OF SERVING A PRIEST AT LOW MASS.

Article I.

General Remarks.

1. The server should consider himself highly honored, being permitted to attend on a priest offering the most Holy Sacrifice. He should therefore perform this important office with great purity of conscience, rectitude of intention, devotion and decorum.

2. In making the sign of the cross, he should put his left hand a little below the breast, and touching the forehead, the breast, and the left and right shoulders with the fingers of his right hand, he should say: *In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen.*

3. A simple inclination is made by bending moderately the head downwards. A simple bow implies an inclination of the head and a moderate bending of the body. A low bow is made by bending the head and body pro-

foundly, yet not so much as to render the action unseemly. A bow is considered sufficiently profound, when the person that makes it, being in that position, can reach the knee with the extremity of his hand.

4. To make a genuflection, one should bring the right knee down to the floor near the left foot, without inclining the body, and then rise up again naturally, without too great haste.

5. A genuflection on both knees is made by first bending the right knee to the floor, then the left likewise to the floor; and, having made a low bow, the person rises by lifting the left knee first, and then the right.

6. To join one's hands properly, the palm of one hand should be applied to the palm of the other, and both held upwards against the breast. The thumb of the right hand should cross the thumb of the left. During the Holy Sacrifice, whenever the hands are not necessarily employed, they should be joined.

7. The server should make an inclination whenever he hears the priest pronounce the holy name of Jesus, of Mary, or of the saint whose festival is celebrated, and on other occasions marked in the third article.

8. In answering, he should take care to pronounce distinctly, and not too loud, or too quickly. His manner should be grave without affectation. He should hold his head a little inclined, and his eyes modestly lowered.

9. To put on the surplice in a proper manner, the server should open the lower part of it, and with both his hands pass it over the head upon his shoulders. Afterwards he introduces first the right arm in the right sleeve, and then the left in the other sleeve; and having adjusted it about his person, fastens it in front. In taking it off, he should first loose the strings, then withdraw

his left arm from the sleeve, and lifting the surplice from the left side above the head over his right shoulder, he takes it off from the right arm.

Article II.

Of the Vesting of the Priest.

1. At the appointed time the server puts on the surplice; and if no one is appointed to prepare the cruets, light the candles, and make other necessary preparations, he should attend to it. Then he places himself at the left of the priest and helps him to vest. Whilst the priest puts on the amice, the server prepares the alb, and then puts it on him, and assists him by holding up first the right sleeve of the alb, and then the left. Afterwards he takes the girdle (keeping the tassels at his right) and gives it to the priest, so that he may easily gird himself. He should take care to adjust the alb in such a manner as to let it hang equally around, about an inch from the floor. After that he presents to him the maniple to kiss, and fastens it on his left arm. Then he hands him the stole, and finally he assists him in putting on the chasuble. After the priest is vested, he takes the Missal, holding it with both his hands before his breast, having the back of it to his right. He makes a low bow to the chief image in the sacristy, with the priest, and a simple bow to him, and goes before him to the altar.

Article III.

From the beginning of the Mass to the end of it.

1. Being arrived before the lowest step of the altar, the server places himself at the right of the priest, from

whom he receives the cap, kissing it, after kissing the priest's hand. He makes a genuflection on the floor with the priest, or (if the Blessed Sacrament be not there) a profound bow; and raising a little the priest's vesture, he ascends the steps with him. He places the book on the stand, so as to have the back of it turned to the right. (The server does not open the book.) Then he puts the cap at a suitable place, and goes to the Gospel side, kneels on the floor at the left of the priest, a little in the rear, and joins his hands.

2. When the priest descends to the floor to commence Mass, and makes a genuflection or a bow, the server makes a profound bow. He makes the sign of the cross with him, and answers at the confession. He bows at the *Gloria Patri*. After the priest has said the *Confiteor*, the server, inclining a little towards the priest, says *Misereatur tui*, &c.; then, bowing profoundly towards the altar, he says the *Confiteor*. At the words *et tibi Pater*, *et te Pater*, he turns his head somewhat towards the priest. He strikes his breast when he says *mea culpa*, *mea culpa*, *mea maxima culpa*. When the priest has said *Misereatur vestri*, &c., the server raises his head. At the words *Deus tu conversus*, he inclines a little. At the words *Dominus vobiscum*, he rises and raises a little the priest's alb, while he ascends the steps. Then he kneels on the lowest step, and remains there till the end of the Epistle.

3. He says the *Kyrie eleison* alternately with the priest. If the celebrant says *Flectamus genua*, the server answers, *Levate*. If there be more than one epistle, he answers, *Deo gratias*, at the end of each of them. The Epistle or Epistles being read, he rises, makes a genuflection or a bow in the middle, and goes

to the book. If the priest makes a genuflection, as happens during Lent, the server makes also a genuflection. When the priest has done reading, the server carries the book with the stand to the Gospel side, making a genuflection or a bow in the middle, as he passes. Having placed the book on the altar, he turns it a little to the right, and goes below the platform near the book. He answers at the *Dominus vobiscum;* and at the words *Sequentia Sancti Evangelii* he puts his left hand on his breast, and with the thumb of the right he makes a cross on his forehead, lips, and breast. As the priest pronounces the name of *Jesus* in the beginning of the Gospel, the server bows towards the book, and goes down on the floor to the Epistle side, making a genuflection or a bow in the middle. If the name of Jesus be not mentioned, then he bows to the priest, and goes to his place, and there he stands during the Gospel, at the end of which he answers, *Laus tibi Christe*, and kneels down.

4. If the *Credo* be said, the server kneels down during it, and makes a low bow at the words, *Et incarnatus est*, &c. Having answered at the *Dominus vobiscum*, he rises and goes to the side-table, takes the cruets, and carries them to the altar on the Epistle side. (He folds the veil of the chalice, if the priest leaves it unfolded.) When the celebrant approaches the corner of the Epistle, the server bows to him, and presents the cruet with wine to him, after first kissing it; he receives it back, kissing it, and presents to him the cruet with water, kissing it both before giving it and after receiving it. (He does not kiss the priest's hand.) Afterwards he puts the towel on the altar in such a manner that the priest may easily take it, when he is to wipe his fingers. At the

words "*Veni sanctificator*, he takes in his right hand the cruet with water, and the plate in the left, and pours water on the priest's fingers, bowing to him before and after.

5. Having placed the cruets on the side-table, he kneels on the first step in front of the altar at the Epistle side; he answers at the *Orate fratres;* afterwards he answers at the Preface, and moderately rings the little bell at the *Sanctus.*

6. At the words, *Qui pridie*, &c., the server goes up and kneels on the edge of the platform, at the right of the priest. He inclines during the consecration of both species, and makes a low bow when the priest adores the Blessed Sacrament. At each elevation the server raises a little the extremity of the chasuble with his left hand, and with his right gives three strokes of the bell.

7. The elevation being over, he rises, makes a genuflection, and goes to kneel at his place. He strikes his breast at the words, *Nobis quoque peccatoribus.* He answers at the *Per omnia sæcula sæculorum*, and at the end of the *Pater Noster.* He answers again at the *Per omnia*, &c., and at the *Pax Domini*, &c. When the priest says *Domine non sum dignus*, the server inclines, and rings the bell moderately, that if there be persons to go to Communion, they may approach the holy table. When the priest uncovers the chalice after receiving the sacred body, the server rises, makes a genuflection, goes to the side-table, takes the cruets, carries them up to the altar, and inclines when the priest takes the sacred blood; after which he ministers wine and water with the usual bows and kisses.

8. If there are communicants, after the priest has received the most precious blood, the server, kneeling,

bows profoundly, and says the *Confiteor*. He inclines and answers at the *Misereatur vestri*, and makes the sign of the cross at the words *Indulgentiam*, &c. The Communion being over, he raises the priest's alb while he ascends the steps, and kneels again until the priest has closed the tabernacle; after which he presents the cruets as is said above.

9. Having placed the cruets on the side-table, the server goes to the Gospel side, takes the book, and carries it with the stand to the Epistle side, making a genuflection in the middle as he passes; after which he kneels on the lowest step at the epistle side, making a genuflection in the middle as he passes. He answers the prayers, &c. When the priest gives the blessing, the server, remaining at his place, bows and makes the sign of the cross, at the end of which he answers, *Amen*. Then he rises, answers at the *Dominus vobiscum*, and at the beginning of the Gospel signing himself, as mentioned in n. 3. Towards the end of the Gospel, he goes for the priest's cap; he bends the knee at the words *Et verbum caro*, &c. Then he goes up to the altar, takes the book, bows to the cross with the priest, and with him he goes down and makes a genuflection on the floor, or a bow. He gives the cap to the priest, kissing it and his hand, and goes before him to the sacristy. There, after making a low bow to the image with the priest, he bows to him. After that he puts the book at its place, and helps the priest to disrobe. Finally, he takes off his surplice, and retires.

10. If there be a last Gospel peculiar to the day, after the priest has said *Ite, missa est*, the server takes the book to the Gospel side, taking care to kneel when the priest gives the blessing. He should stand near the

book below the platform until the priest has done reading, after which he carries the book back to the epistle side.

11. Should the Mass be celebrated in presence of the Blessed Sacrament exposed, the genuflection, in going to and leaving the altar, is made on both knees. Neither the priest's hand, nor his cap, nor the cruets, are kissed. The server pours water on the priest's hands, standing on the floor at the Epistle side, with the towel on his arm.

12. When Mass is for the dead, the psalm, *Judica me*, &c., is not said. The usual kisses are omitted. At the end of Mass, the priest, instead of *Ite, missa est*, says, *Requiescant in pace*, to which the server answers, *Amen.*

CHAPTER VIII.

MANNER OF SERVING A BISHOP AT LOW MASS.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. The vestments for saying Mass, viz., chasuble, stole, cincture, alb, and amice, should be prepared on the middle of the altar. Near the vestments on the Epistle side, the pectoral cross on a plate, and the maniple on the Gospel side. The Missal open at its place. (The altar-cards should be removed, if the Canon* be used.) On

* A book containing the Canon and some other parts of the Mass, is so called. It is placed on the altar instead of the Missal during the most solemn part of Mass, when a Bishop celebrates.

common days only two candles should be lighted; on festivals, four or more. On the side-table two large candles should be placed, to be lighted at the end of the preface.

2. On the side-table the chalice should be prepared, the cruets, the basin and ewer, with a towel; the hand candlestick with a lighted candle, and the Canon.

3. In the sanctuary, towards the middle, the kneeling-desk, covered with a green or violet cloth; also, two cushions, one placed on the upper part of the desk, the other on the lower part.

4. If the Blessed Sacrament is exposed, the vestments should be prepared in the sacristy, or on a side-table in the sanctuary; as on such occasion the Bishop does not vest at the altar.

Article II.

Of the Preparation and Vesting of the Bishop.

1. Two chaplains, at least, are requisite to serve a Bishop's Mass.

2. At the appointed time the two chaplains put on the surplice, and go to receive the Bishop at the door. They bow to him when they meet him, and walk before him towards the middle of the sanctuary, where they bow to the cross, or make a genuflection if the Blessed Sacrament be in the tabernacle. The Bishop goes to the kneeling-desk, with the first chaplain at his right. The second takes the Canon and the hand candlestick, and goes to the left of the Bishop. He gives the book to the first, who opens it where the prelate is to read, and holds it before him, assisted by the second, who at the same time holds the hand candlestick. The first should be attentive to turn the leaves.

3. After the preparation, all go to the lowest step of the altar, where they bow or make a genuflection. The second having placed the Canon open in the middle of the altar against the tabernacle, and the hand candlestick near the Missal, takes the basin, ewer, and towel. The first takes the cape from the Bishop and places it on the kneeling-desk. He takes the ring from the prelate's finger with the usual kisses; and having taken the towel from the second, each kneeling on one knee, they give the water and towel for the washing of the Bishop's hands, and rise after having received his blessing. (If they are priests, they do not kneel.) After which, the second puts the basin, ewer, and towel on the side-table.

4. The first goes up to the altar, takes the vestments one after the other, and with the assistance of the second vests the Bishop. Taking first the amice, he presents it to the prelate to kiss, puts it around his neck, and, passing the string around the waist, fastens it in front. Then he puts on him the alb; afterwards he girds him with the cincture; then he presents to him the pectoral cross to kiss, and suspends it from his neck; then the stole is also kissed, and suspended from the neck down on each side and fastened with the cincture; after that, the chasuble is put on him and fastened in front; lastly, the ring is put on his finger with the usual kisses. When the Mass is for the dead, the maniple is put on him after the cincture. If, in vesting, the Bishop wishes to read the prayer, the second chaplain should hold the book and the hand candlestick before him.

5. The Bishop being vested, the first chaplain goes to his right, and the second to his left; they make a genuflection or a low bow with him (the second having on

his arm the maniple.) They answer and bow as usual during the confession. After the words *Indulgentiam*, &c., the second presents the maniple to the Bishop to kiss, and fastens it on his arm. When he ascends the steps, they raise the alb a little, go up with him, and remain on each side of him, moving with him to and from the middle of the altar, as may be prescribed; the first pointing out what is to be read, holds the hand candlestick. They answer, make on themselves the sign of the cross, and bow. When the Bishop makes a genuflection, they do likewise, supporting him by placing each his hand under his elbow.

6. While the Bishop says *Munda cor meum*, the second chaplain carries the book and the hand candlestick to the Gospel side, making the usual genuflections or bows; and holding the hand candlestick, points the text to the prelate. (Should a Cardinal be present, the first, as soon as the Bishop has kissed the text, takes another Missal, and observing the usual ceremonies, brings it to be kissed. If there be several high dignitaries, the Gospel is only given to the highest in dignity; if they be equal in rank, it is given to no one.) When the Missal is not to be carried, the first chaplain remains at the right of the Bishop. If the *Credo* be said, they remain by the Bishop during its recital.

7. After the *Dominus vobiscum*, the first chaplain and the second, leaving the hand candlestick on the altar, go to the side-table. The first takes the chalice and carries it up to the altar on the Epistle side; he takes the corporal out of the burse, and extends it in the middle of the altar. He gives the paten to the Bishop, kissing it and his hand. He then wipes the chalice with a purifier. The second chaplain having brought the cruets,

gives the wine cruet to the first, who pours wine into the chalice. The second takes the water cruet and holds it up to the Bishop, saying, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater*, and puts some drops of water into the chalice, after which he takes back the cruets to the side-table. The first having wiped the chalice, presents it to the Bishop with the usual kisses. (In Masses for the dead the water is not blessed.) Then he puts the pall on the chalice, and the paten partly under the corporal, covering the remaining part with the purifier. When the Bishop says, *In spiritu humilitatis*, the second chaplain takes the basin, ewer, and towel, and goes to minister to the washing of the hands, the first receiving and returning the ring with the usual kisses. The second having carried the ewer back to the side-table, goes to the right of the Bishop, and the first goes to the book. After the *Secreta*, the first takes the Missal from the stand, and in its place puts the Canon, open. They answer at the preface, and bow at the *Sanctus*, the second ringing the little bell. Afterwards the second lights two large candles on the side-table, which are put out after the Bishop's communion, or after he has given communion. (It would be more conformable to the Ceremonial of Bishops if two clerks hold two large candles or torches.) At the words *Qui pridie*, both kneel on the platform; they bow and raise the chasuble as usual, the second giving three strokes of the bell at each elevation. He also uncovers and covers the chalice; afterwards they both rise, make a genuflection on the platform, and stand on each side of the Bishop as before.

8. Towards the end of the *Pater Noster*, the second wipes the paten with the purifier, and gives it to the Bishop with the usual kisses. Then he uncovers and

covers the chalice. They incline and strike their breast at the *Agnus Dei*. Should the *Pax* be given, the second chaplain takes the instrument of peace, approaches the Bishop, kneels at his right, holding the instrument before him, which he kisses, saying, *Pax tecum*. Having answered, *Et cum spiritu tuo*, he rises and brings the *Pax* to the dignitary to kiss. In presenting it, he says, *Pax tecum;* and being answered, *Et cum spiritu tuo*, he bows to him. Then he covers the instrument with its veil, carries it back to the side-table, and returns to the Bishop's side.

9. At the *Domine non sum dignus*, they bow and strike their breasts; afterwards the second chaplain uncovers the chalice, and both make a genuflection; then the second goes for the cruets, gives the wine and water with the usual kisses, and puts back the cruets on the side-table. Meanwhile the first puts the Canon in the middle of the altar, and the Missal on the stand, and carries it, together with the hand candlestick, to the Epistle side. The Bishop washes his hands as usual, the second giving the water, and the first attending to the ring and presenting the towel. After which the first assists the Bishop at the book, and the second goes and arranges the chalice, carries it to the side-table, and returns to the left of the Bishop. Should the Bishop give communion, when he has taken the sacred blood, they kneel on the edge of the platform and say the *Confiteor*. They answer and sign themselves with the sign of the cross at the *Indulgentiam*. When the Bishop returns to the altar, they raise his alb while he ascends the steps. If the first chaplain be entitled to wear the stole, after the *Confiteor* he puts on a white stole, and takes the paten and holds it below the mouth of the commu-

nicants, while they receive; after which he places it on the corporal, on returning to the altar.

10. When the Bishop is about giving the blessing, the chaplains go on the step below the platform, where they kneel, and answer at the blessing. If there be a last Gospel specially prescribed, the first takes the book and the hand candlestick to the Gospel side; otherwise, the second passing to the right, the first turns over the Canon, and assists the Bishop while he reads the Gospel. After the last Gospel, the first closes the book; all bow to the cross and go down on the floor, where they make a genuflection, or a low bow. Then the first, assisted by the second, disrobes the Bishop. The maniple is taken off first (unless it was a Mass for the dead), which as well as the other vestments are put on the altar. Afterwards the first chaplain puts the cope on the Bishop, and buttons it in front. The second takes the Canon and the hand candlestick, goes to the kneeling-desk, places himself at the left of the Bishop, gives the book to the first, who opens it, and holds it before the Bishop whilst he makes his thanksgiving. Finally, they accompany him to the door, where they bow to him, and return to take off their surplices. If the Bishop wear a calotte, the first chaplain takes it off at the *Sanctus*, and puts it on him again after the communion.

Article III.

When there is but one Chaplain.

1. If there be no more than one chaplain, he goes to receive the Bishop at the door, and accompanies him to the kneeling-desk. Then he takes the canon and the hand candlestick. He opens the book and puts it on the

desk, and holds the hand candlestick. The preparation being over, he puts the Canon and the hand candlestick on the altar, and attends to the washing of the Bishop's hands. He vests him in the manner above prescribed. He takes the maniple, goes to the left hand of the Bishop, and answers during the confession as usual. He rises and puts the maniple on the Bishop's arm, after he has said *Indulgentiam*. After the confession he goes to the Missal and assists the prelate, answering, kneeling, inclining, &c. After the Bishop has done reading, the chaplain carries the book and the hand candlestick to the Gospel side. After the *Dominus vobiscum*, he takes the chalice to the altar, spreads the corporal, and gives the paten to the Bishop with the usual kisses. He takes the cruets and puts wine into the chalice. Then presenting the water cruet to the prelate, he says, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater*, and puts a few drops of water in the chalice, which he gives to him with the usual kisses. He covers the chalice and prepares for the washing of the Bishop's fingers. He answers at the *Orate fratres*, and assists at the book, pointing out to the prelate what is to be read. After the offertory, he puts the Missal aside, and places the Canon on the book-stand. He answers at the preface, and rings the bell at the *Sanctus*. At the words *Qui pridie*, he goes to the right of the Bishop and assists him, as marked in the second article. After covering the chalice he makes a genuflection, and goes to the Gospel side, makes a genuflection, and assists at the book. Towards the end of the *Pater Noster* he makes a genuflection, and goes to the Epistle side, makes a genuflection, again takes the paten and gives it to the Bishop with the usual kisses. He uncovers and covers the chalice. He bows during

the *Domine, non sum dignus*, and strikes his breast. He makes a genuflection and uncovers the chalice. He presents the cruets with the usual kisses, and carries them back to the side-table. Then he puts the Canon, open, against the tabernacle, and places the Missal, open, on the stand, and carries it, with the hand candlestick, to the Epistle side. He afterwards attends to the washing of the Bishop's hands. Afterwards he repairs to the Gospel side, arranges the chalice, and takes it to the side-table; after which he returns to the book, and assists the prelate as usual. He kneels and answers at the Bishop's blessing, and makes the sign of the cross. Then he assists the Bishop during the last Gospel, by holding the Canon and the hand candlestick before him. If there be a special Gospel, he takes the Missal to the Gospel side after the Bishop's blessing. After the Gospel he bows to the cross with the Bishop, and with him he descends the steps, and makes a genuflection or a bow. Then he disrobes the Bishop, and assists him at the thanksgiving in the manner mentioned in the second article.

2. Should there be a boy dressed in surplice, he will hold generally the hand candlestick near the book, attend to the washing of the Bishop's hands, bring the cruets, ring the bell at the *Sanctus*, at the elevation, and at the *Domine, non sum dignus*. He kneels during the confession, at the elevation, during the communion of the people, and when the Bishop gives the blessing.

CHAPTER IX.

MANNER OF CELEBRATING HIGH MASS WITHOUT DEACON OR SUB-DEACON.

ARTICLE I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

On the Altar.

1. The chalice, all prepared, should be placed on the extended corporal in the middle of the altar.
2. The burse against the *gradus*.
3. The Missal opened on the book-stand.
4. The altar-cards.
5. If communion is to be given, the ciborium on the corporal.
6. The antipendium and the canopy (if the Blessed Sacrament be there) over the tabernacle, of the color of the day.
7. Six candlesticks with candles.
8. The cross prominently located in the middle of the candlesticks.

On the Side-table.

1. The cruets with wine and water.
2. The finger-towel on the plate.
3. The hand-bell.
4. The celebrant's bench may be covered with a green cloth.

In the Sacristy.

1. All the vestments of the color of the day, for the celebrant.

2. Two surplices for the two acolytes.

3. If there are clergymen to assist, a sufficient number of surplices for them.

4. If the Asperges is to be had, every thing should be added as marked in the chapter on the Asperges.

Article II.

Vesting of the Celebrant.

1. At the last bell, the celebrant washes his hands; after which, he puts on the vestments in the usual order, assisted by the first acolyte, clad in his surplice.

2. The second acolyte, with his surplice on, lights the candles at the altar.

Article III.

Ceremonies of the Mass.

3. When the celebrant is vested, the two acolytes place themselves at each side of the celebrant, and all bow to the cross, or image in the sacristy. Then, with their hands joined, go to the altar, the acolytes preceding the celebrant.

4. If there is a clergy, they walk two by two, the highest in dignity walking before the two acolytes who serve at Mass. The first acolyte presents the holy water to the priest, then to his companion.

5. Being arrived at the foot of the altar, the acolytes separate, to leave space for the celebrant; the first having received the priest's cap, carries it to the bench, having previously made a genuflection with the celebrant and his companion. The second acolyte kneels at the left of the priest, a little in the rear, and answers

Mass with the first, who kneels on the right, also a little in the rear.

6. The celebrant does every thing as at Low Mass, except that he sings all that is sung at the solemn High Mass, and also the Gospel. There is no incense used at any time at the High Mass celebrated without deacon and sub-deacon, as it is only *Missa Cantata.*

7. Towards the end of the confession, at the words *Domine exaudi orationem meam*, both acolytes rise to elevate a little the alb, while the priest is ascending to the platform; they then kneel on the last step, and answer attentively.

8. After the priest has said the *Kyrie*, if he wishes to sit down, they rise, meet together before the altar, make a genuflection (always on the floor of the sanctuary), and go to the seat, the first at the right, the other at the left; they raise the chasuble, so that he may not sit upon it; the first presents the cap with the usual kisses, and they remain standing, one at each side, nearly face to face, so that their shoulders be not turned to the altar.

9. At the last *Kyrie*, the first gives notice to the celebrant to rise; he takes his cap, lays it on the seat, both accompany the priest before the altar, they make a genuflection on the floor, raise the alb, and then kneel at their places.*

---

* They should observe the same at the *Gloria* and *Credo*, being punctual to rise as soon as the priest bows, before going to take his seat, after reciting the *Gloria* and *Credo*. When those parts are sung at which the head is bowed, they bow to the cross, and the first gives notice to the celebrant to uncover his head, and to cover it. While the words of the *Credo*, *Et incarnatus est*, are sung, they kneel down with their faces turned towards the altar, and rise after the words, *Et Homo factus est.*

10. When the priest begins the last prayer, they repair to the Epistle side. The second standing at the priest's right hand, the first takes the Missal from the side-table, and stands behind the priest on the floor; at the words of the conclusion, *Jesum Christum*, he bows to the cross, goes to the middle, makes a genuflection, returns behind the priest as before, and standing, sings the Epistle slowly, and with the proper cadence. After this he bows to the altar, and without kissing the celebrant's hand (*Rub. Miss.*, Part ii.), he places the Missal on the side-table, and goes to kneel at his place.*

11. The second acolyte removes the book at the proper time, going by the lowest step of the altar, and returns to kneel at his place; when the Gospel commences both rise, and at the end answer, *Laus Tibi Christe*, and again kneel down until the end of the *Credo;* then the celebrant goes to sit down.

12. After the *Credo*, whilst the celebrant is singing the *Dominus vobiscum* and *Oremus*, they rise, make a genuflection together in the middle, and repair to the side-table to put the cruets on the altar. The first hands the cruet with wine, kissing it; the other, standing at his left, that with the water, and afterwards pours the water on the celebrant's hands; the first presents the towel, and both bow to the priest, both before and after.

13. After putting away the cruets, they return to the middle of the altar, make a genuflection on the floor, and kneel at their respective places, on each side, fronting the altar.

---

* If there be a *Sequentia* or long *Tract* after the Epistle, the celebrant, after having read it, sits down, as at the *Kyrie*, and, at the last verse, returns to the altar (by the Epistle side), to say the *Munda cor meum.*

14. At the elevation, they rise, make a genuflection in the middle, ascend the steps and kneel on the edge of the platform, and both raise the chasuble, and perform every thing as in other Masses.

15. When the priest has communicated, and made the genuflection, the first acolyte rises, and after the usual bow, goes to give the wine and water; at the same time the second goes to the Missal, and when the first repairs to the Gospel side to adjust the chalice, the other descends with the Missal, makes a genuflection with his companion, places the Missal on the altar, and goes to his place.

16. After taking the chalice to the side-table, the first acolyte, with the second, makes a genuflection in the middle, and both return to their places and kneel down.

17. At the last Gospel, they both stand up, and the first goes to get the cap. At the *Verbum caro factum est*, they both make a genuflection, and when the priest descends from the altar, they make a genuflection with him; his cap is presented to him with a kiss of it and of his hand, and they return to the sacristy, both going before, as at the beginning.

18. When they arrive at the sacristy, they bow to the cross or image; the first acolyte remains to assist the priest in taking off his vestments; the other goes to put out the candles, and put away the things which are on the altar.

19. If communion be given, after the priest has communicated and made a genuflection, the first acolyte goes alone to get the communion-cloth, returns to the middle, and kneels down on the floor with his companion. When the celebrant is receiving the precious blood,

they bow, and recite the *Confiteor*. After the *Indulgentiam*, they rise, make a genuflection at the same time with the celebrant, and kneel on the platform to receive communion; afterwards they rise, make a genuflection, separate and kneel, holding each end of the communion-cloth, for the communion of the clergy; after which, the first acolyte takes away the cloth. When communion is over they meet in the middle, make a genuflection together, and go to give the wine, and water for the ablution, as was said above.

CHAPTER X.

VESPERS SUNG WITHOUT COPE-BEARERS.

ARTICLE I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

In the Sanctuary.

1. Six candlesticks on the altar, and the cross in the middle.

2. In the middle of the sanctuary, against the railings, three stools for the two acolytes and the censer-bearer, or a bench sufficiently long to accommodate the three clerks.*

3. Near the bench for the officiating priest, a stool for the master of ceremonies.

4. A book-stand, with the book, in front of the

* If the clerks are to wear caps during vespers, they should be put on the stools beforehand.

priest's bench, for the officiating clergyman, which may be covered with a cloth of the color of the day.

5. At the altar the antipendium, and if there is the Blessed Sacrament, the canopy on the tabernacle, of the color of the day.

In the Sacristy.

1. A surplice and a cope of the color of the day, and if the officiating priest is to give benediction immediately after Vespers without previously returning to the sacristy, a stole of the color of the cope.*

* As to the use of the stole, it may be well to remark that the Sacred Congregation of Rites, on the 7th September, 1816, issued the following decree, which was approved by his holiness on the 20th of the same month: "Stolam non esse adhibendam præterquam in collatione et confectione Sacramentorum; ideoque consuetudinem in contrarium esse abusum, per locorum Ordinarios omnino eliminandum." The stole is less the mark of jurisdiction than of the sacerdotal character; hence it should be used only in performing sacerdotal functions, as is prescribed by the Roman Missal and Ritual. An alb or surplice should always be put on under the stole. Priests should not wear a stole while assisting at High Mass, Vespers, or Benediction; especially as Bishops themselves do not wear it when they assist in cope, the Ceremonial of Bishops not prescribing its use on such occasions. A priest should not use it even in officiating at solemn vespers, unless he is to give benediction with the Blessed Sacrament immediately after. For this reason he may wear it on the feast of Corpus Christi, when solemn vespers are sung, the Blessed Sacrament being exposed, since the benediction is to be given afterwards. Should the officiating priest return to the sacristy before giving benediction, he there puts on the stole for the purpose of giving benediction. The Ceremonial does not prescribe that a canon should put on the stole or alb for solemn vespers. "Canonicus hebdomadarius indutus amictu et pluviali supra cottam seu rochetum." According to Gavantus, the priest may put on the stole immediately before going to preach, if such be the established usage, since the Sacred Congregation allows it to be followed. The priest who acts as master of ceremonies at the benediction of the Blessed Sacrament, should put on the stole when he is to open the tabernacle or touch the Blessed Sacrament and the remonstrance that

2. Four surplices for the master of ceremonies and the three servers.

3. The censer and incense-boat with incense.

4. Two candlesticks, with candles, for the acolytes.

Article II.

1. The instructions given in the first article of the fourth chapter on solemn vespers, should be observed also during vespers without cope-bearers.

2. A little before the last bell, the master of ceremonies and the three servers put on their surplices. The master of ceremonies helps the officiating priest to vest. The first acolyte lights the candles on the altar, and the two candles in the sacristy. The censer-bearer sees to the fire, that it may be ready when wanted.

3. The censer-bearer in the midst of the two acolytes carrying the candlesticks; the first, being at his right, goes behind the officiating priest. As a general rule, the acolyte at the right will carry the candlestick by holding the foot of it with his left hand, and the middle of the stem with his right; and *vice versa*, the one at the left should hold the foot with his right, and the stem with his left, in such a way that the candlestick be carried straight in front of the bearer, without awkwardness or affectation.

4. At the sign of the master of ceremonies, all bow to the cross, and proceed to the altar in the following order: First walks the censer-bearer with his hands

---

contains it. He should take it off as soon as these actions are performed, and not wear it during all the time of the ceremony. For a priest to wear a stole while assisting in the sanctuary, even if he be the pastor of the congregation, is simply ridiculous.

joined, then the two acolytes, carrying the candlesticks, then the master of ceremonies, and lastly, the officiating priest.

5. Having arrived before the lowest step of the altar, the servers place themselves in front, sufficiently distant from the step to leave space for the officiating priest. The priest, having arrived in front of the altar, gives his cap to the master of ceremonies, who receives it with the usual kisses. Then all make a genuflection on the floor. All having risen, the priest and master of ceremonies kneel on the lowest step, and the acolytes go on each side of the altar, and place the candlesticks on the lowest step, one at the Gospel side, the other at the Epistle side, and quench the candles; after which they go in the middle, one on each side of the censer-bearer, where they all make a genuflection, and go to their bench.

6. In the mean time, the priest says the *Aperi Domine*, after which he rises, makes a genuflection, and the master of ceremonies accompanies him to the bench. Being arrived at the bench, the priest says, in a low voice, the *Pater* and *Ave*, after which he intones, *Deus in adjutorium meum intende*, at the same time making the sign of the cross on himself, while the master of ceremonies raises the right border of the cope. All bow at the *Gloria Patri*, towards the altar, and at the commencement of the Psalm all sit. The priest, having received the cap from the master of ceremonies, puts it on, and the master of ceremonies also sits.

7. Whenever the *Gloria Patri* is sung, the priest takes off his cap, the master of ceremonies giving him notice to that effect each time, by rising and bowing to him. He also raises the border of the cope, and inclines

towards the altar during the *Gloria Patri*, or at any similar occurrence, and does not sit till the former replaces the cap on his head. The officiating priest takes off his cap at the names of *Jesus*, *Mary*, and of the saint whose feast is celebrated, and at the words, *Sit nomen Domini benedictum.*

8. Towards the end of the last Psalm, the censer-bearer rises, makes a genuflection before the altar, bows to the officiating priest, and goes to the sacristy to prepare the censer. The acolytes also rise, make a genuflection and a bow with the censer-bearer. They light the candles on their candlesticks, and with them they proceed to the middle before the lowest step, make a genuflection, and go to the officiating priest, to whom they bow, and then locate themselves one on each side of the book-stand, facing each other, where they stand till the commencement of the hymn, unless it is the *Ave Maris Stella*, or *Veni Creator Spiritus*, in which case they will wait till the end of the first strophe, after which they salute the officiating priest, go to the middle of the altar, make a genuflection, and go to replace the candlesticks in their place, but do not quench the candles; then they return to their seats.

9. The Psalms being ended, the priest rises, after giving his cap to the master of ceremonies, sings the chapter out of the book before him, during which he remains standing. Then, in the same position, he intones the antiphon of the *Magnificat.* Whilst the choir sings the said antiphon, the priest sits, and puts on his cap.

10. As soon as the *Magnificat* is commenced, the priest takes up his cap, rises, and, with his hands joined, goes to the altar, accompanied by the master of ceremonies, and makes a genuflection on the lowest step.

Then he goes up to the altar, while the master of ceremonies raises a little the lowest part of his vestments. Being arrived on the platform, the priest bows to the cross, and kisses the altar. At this time the censer-bearer, having made a genuflection on the lowest step at the Epistle side, goes up to the priest, gives the incense-boat to the master of ceremonies, and raises the censer so that the priest may put incense in it. The master of ceremonies presents the little spoon, kissing it first, and then the priest's hand (unless the Blessed Sacrament be exposed), and says, *Benedicite, Pater Reverende.* The priest having put incense into the censer, returns the spoon to the master of ceremonies, and makes a sign of the cross on the censer, *Ab illo benedicaris*, &c. Then the censer-bearer lowers the censer's cover, gives it to the master of ceremonies, from whom he receives the incense-boat, and steps down to the floor, where he stands with his hands joined towards the altar. The master of ceremonies presents the censer to the officiating priest in the usual manner, and with the usual kisses.

11. The officiating priest incenses the altar in the manner prescribed in N. 6, Art. 7, of the chapter on High Mass. While he incenses the altar, he says the *Magnificat ;* at the same time, the master of ceremonies accompanies him, supporting the border of the cope on the right.

12. Having incensed the altar, the priest gives the censer to the master of ceremonies, who receives it with the usual kisses, and returns it to the censer-bearer. Then he goes to the middle of the altar, where he says the *Gloria Patri*, bowing at the same time ; after which, he descends the steps from the middle, makes a

genuflection on the lowest step, and returns to his bench, where he is incensed with three double throws by the master of ceremonies, who, for that purpose, shall have stopped at a convenient distance from the priest's bench, bowing to him before and after incensing, and the priest returning the bow after being incensed.

13. Then the master of ceremonies returns the censer to the censer-bearer, and bowing to the priest, he goes to his place. The censer-bearer, from the middle of the sanctuary, incenses the master of ceremonies and the two acolytes, the former with one swing, and the others with one, bowing to them, and they to him.

14. Then, having made a genuflection in the middle of the floor, he goes to the railings, and from there he incenses the people, first towards the middle, then at the Gospel side, and lastly, at the Epistle side, bowing before and after the incensing. After which, he returns to the sacristy, making a genuflection as he passes before the altar, and bowing to the officiating priest.

15. The priest, being incensed, remains standing at his place till the end of the *Magnificat*, bowing with the rest at the *Gloria Patri*.

16. If the choir sings the antiphon, the priest will sit and cover his head; and rises at the end of it to sing *Dominus vobiscum* and the prayer or prayers out of the book before him, bowing at the *Per Dominum nostrum Jesum*, &c.

17. The two acolytes, after the *Magnificat*, at the *Sicut erat*, take the candlesticks, go to the middle, where they make a genuflection, then to the officiating priest; they salute him, locate themselves as before mentioned, and remain there till after all the prayers are sung. After the *Dominus vobiscum*, they salute the

priest, and go to the middle, make a genuflection, and there they remain standing during the anthem of the Blessed Virgin and its prayer. After the *Divinum auxilium*, they make a genuflection with the priest, and walk before him to the sacristy.

18. The priest, having sung the prayers, sings *Dominus vobiscum*. The *Benedicamus Domino* is sung by one or two members of the choir, after which the priest says, in a lower tone of voice, *Fidelium animæ*, &c., and goes to the altar, accompanied by the master of ceremonies.

19. Being arrived at the foot of the altar, the priest and master of ceremonies make a genuflection, after which he says, *Pater Noster*, and recites the rest of that prayer in a low voice; and then, a little louder, he says, *Dominus det nobis suam pacem*. Then the anthem of the Blessed Virgin is said or sung by the choir, during which time the priest stands or kneels, according to the season. At the end of the anthem, he says, or sings, in the ferial tone, standing, the prayer, and after it, *Divinum auxilium*. After which, all make a genuflection, and walk to the sacristy, the priest with his cap on. Being arrived there, they bow to the cross, and unvest.

PART II.

Ceremonies for Holy Week and other Festivals,

According to the small Ritual of Benedict XIII., S. M.,

TO BE USED IN CHURCHES WHERE THERE ARE NO SACRED MINISTERS.

CHAPTER I.

BLESSING OF CANDLES ON CANDLEMASS DAY.

Article I.

OF WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE BENEDICTION, PROCESSION, AND MASS.

On the Side-table.

1. The chalice for Mass, with white ornaments, unless this festival should fall on one of the privileged Sundays; in which case the ornaments must be violet.

2. The chasuble, stole, and maniple, either of white or of violet color, as directed above.

3. The censer with the incense-boat* filled with incense.

4. The vessel containing holy water, and the sprinkling-brush.†

---

* The box is so called from its form.

† We shall hereafter use the simpler term "sprinkle," as in Worcester's Dictionary.

5. A plate with some bread, and a basin with a pitcher of water, to wash the hands of the priest, after the distribution of the candles.

6. A towel.

7. A plate containing the cruets with wine and water, and a small towel to wipe the fingers.

At the Altar.

1. A violet altar-veil,* that can be easily removed; or white, if the Mass be of the Blessed Virgin.

2. The Missal on the Epistle side, supported by a violet cushion, or a small book-stand.

At the Epistle Side on the floor of the Sanctuary.

1. A table covered with white linen; and on it, the candles to be blessed, covered likewise with another white linen cloth.

2. The processional cross.

In the Sacristy.

1. Three surplices for the acolytes.

2. The amice, alb, cincture, with stole and cope of violet color, for the celebrant.

3. A chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.

---

*The Latin term, "antipendium," is generally used for the veil which covers the front of the altar.

Article II.

CEREMONIES TO BE PERFORMED ON CANDLEMASS DAY.

Section I.— *Of the Blessing of the Candles.*

1. At the stated time, the acolytes put on their cassocks and surplices, in the sacristy, and prepare every thing as in the preceding chapter.

2. The faithful should be called to church by the ringing of the bells.

3. The celebrant, having made his preparation for Mass, and washed his hands in the sacristy, being assisted by the second and third acolytes, puts on over his cassock the amice, alb, stole and cope of violet color.*

4. In the mean time, the first acolyte removes from the altar the flower-pots, and lights the candles that are on it.

5. The celebrant, having made a low bow to the cross, or to any other sacred image placed in the sacristy, puts on his cap, and being preceded by the first acolyte, walks, with his hands joined, to the altar, between the second and third acolytes, who raise the lower part of the cope at each side.

6. When he comes to the middle of the altar, he gives his cap to the first acolyte, who, having placed it on the celebrant's seat, uncovers the candles which are to be blessed.

7. Then the celebrant, still standing on the floor of

---

* Should this festival fall on Sunday, the celebrant, vested as above, blesses the water for the aspersion, as in the Missal.

the sanctuary, makes a low bow to the cross (or a genuflection on the lowest step, if the Blessed Sacrament be in the tabernacle), ascends the altar, and kisses it in the middle. If the holy water is to be given, the celebrant, kneeling on the lowest step, intones the anthem, *Asperges*, and does so as is prescribed in the Missal, and afterwards goes up to the altar.

8. The celebrant, having kissed the altar, goes to the Epistle side, having always the two acolytes on his sides, as in No. 5.

9. There, having his face turned towards the altar, and his hands joined, he says in the ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Oremus*, the prayer, *Domine Sancte*, with the four following prayers.

10. In the mean time, the first acolyte puts fire in the censer, holding it and the incense-boat in his hands.

11. While the celebrant is saying the fifth prayer, the third acolyte, who is on his left side, having made a genuflection towards the altar, goes to the side-table, takes from it the holy-water vase, and, with the acolyte who carries the censer, goes to him.

12. The celebrant, after the fifth prayer, receiving the incense-spoon from the second acolyte, who is at his right side, and who, as usual, kisses first the spoon and then his hand, takes the incense-boat, puts the incense in the censer, and blesses it.

13. Then having received the sprinkle from the second acolyte, he sprinkles the candles thrice, viz., in the middle, at the right, and at the left, saying with a low voice, *Asperges me*, &c., without the *Miserere*.

14. Afterwards he incenses the candles thrice, not saying any thing.

15. The blessing being ended, the celebrant bows in

the middle of the altar, and retires to the Gospel side, and then explains the institution of this solemnity, the meaning of the ceremonies, and the use of the candles, that the faithful may come and receive them in a proper and respectful manner.

Section II.—*Of the Distribution of the Candles.*

1. After the sermon, the first acolyte takes from the table a candle for the celebrant, and, if there is no other priest present, puts it on the middle of the altar.

2. The celebrant, having bowed in the middle of the altar, kneels on the platform, with his face turned towards the cross.

3. Whilst kneeling down, he takes from the altar the candle, kisses it, and hands it to the first acolyte.*

4. Then he goes to the Epistle side, and recites alternately with the acolytes, in a loud and even voice, *Lumen*, &c., and the Canticle, *Nunc dimittis*, &c.

5. The anthem, *Lumen*, &c., having been repeated after *Sicut erat*, the celebrant bows to the cross, turns towards the people, distributes the candles, first to the priests (if any be present), then to the acolytes kneeling on the edge of the platform, who all kiss the candle first, and then his hand.

6. The celebrant having bowed to the altar between the acolytes, goes to the chancel, or rails, at the Epistle side.

7. There he begins to distribute the candles, which

* If there is another priest, he gives the candle to the celebrant, who stands, having his face turned towards the people: the priest kisses the candle only, which is also done by the celebrant on receiving it.

are brought thither by the second acolyte, and handed to the celebrant by the third.

8. The distribution of the candles being ended, the celebrant washes his hands at the Epistle side; the first acolyte pours the water, and the two others offer the towel.

9. The celebrant, having washed his hands, goes to the middle of the altar, bows to the cross, and then ascends in a straight line with it, until he arrives at the centre of the platform, when he turns to the book at the Epistle side.

10. There he recites with the acolytes the anthem, *Exurge Domine*, &c., with a loud voice.

11. Then standing in the same place, he says, *Oremus*, and if Candlemass-day comes after Septuagesima, and not on a Sunday, he subjoins, *Flectamus genua*, kneeling at the same time with all the others; and the second acolyte, first rising, answers, *Levate*.

12. Afterwards the celebrant says the prayer, *Exaudi quæsumus*, &c., keeping always his hands joined.

Section III.—*Of the Procession.*

1. The prayer being ended, the celebrant goes to the middle of the altar, where he receives from the first acolyte a lighted candle, and a copy of this *Ceremonial*, or the Ritual for the anthems, to be recited during the procession.

2. The two other acolytes take likewise lighted candles, and copies of this Ceremonial.

3. The celebrant turns towards the people, and says, *Procedamus in pace*, and the acolytes answer, *In nomine Christi, amen.*

4. The celebrant begins to recite the anthem, *Adorna*, &c., as below, and continues all the anthems with the acolytes alternately.

5. After the acolytes have, as directed above, answered, *In nomine Christi, amen;* the first acolyte takes the processional cross, and having made a genuflection before the altar, turns towards the people, and leads the procession either out of the church, or within it, as may be customary, and turning to his right, and going round, returns to the altar.

6. The celebrant follows him between the other acolytes, reciting with them the following anthems, which, for greater convenience, are divided into verses:

Antiph. *Adorna thalamum tuum, Sion; et suscipe Regem Christum.*

Amplectere Mariam: quæ est cœlestis porta.

Ipsa enim regem portat gloriæ, novi luminis.

Subsistit virgo, adducens manibus filium ante luciferum genitum. Quem accipiens Simeon in ulnas suas, prædicavit populis: Dominum eum esse vitæ et mortis, et Salvatorem Mundi.

Responsum accepit Simeon de Spiritu Sancto: non visurum se mortem, nisi videret Christum Domini.

Et cum inducerent puerum in templum; accepit eum in ulnas suas, et benedixit Deum, et dixit:

Nunc dimittis servum tuum, Domine: secundum verbum tuum in pace:

Cum inducerent puerum Jesum parentes ejus, ut facerent secundum consuetudinem legis pro eo: ipse accepit eum in ulnas suas.

7. As the procession enters the church, if it was made

outside; or the sanctuary, if it did not go out of the church, the following Response is recited:

Resp. *Obtulerunt Domino par turturum, aut duos pullos columbarum:*

Sicut scriptum est, in lege Domini.

Postquam impleti sunt dies purgationis Mariæ: secundum legem Moysis:

Tulerunt Jesum in Jerusalem: ut sisterent eum Domino.

Sicut scriptum est: in lege Domini.

Gloria Patri et Filio: et Spiritui Sancto.

Sicut scriptum est: in lege Domini.

8. The acolyte, who carries the cross, after having made a genuflection before the altar, leaves it at its place.

9. The celebrant ends the Responses before the altar.

Section IV.— *Of the Mass after the Procession.*

1. The Response being ended, the first acolyte receives the candles from the celebrant, and from the other acolytes, and places them on the table.

2. The celebrant goes to the bench, whereon he usually sits in solemn Masses, attended by the second and third acolytes, puts off the cope, and puts on the violet chasuble and the maniple for the Mass of the Sunday.

3. In the mean time, in case the Mass is to be said of the festival, the first acolyte removes from the altar the violet front veil, leaving the white one; places the flower-pots between the candlesticks, and the chalice on the altar; having first spread the corporal.

4. The celebrant goes to the altar to say Mass, in the course of which, if it be of the festival, the acolytes hold

lighted candles during the Gospel, and from the elevation till after the communion.

5. Whilst the celebrant is reading the *Communio*, the first acolyte removes the chalice from the altar to the side-table.

6. Mass being ended, the celebrant, preceded by the acolytes, returns to the sacristy.

There he makes his thanksgiving, as usual.

8. The acolytes take every thing from the altar and the table, and carry them to the sacristy, arranging them in their proper places.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE BENEDICTION OF THE ASHES ON ASH-WEDNESDAY.

Article I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE BENEDICTION AND MASS.

On the Side-table near the Altar.

1. A chalice, with a veil of violet color.
2. A violet maniple and chasuble.
3. The censer and boat, with incense.
4. The holy-water vase, with a sprinkle.
5. A plate, with crumbs of bread; and a basin, with a pitcher of water, to wash the hands of the priest after the distribution of the ashes.
6. A towel.

7. A plate containing the cruets with wine and water, and a small towel to wipe the fingers.

On the Altar.

1. A violet altar-veil, the cross, and candlesticks with candles, but no flower-pots.
2. The Missal on the Epistle side, supported by a book-stand.
3. A vessel containing the ashes, made out of the boughs blessed on Palm Sunday, which should be dry and sifted, covered either with a lid of the same matter as the vessel, or with a violet veil, and placed between the Missal and the Epistle side.

In the Sacristy.

1. Three surplices for the acolytes.
2. The amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope.
3. A chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.

Article II.

Of the Sacred Rites to be Performed on Ash-Wednesday.

Section I.—*Blessing of the Ashes.*

1. Every thing having been prepared, as above, by the acolytes in surplices, the people should be called to church by the usual ringing of the bells.
2. The celebrant, having washed his hands in the sacristy, attended by the second and third acolytes, puts on over the surplice, the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope.

3. The first acolyte lights the candles on the altar, and returns to the sacristy.

4. All having bowed to the cross, or the principal picture in the sacristy, go to the altar.

5. The first acolyte, having his hands joined, walks before, then the celebrant with his head covered, between the second and third acolytes.

6. The celebrant gives his cap to the first acolyte, and bows to the altar.

7. He goes up to the altar, having at his side the second and third acolytes, and kisses it in the middle.

8. In the mean time, the first acolyte, having placed the cap on the celebrant's seat, uncovers the ashes.

9. The celebrant goes to the Epistle side, and says, with the acolytes, the anthem, *Exaudi.*

10. In the mean time, the first acolyte prepares the censer with the fire.

11. The anthem, *Exaudi*, having been repeated, the celebrant, standing in the same place, without turning towards the people, says in a ferial tone, and having his hands joined, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the four prayers, as in the Missal.

12. Whilst the celebrant is saying the fourth prayer, the third acolyte, having made a genuflection before the altar, takes the holy-water vase, and with the censer-bearer, goes to the celebrant.

13. The celebrant, assisted by the second acolyte, puts the incense in the censer, blesses it, and afterwards sprinkles and incenses the ashes, as usual.

14. The blessing being ended, the vessel containing the ashes is placed in the middle of the altar.

15. The celebrant addresses the congregation from the altar, on the ceremony of the ashes.

SECTION II.—*Of the Putting on the Ashes.*

1. The celebrant, if no other priest is present, having made a reverence to the cross, kneels down in the middle of the platform of the altar, and whilst thus kneeling, puts ashes on his own head, without saying any thing.

2. But if another priest is present, this priest without stole goes to the altar, and puts ashes on the head of the celebrant, who stands, bowing, and having his face turned towards the people, the priest saying, *Memento homo, quia pulvis es; et in pulverem reverteris.*

3. The celebrant having received the ashes, goes to the Missal on the Epistle side, and recites, with the acolytes, the anthem, *Immutemur*, with all that follows.

4. Then the celebrant puts the ashes on the clergy (if any are present), who kneel at the edge of the platform of the altar, the first of them in dignity being the nearest to the Epistle side. He says to each one, *Memento*, &c.

5. The celebrant having bowed to the altar, goes, between the second and third acolytes, to the railing at the Epistle side, and puts the ashes first on the men, then on the women.

6. After the putting on of the ashes, the celebrant, standing on the floor of the sanctuary at the Epistle side, attended by the acolytes, washes his hands, cleaning them with crumbs of bread, and wipes them.

7. Then he goes up to the altar by the steps that are in front of it, having made a bow in the middle, and goes to the Epistle side.

8. Thus, having his face turned towards the altar, with his hands joined, he says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and

the prayer, *Concede nobis, Domine*, and having made a bow to the altar in the same place, descends to the Epistle side.

Section III.—*Of the Mass.*

1. The celebrant, going to the Epistle side, near his seat, assisted by the acolytes, takes off the cope, puts on the maniple and chasuble, and sits down.

2. In the mean time, the first acolyte carries the chalice to the altar, and having unfolded the corporal, places the chalice on it, in the middle of the altar.

3. The priest goes to the altar for the Mass, in which every thing is to be done as in the Missal.

4. Whilst the *Communio* is said, the first acolyte removes the chalice from the altar, and places it on the side-table.

5. After Mass, the celebrant, preceded by the acolytes, returns to the sacristy with his hands joined, puts off the sacred vestments, and makes his thanksgiving.

CHAPTER III.

OF PALM SUNDAY.

Article I.

WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE SACRED CEREMONIES OF THIS SUNDAY.

On the Side-table.

1. The chalice, with its ornaments of violet color for Mass.

2. The maniple and chasuble, of violet color.
3. The censer, with the incense-boat.
4. A basin, with a pitcher of water, and a towel.
5. A plate, with cruets containing wine and water, and a finger-towel.
6. Copies of this Ceremonial, for what is to be recited at the procession.

On the Altar.

1. The violet altar-veil.
2. The Missal, on the Epistle side, on a cushion, or a small stand.
3. Branches of palms in place of flowers, between the candlesticks.

By the Side of the Epistle on the Floor.

1. A table, covered with a white linen cloth, and palms to be blessed.
2. The processional cross, covered with a violet veil.

In the Sacristy.

1. Three surplices for the acolytes.
2. The amice, alb, cincture, stole and cope of violet color for the celebrant.
3. A chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.
4. The holy-water vase, with the sprinkle.

Article II.

Of the Ceremonies to be performed on Palm Sunday.

Section I.— *Of the Blessing of the Palms.*

1. Every thing being prepared in its proper place, the

people should be called to the church by the ringing of the bells.

2. The celebrant, attended by the second and third acolytes, puts on in the sacristy the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope.

3. He blesses the water, as in the Missal; and in the mean time the first acolyte lights the candles on the altar.

4. The celebrant, preceded by the first acolyte, who carries the holy-water vase, proceeds to the altar, with his head covered, walking between the second and third acolytes, and kneels on the lowest step, for the sprinkling of the holy water.

5. When the sprinkling is done, the first acolyte places the Missal on the small stand, on the Epistle side of the altar.

6. The third acolyte puts the maniple on the celebrant's arm.

7. The celebrant, between the second and third acolytes, goes up to the altar, kisses it in the middle; retires to the Epistle side; and there, in a high and even tone, begins the anthem, *Hosanna*, which is continued by the acolytes.

8. The celebrant standing in the same place, with his hands joined, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, *Deus, quem diligere*, &c.

9. Then he recites the lesson, and after it he says, with the acolytes, the Response, *Collegerunt*, &c. *In monte Oliveti*, &c.

10. Having said in the same place, *Munda cor meum*, &c., he reads the Gospel; then kisses the Missal, and takes off the maniple.

11. Then he says, *Dominus vobiscum*, the prayer,

and the preface, keeping his hands joined, whilst he recites the above-mentioned and the following prayers.

12. The acolytes say, *Sanctus*, *Sanctus*, &c.

13. The celebrant having said, *Dominus vobiscum*, recites the five other prayers that follow.

14. In the mean time, the first acolyte puts fire in the censer, and takes the incense-boat.

15. Whilst the celebrant says the fifth prayer, the third acolyte, having made a genuflection towards the altar, takes from the side-table the holy-water vase, and with the censer-bearer goes to the celebrant.

16. The celebrant, attended by the second acolyte, puts incense in the censer, and blesses it.

17. Then he sprinkles the palms thrice, saying, in a low voice, *Asperges me*, &c., without *Miserere*, and incenses them.

18. The celebrant says again, *Dominus vobiscum*, and then the sixth prayer.

19. The first acolyte carries back to the sacristy the censer, and the second and third acolytes remain with the celebrant.

20. The celebrant addresses to the congregation an appropriate instruction.

SECTION II.—*Of the Distribution of the Palms.*

1. The first acolyte carries from the side table the palms for the celebrant and the acolytes, and lays them on the altar.

2. The celebrant, having bowed to the cross, kneels in the middle of the platform before the altar, and takes

his palm from the altar; kisses it, and hands it to the first acolyte.*

3. He goes to the Epistle side, and recites with the acolytes the anthem, *Pueri Hebræorum*, &c.

4. Then, having bowed to the cross, he turns towards the people, and distributes the palms, first to priests, if any are present, then to the acolytes, who all kneel on the edge of the platform of the altar, beginning from the first in dignity, at the Epistle side; they all kiss, first the palm, then the hand of the celebrant.

5. The celebrant goes down from the altar, bows before it, and goes to the railing of the sanctuary, at the Epistle side.

6. Then the palms are handed to him by the first acolyte, and he distributes them, first to the men, and then to the women.

7. After the distribution, the celebrant, standing on the floor of the sanctuary, attended by two acolytes, washes his hands.

8. He goes by the front steps to the altar, and at the Epistle side says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the last prayer.

9. In the mean time, the first acolyte ties with a violet ribbon a palm on the top of the processional cross.

10. After the prayer, the first acolyte gives to the celebrant and to the other acolytes the palms, and a copy of this Ceremonial, to read what is to be recited at the procession.

---

* In case another priest is present, the palm should be given by him to the celebrant, as it has been said of the candle, on the feast of Purification.

Section III.— *Of the Procession.*

1. The celebrant, holding the palm in his hands, turns towards the people, and says in the middle of the altar, *Procedamus in pace.* The acolytes answer, *In nomine Christi, amen.* And the celebrant begins, *Cum appropinquaret*, &c.

2. The acolyte with the cross walks first; then the celebrant, between two acolytes, reciting alternately, in a loud voice, the following anthems divided into verses.

3. The procession goes by the right side out of the principal door; they recite the following

Anthem.

Cum appropinquaret Dominus Jerosolymam : misit duos ex discipulis suis, dicens :

Ite in castellum, quod contra vos est : et invenietis pullum asinæ alligatum, super quem nullus hominum sedit :

Solvite eum : et adducite mihi.

Si quis vos interrogaverit, dicite : opus Domino est.

Solventes adduxerunt ad Jesum : et imposuerunt illi vestimenta sua, et sedit super eum.

Alii expanderunt vestimenta sua in via : alii ramos de arboribus sternebant.

Et qui sequebantur, clamabant : Hosanna, benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini.

Benedictum regnum patris nostri David : Hosanna in excelsis : miserere nobis, fili David.

Another Anthem.

Cum audiisset populus, quia Jesus venit Jerosolymam : acceperunt ramos palmarum,

Et exierunt ei obviam : et clamabant pueri dicentes :
Hic est, qui venturus est in salutem populi.
Hic est salus nostra, et redemptio Israel.
Quantus est iste : cui throni et dominationes occurrunt !
Noli timere, filia Sion, ecce Rex tuus venit tibi sedens super pullum asinæ ; sicut scriptum est.
Salve, Fabricator mundi : qui venisti redimere nos.

Another Anthem.

Ante sex dies solemnis Paschæ : quando venit Dominus in civitatem Jerusalem,
Occurrerunt ei pueri ; et in manibus portabant ramos palmarum.
Et clamabant voce magnâ dicentes : Hosanna in excelsis.
Benedictus qui venisti in multitudine misericordiæ tuæ : Hosanna in excelsis.

Another Anthem.

Occurrunt turbæ cum floribus et palmis Redemptori obviam : et victori triumphanti digna dant obsequia.
Filium Dei ore gentes prædicant : et in laudem Christi voces tonant per nubila : Hosanna in excelsis.

Another Anthem.

Turba multa, quæ convenerat ad diem festum : clamabant Domino :
Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini : Hosanna in excelsis.

1. The first acolyte, carrying the cross, stops before the principal door, having his face turned towards it.

2. The second and third acolytes go into the church, shut the door, and turning towards the procession, say,

Gloria, laus et honor Tibi sit, rex Christe Redemptor :
Cui puerile decus prompsit hosanna pium.

3. The celebrant outside of the church, turning towards the door, and having on his cap, repeats,

Gloria, laus et honor, &c.

Clerks. Israel es Tu Rex, Davidis et inclyta proles, nomine qui in Domini, Rex benedicte, venis.

Cel. Gloria, &c.

Clerks. Cœtus in excelsis Te laudat cœlicus omnis, et mortalis homo, et cuncta creata simul.

Cel. Gloria, &c.

Clerks. Plebs Hebræa Tibi cum palmis obviam venit: cum prece, voto, hymnis, adsumus ecce Tibi.

Cel. Gloria, laus, &c.

Clerks. Hi Tibi passuro solvebant munia laudis: nos Tibi regnanti pangimus ecce melos.

Cel. Gloria, &c.

Clerks. Hi placuere Tibi; placeat devotio nostra; Rex bone, rex clemens, cui bona cuncta placent.

Cel. Gloria, &c.

4. The preceding verses being ended, the first acolyte, with the foot of the cross, knocks at the bottom of the door; and the two acolytes within the church open the door, and place themselves at each side of it.

5. The first acolyte, carrying the cross, enters the church, and the celebrant follows him, beginning the Response, *Ingrediente Domino*, &c.

6. The second and third acolytes receive the celebrant, place him in the middle, and with him continue the Response—

Ingrediente Domino in Sanctam Civitatem, Hebræorum pueri resurrectionem vitæ pronunciantes,

Cum ramis palmarum: Hosanna clamabant in excelsis.

Cumque audiissent quod Jesus veniret Jerosolymam : exierunt obviam ei.

Cum ramis palmarum : Hosanna in excelsis.

7. The procession and Responses are ended before the altar.

8. The first acolyte leaves the cross, takes the palms from the celebrant and the clerks.

9. The celebrant stands on the floor of the sanctuary at the Epistle side, where he is accustomed to sit during Mass ; takes off the cope, puts on the maniple and chasuble, and sits for a while.

10. The first acolyte carries the chalice to the altar, unfolds the corporal in the middle of it, places the chalice, and fixes it on the corporal.

11. The celebrant proceeds to the altar to celebrate Mass. The acolytes hold palms in their hands whilst the Passion is read, and during the Gospel.

12. Whilst the celebrant reads the *Communio*, the first acolyte removes the chalice from the altar, and carries it to the side-table.

13. After Mass, the celebrant, with his hands joined, preceded by the acolytes, returns to the sacristy.

14. There he takes off the sacred vestments, and makes his thanksgiving.

15. The acolytes take every thing from the altar, and from the side-table, and putting them in their proper places, retire modestly.

CHAPTER IV.

OF MAUNDAY-THURSDAY.

ARTICLE I.

WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE SACRED CEREMONIES OF MAUNDAY-THURSDAY.

On the Altar.

1. The altar is to be adorned as for solemn festivals; the front veil is to be white.
2. The cross between the candlesticks is to be covered with a white veil.
3. The Missal to be placed on a white cushion, or book-stand, on the Epistle side.

On the Side-table.

1. The chalice for Mass, with white ornaments, and two Hosts.
2. Another chalice with a pall, a paten, a white veil, and a white silk ribbon.
3. A pyx with small hosts to be consecrated for the communion of the people.
4. A small plate with the wine and water cruets, and a towel for wiping the fingers.
5. The processional cross, covered with a violet veil.
6. The censer with the incense-boat.
7. A white veil for the shoulders.
8. The communion-cloth.
9. The canopy for the procession.
10. The wooden clapper.

In the Sacristy.

1. Surplices for the clerks.
2. The amice, alb, cincture, maniple, stole, and chasuble; all white.
3. A white cope.
4. A violet stole.
5. A chafing-dish, containing fire.
6. Candles for the procession.

In the Repository for the Blessed Sacrament.

1. This repository is to be prepared apart from the principal altar of the church, and hung with precious tapestry, which should by no means be of black color: adorned with flowers and lights, but not with relics or images of saints.
2. The repository or urn, in which the chalice with the Blessed Sacrament is to be placed, should be prepared in the centre of the altar. It should be finely adorned, and secured with lock and key.
3. There should be a corporal in the repository.
4. Another corporal on the altar.
5. Steps to reach to the repository, where the chalice is to be placed.

Article II.

OF THE SACRED RITES TO BE PERFORMED ON MAUNDAY-THURSDAY.

Section I.—*Of the Mass.*

1. The bells, which call the faithful to church, should be rung as on festivals.

2. The acolytes prepare every thing as above, in their proper place.

3. Meanwhile the priest hears confessions.

4. At the stated hour, the parish priest of the church puts on the sacred vestments for Mass.

5. The first clerk lights the candles on the altar, and places the chalice in the middle of it; and behind it the pyx containing the small Hosts.

6. The celebrant, with his head covered, preceded by the first acolyte, and then by the second and third, who walk together, each having his hands joined, proceeds to the altar for Mass.

7. Beginning Mass, he does not say the psalm, *Judica me Deus*, nor the *Gloria Patri.*

8. Whilst the *Gloria in excelsis* is said, they ring the bells, which are not rung any more until Holy Saturday.

9. Besides the usual Host, another large one, and a sufficient number of small ones, are consecrated.

10. The *Agnus Dei* is said, as usual, but the *Pax* is not given.

11. Whilst the celebrant is saying the prayers before the communion, the first acolyte comes from the side-table to the altar, with the empty chalice, pall and paten.

12. The celebrant having consumed the sacred species in both kinds, and covered the chalice out of which he communicated, places the other chalice in the middle of the altar, and uncovers it.

13. He kneels, places the consecrated Host in the chalice, covers it with a pall and paten on the concave side, covers the whole with the veil, and kneels.

14. He takes the pyx, places it before the chalice covered with a veil, uncovers it, kneels, retires to the Gospel side, having his face turned towards the Epistle side.

15. One of the acolytes, kneeling at the Epistle side, recites the *Confiteor*, the other acolyte and the people also kneeling. The celebrant subjoins the *Misereatur* and *Indulgentiam*, as usual.

16. The celebrant going to the middle, kneels, takes the pyx, and turns round towards the people, and says as usual, *Ecce Agnus Dei*, &c.

17. The acolytes receive communion at the altar, then the people at the rails, holding the communion-cloth before them.

18. After the communion the celebrant retires to the altar, covers the pyx, and puts it into the tabernacle.

19. Then having said, *Quod ore*, &c., he takes the first ablution; kneels, washes his fingers over the chalice, returns to the middle, kneels, and takes the second ablution.

20. The chalice which has served for Mass, is brought to the side-table; the candles at the repository are lighted, the canopy is prepared outside the railing, and candles are distributed to some of the people.

21. In the mean time, the celebrant continues Mass, in which the following things are to be observed:

Having purified the chalice, he kneels, goes to the Epistle side, and reads the *Communio;* then goes to the middle, kneels, kisses the altar, withdraws to the side of the Gospel, and says, *Dominus vobiscum.*

He returns to the middle, kneels, goes to the Epistle side, and there reads the *Post Communio.*

He again goes to the middle, kneels, kisses the altar, turns, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and *Ite, missa est.*

Then he turns to the middle, kneels, says, *Placeat*, &c., kisses the altar, and says, *Benedicat vos*, &c., and kneels.

He turns to the Gospel side and gives the blessing, without turning round entirely, but only towards the Gospel side, and he does not return to the middle.

He says the Gospel of St. John, making the sign of the cross, not on the altar, but on the book, or altar-card, out of which he reads it.

At the words *Verbum caro factum est*, he kneels towards the Blessed Sacrament.

22. Mass being ended, the celebrant goes to the middle, kneels, and by the shortest way goes down, on the Epistle side, to the floor.

23. There, assisted by the acolytes, he takes off the chasuble and maniple, and puts on the white cope.

Section II.—*Of the Procession with the Blessed Sacrament to the Repository.*

1. The celebrant goes before the altar, and having made a genuflection, he kneels on the lower step, and prays for a while.

2. The first acolyte takes the censer with fire, and the boat with incense, to the celebrant.

3. The celebrant rises, puts incense into the censer without blessing it, the second acolyte offering the boat, without kissing it or the celebrant's hand.

4. The celebrant goes up to the altar, and, kneeling on the platform; incenses the Blessed Sacrament in the chalice.

5. Then the veil is put over his shoulders, and he rises, goes to the altar, kneels, rises, ties with a white ribbon the veil around the chalice that contains the Sacred Host.

6. He takes the chalice with his left hand covered with the veil, places his right hand on the chalice, and

the second acolyte extends over it both corners of the veil.

7. The celebrant, holding the chalice in this manner, turns his back to the altar, and begins the hymn, *Pange lingua.*

8. They proceed to the repository in the following order:

1st. The banner, if there be any.

2dly. Some of the faithful, two by two, carrying candles in their hands.

3dly. The processional cross, carried by the third acolyte.

4thly. The first acolyte with the censer, having incense in it.

5thly. The celebrant under the canopy; having at his right hand the second acolyte, who should take care to raise a little the celebrant's alb in front, when he goes up or down the steps. They say the hymn, *Pange lingua.*

9. When the procession has arrived at the repository, it divides into two lines, one on each side of it, so that the censer-bearer and the celebrant, under the canopy, may pass between them.

10. The cross-bearer stops at one side of the repository.

11. The celebrant goes up to the altar of the repository, places the chalice on it, kneels, goes down one of the steps; kneels on the platform; the veil is taken from his shoulders.

12. In the mean time, those who carried the canopy, leave it in some convenient place.

13. The celebrant arises, puts incense in the censer, without blessing it, and without the usual kisses, and

kneeling on the platform, incenses the Blessed Sacrament. The acolytes recite the verse, *Tantum ergo*, &c.

14. The celebrant gives the censer to the censer-bearer, rises, goes up to the altar, kneels, takes the chalice, places it in the repository; the second acolyte placing the steps near the altar, if it is necessary to reach the repository.

15. The celebrant kneels again, shuts up the repository, kneels, and goes down to the floor of the chapel.

16. Then the celebrant, kneeling on the lower step of the altar, prays for a while, rises, kneels on both knees on the floor of the chapel, and having covered his head, preceded by the cross, he returns between the acolytes to the altar.

Section III.—*Of the Removal of the Pyx.*

1. All being come to the altar, the cross is put in its place; the second and third acolytes take lighted candles.

2. The celebrant having made a genuflection, goes up to the altar, takes out of the tabernacle the pyx with the Blessed Sacrament, places it on the corporal, and kneels.

3. Going down, he kneels on the platform, and puts on the veil, assisted by the first acolyte.

4. The celebrant goes up to the altar, kneels, having his hands covered with the veil, takes the pyx, and, preceded by the clerks holding lighted candles in their hands, he carries the pyx to the altar of the repository, places it on the corporal, and kneels down.

5. Then going down, he kneels on the platform; there, assisted by the clerks, he takes off the veil; again goes

up, kneels, opens the repository, and places it in the pyx behind the chalice.

6. The celebrant kneels, shuts up the repository, and having prayed on the lowest step of the altar, he kneels on the floor of the chapel, and, with his head covered, returns to the sacristy.

7. There, the celebrant takes off the cope and the white stole, and puts on a violet one, crossing it on his breast as usual.

Section IV.—*Of the Stripping of the Altars.*

1. The celebrant vested as above, attended by the acolytes, goes to the altars, with his hands joined.

2. Standing on the floor of the sanctuary at the foot of the altar, he begins with a loud voice the anthem, *Diviserunt sibi*, which he continues with the Psalm, *Deus meus, respice in me;* reciting it with the acolytes.

3. In the mean time, the celebrant goes up to the altar, strips it, taking off the altar-cloths.

4. The acolytes receive the cloths, and remove from the altar the flower-pots, the front veil, and the carpet, so that nothing but the cross and six candlesticks, with their candles, but not lighted, is left on the altar.

5. The celebrant, having stripped the principal altar, goes to strip the others, if there be any more.

6. The altars being stripped, the celebrant returns to the principal one; there, after the last verse of the Psalm, the anthem *Diviserunt* is repeated, he waits for the *Angelus Domini*.

7. One of the acolytes gives the sign for it with the usual clapper; and all kneel down.

8. Then the celebrant arises, bows to the cross, and the acolytes kneel; all return to the sacristy.

9. There, the celebrant takes off the sacred vestments, makes the usual thanksgivings, and causes every thing to be put in its place.

10. The first acolyte takes from the cross of the great altar the white veil, and covers it with a violet one.

11. The priest should procure some of the faithful to pray before the Blessed Sacrament, whilst it remains in the repository; and he should have a number of candles burning before it.

CHAPTER V.

OF GOOD FRIDAY.

ARTICLE I.

OF WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE OFFICE OF GOOD FRIDAY.

At the Great Altar.

1. On the altar, which is to be altogether bare, six candlesticks, with candles of brown wax, not lighted.

2. A wooden cross, covered with a black veil, fixed in such a manner as to be easily removed.

3. A black cushion on the second step of the altar.

On the Side-table.

1. A towel, covering the side-table, without hanging down.

2. An altar-cloth, folded, large enough to cover the altar, without hanging down.

3. A book-stand with a Missal.

4. A black burse containing a corporal, pall, and purifier.

5. The censer, with the box containing incense.

6. A black veil for the chalice, to be used at the end of the office.

7. A little plate with the cruets, and finger towel.

Near the Table.

1. A carpet with a cushion of violet color, and a white veil, adorned with golden and silk violet fringe.

2. The processional cross, covered with a violet veil.

3. The wooden clapper.

At the Repository.

1. A white veil for the shoulders.

2. The canopy.

3. Torches and candles for the procession.

In the Sacristy.

1. Three surplices for the acolytes.

2. The amice, alb, cincture, black maniple, stole, and chasuble.

3. A chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.

Article II.

OF THE SACRED RITES TO BE PERFORMED ON GOOD FRIDAY.

Section I.—*From the Beginning of the Office to the Uncovering of the Cross.*

1. At the stated hour, the signal being given, the celebrant and acolytes put on their surplices in the sacristy, and every thing is prepared as above.

2. The celebrant washes his hands, puts on the amice, alb, cincture, black maniple, stole, and chasuble.

3. Preceded by the acolytes, with his hands joined, he goes to the altar with his head covered.

4. He takes off his cap, kneels on the floor of the sanctuary before the altar, and prostrates himself, laying his hand on the cushion placed on the second step, and prays for the space of a minute.

5. The first acolyte takes the altar-cloth, unfolds it over the altar, assisted by the second acolyte, but they do not unfold it in its width, as they must leave the foremost part of the altar uncovered.

6. The third acolyte places the book-stand with the Missal on the Epistle side of the altar.

7. The celebrant rises, and the cushion being removed by one of the acolytes, he goes up to the altar and kisses it in the middle.

8. He goes to the Epistle side, and reads the first lesson, with the *Tract.*

9. He says, *Oremus*, and, kneeling down with all the clergy and people, says, *Flectamus genua;* the second

acolyte, who rises first, answers, *Levate;* and the celebrant says the prayer, *Deus a quo*, &c.

10. Then he reads the second lesson and Tract, and immediately the Passion.

11. Having said in the same place, *Munda cor meum*, he continues to read that part of the Passion which is sung as the Gospel.

12. At the end he does not kiss the book, but immediately (in case there be no sermon) he reads the prayer, as in the Missal.

13. Before every prayer, with the exception of the eighth, the celebrant says, *Flectamus genua*, on which all the clergy and people kneel; and the second acolyte, rising up before the other, says, *Levate.*

14. About the end of the prayers, the first acolyte, assisted by the third, extends before the steps of the altar, or of the sanctuary, a carpet, and on the first steps, a violet cushion, and over all, the white veil.

SECTION II.—*Of the Uncovering and Veneration of the Cross.*

1. The prayers being ended, the celebrant, standing at the same side, takes off the chasuble only.

2. Then he kneels at the middle of the altar, takes the cross from it, and the first acolyte takes the Missal.

3. The celebrant goes to the Epistle side, retiring back from the altar, and having his face turned towards the people, the clerk holding the Missal before him.

4. The celebrant, with his right hand, uncovers the top of the cross, as far as the transverse piece, and raising the cross a little with both his hands, he says with a solemn voice, *Ecce Lignum Crucis;* and the acolytes, in the same tone of voice continue, *In quo Salus mundi*

pependit ; and all but the celebrant kneel down, and the acolytes say, *Venite, adoremus ;* after which words, all arise.

5. The celebrant, in front of the altar, at the side of the Epistle, uncovering the right arm of the cross, and the head of the crucifix, raising his voice and the cross higher, says again, *Ecce Lignum Crucis.*

6. The clerks continue, *In quo Salus*, &c. ; then all kneeling, they say, *Venite, adoremus*, as before.

7. The celebrant, finally, in the middle of the altar, uncovering the whole cross, and raising his hands and his voice still higher, says the third time, *Ecce Lignum Crucis*, &c.

8. The acolytes also answer, and kneel as before.

9. The first acolyte uncovers the processional cross, and all other crosses in the church are now uncovered, and the second acolyte replaces the book on the book-stand on the altar.

10. The celebrant, going down from the altar by the Gospel side, carries the cross devoutly, holding it raised up with both his hands, to the place prepared for it.

11. There, kneeling down, he places it on the cushion covered with the white veil, and, if necessary, he fastens it with some strings.

12. The celebrant rises, kneels, goes to the Gospel side, sits down, and, with the assistance of the acolytes, takes off his shoes.

13. The celebrant, thus without shoes, goes to venerate the cross, to which, at suitable distances, he bows, kneeling on both knees, the first, second, and third time, and then he kisses it.

14. The celebrant rises, and having knelt to the cross, returns to his seat at the Epistle side, and puts on his shoes.

15. The clerks also take off their shoes, and after the celebrant, and before the people, venerate the cross in the same manner as the celebrant, then return to their places, and put on their shoes.

16. After the acolytes, the people venerate the cross, first the men, and then the women.

17. The first acolyte remains by the cross whilst it is venerated by the people, and the second and third acolytes go to the celebrant, and with a loud and distinct voice, recite with him the verses and responses called the *Improperia.*

The *Improperia* to be recited by the celebrant, with the second and third acolytes, are as follows:

Part 1st.

Celebrant. Populo meus quid feci tibi, aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.

V. Quia eduxi te de terrâ Egypti: parasti crucem Salvatori tuo.

Clerk 2. *R. Agios o Theos.*

Cl. 3. *Sanctus Deus.*

Cl. 2. *R. Agios Ischyros.*

Cl. 3. *V. Sanctus fortis.*

Cl. 2. *Agios athanatos, eleison imas.*

Cl. 3. *Sanctus immortalis, miserere nobis.*

Cel. Quia eduxi te per desertum quadraginta annis; et mannâ cibavi te, introduxi te in terram satis bonam: parasti crucem Salvatori tuo.

Cl. 3. *Agios o Theos.*

Cl. 2. *Sanctus Deus.*

Cl. 2. *Agios Ischyros.*

Cl. 3. *Sanctus fortis.*

Cl. 2. *Agios athanatos, eleison imas.*

Sanctus immortalis, miserere nobis.

Cel. Quid ultra debui facere tibi et non feci? Ego quidem plantavi te vineam meam speciosissimam; et tu facta es mihi nimis amara; aceto namque sitim meam potasti, et lanceâ perforasti latus Salvatori tuo.

Cl. 2. *Agios o Theos.*

Cl. 3. *Sanctus Deus.*

Cl. 2. *Agios Ischyros.*

Cl. 3. *Sanctus fortis.*

Cl. 2. *Agios athanatos, eleison imas.*

Sanctus immortalis, miserere nobis.

Part 2d.

Cel. V. Ego propter te flagellavi Ægyptum cum primogenitis suis; et tu me flagellatum tradidisti.

Cl. 2 & 3. *R. Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego eduxi te de Ægypto, demerso Pharaone in mare rubrum; et tu me tradidisti principibus Sacerdotum.

Cl. 2 & 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego ante te aperui mare; et tu aperuisti lanceâ latus meum.

Cl. 2 & 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego te pavi mannâ per desertum; et tu me cecidisti alapis et flagellis.

Cl. 2 & 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego te potavi aquâ salutis de petrâ: et tu me potasti felle et aceto.

Cl. 2 & 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego propter te Chananeorum reges percussi: et tu percussisti arundine caput meum.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego dedi tibi sceptrum regale: et tu dedisti capiti meo spineam-coronam.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Cel. Ego te exaltavi magnâ virtute; et tu me suspendisti in patibulo crucis.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Populo meus quid feci tibi? aut in quo contristavi te? Responde mihi.*

Part 3d.

Cel. Crucem tuam adoramus Domine; et Sanctam Resurrectionem tuam laudamus et glorificamus: Ecce enim propter lignum venit gaudium in universum mundum.

Psal. Deus misereatur nostri et benedicat nobis.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Illuminet vultum suum super nos: et misereatur nostri.*

Cel. Crucem tuam adoramus Domine: et sanctam resurrectionem tuam laudamus et glorificamus; ecce enim propter lignum venit gaudium in universum mundum.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Crux fidelis inter omnes, arbor una nobilis; nulla sylva talem profert, fronde, flore, germine. Dulce lignum, dulces clavos, dulce pondus sustinet.*

Cel. Pange lingua gloriosi lauream certaminis, et super crucis trophaeo dic triumphum nobilem; qualiter Redemptor orbis immolatus vicerit.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Crux fidelis inter omnes arbor una nobilis: nulla sylva talem profert, fronde, flore, germine.*

Cel. De parentis protoplasti fraude factor condolens;

quando pomi noxialis in necem morsu ruit; ipse lignum tunc notavit, damna ligni ut solveret.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Dulce lignum, dulces clavos, dulce pondus sustinet.*

Cel. Hoc opus nostræ salutis ordo depoposcerat, multiformis proditoris ars ut artem falleret: et medelam ferret inde, hostis unde læserat.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Crux fidelis inter omnes, arbor una nobilis; nulla sylva talem profert, fronde, flore, germine.*

Cel. Quando venit ergo sacri plenitudo temporis: missus est ab arce Patris, natus orbis Conditor: atque ventre virginali, carne amictus prodiit.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *R. Dulce lignum, dulces clavos, dulce pondus sustinet.*

Cel. V. Vagit infans inter arcta, conditus præsepia, membra pannis involuta virgo mater alligat, et Dei manus pedesque stricta cingit fascia.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *R. Crux fidelis inter omnes, arbor una nobilis; nulla sylva talem profert, fronde, flore, germine.*

Cel. V. Lustra sex qui jam peregit, tempus implens corporis: sponte libera Redemptor passioni deditus; agnus in crucis levatur immolandus stipite.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Dulce lignum, dulces clavos, dulce pondus sustinet.*

Cel. Felle potus ecce languet; spina, clavi, lanceâ, mite corpus perforarunt, undâ manat et sanguine; terra, pondus, astra, mundus, quo lavantur flumine.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Crux fidelis inter omnes, arbor una nobilis: nulla sylva talem profert, fronde, flore, germine.*

Cel. Flecte ramos arbor alta, tensa laxa viscera: et rigor lentescat ille, quem dedit nativitas; et superni membra regis tende miti stipite.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Dulce lignum, dulces clavos, dulce pondus sustinet.*

Cel. Sola digna tu fuisti ferre mundi victimam; atque portum præparare arca mundo naufrago, quem sacer cruor perunxit, fusus agni corpore.

Cl. 2 *&* 3. *Crux fidelis inter omnes, arbor una nobilis; nulla sylva talem profert, fronde flore, germine.*

Cel. Sempiterna sit Beatæ Trinitati gloria: æqua Patri, Filioque par decus Paraclito; Unius Trinique nomen laudet universitas.

18. Towards the end of the veneration of the cross, the first acolyte lights the candles on the altar, and the third takes from the altar the book-stand, with the Missal.

19. Then the second and third acolytes go, one to the Epistle side, and the other to the Gospel side, and unfold the altar-cloths.

20. This being done, the second acolyte brings to the altar the burse with the corporal, and the purifier over it; he takes the corporal out of the burse, unfolds it, and places the purifier near it, on the Epistle side.

21. The third acolyte places on the altar, at the Epistle side, the book-stand, with the Missal opened.

22. The veneration being over, the celebrant brings the cross back to the altar, places it between the candlesticks, and makes a genuflection.

23. The acolyte removes the cushion and the veil from the place where the cross lay, and one of them puts fire in the censer.

24. The celebrant again puts on the chasuble at his seat, on the Epistle side, and goes up to the altar, with his head uncovered.

SECTION III.— *Of the Procession to the Repository, and the return to the Altar with the Blessed Sacrament.*

1. The celebrant, standing before the altar, puts the incense in the censer, without the usual blessing.

2. The procession goes to the repository in the following order :

The banner.

Some pious men of the congregation.

The censer-bearer.

The cross, uncovered, carried by the third acolyte.

The celebrant, with the second acolyte at his left hand.

3. At the repository, the banner and the cross stop on one side of the altar, the others who compose the procession divide themselves into two lines, one on each side of the altar.

4. The celebrant, having made a genuflection before the repository, kneels down on the lowest step of the altar, and, with others, prays awhile.

5. Then he arises, opens the repository, kneels, goes down the first step, and, standing, puts incense in the censer without blessing it, and without the usual kiss. The candles for the procession are lighted, and the canopy is prepared.

6. The celebrant, kneeling on the platform of the altar, incenses the Blessed Sacrament in the repository, arises, makes a genuflection, takes out of the repository the chalice, and places it on the altar.

7. The celebrant makes a genuflection, shuts the repository, in which he leaves the pyx with the consecrated Hosts; makes another genuflection, and then goes down the first step.

8. There kneeling, he puts on the veil, rises, makes a

genuflection, and takes the chalice as he did the day before, which the second acolyte covers with the veil.

9. The celebrant, turning his back to the altar, and his face to the procession, with a loud voice, begins the hymn, *Vexilla Regis*, which he continues with the second clerk, as follows:

Vexilla regis prodeunt,
Fulget Crucis mysterium:
Quo vita mortem pertulit,
Et morte vitam protulit.

Quæ vulnerata lanceæ
Mucrone diro, criminum
Ut nos lavaret sordibus,
Manavit undâ et sanguine.

Impleta sunt quæ concinit
David fideli carmine,
Dicendo nationibus,
Regnavit a ligno Deus

Arbor decora et fulgida,
Ornata regis purpura,
Electa digno stipite
Tam sancta membra tangere.

Beata, cujus brachiis
Pretium pependit sæculi,
Statera facta corporis,
Tulitque prædam tartari.

O Crux, ave, spes unica!
Hoc passionis tempore,

Piis adauge gratiam,
Reisque dele crimina.

Te, fons salutis, Trinitas!
Collaudet omnis spiritus:
Quibus crucis victoriam
Largiris, adde præmium. Amen.

10. The procession returns to the altar in the following order:

The banner.

Some pious men with candles.

The processional cross.

The censer-bearer with the censer.

The celebrant under the canopy, and the second acolyte at his left.

11. Four candles should be left burning at the repository.

12. The banner and the canopy are left outside the railing; the processional cross is put near the side-table.

13. The men of the congregation carrying candles, stop outside the railing in regular order, holding the candles in their hands to the end of the office.

14. The celebrant goes up to the altar, and places the chalice on the corporal; he then kneels, rises, and goes down the first step of the altar.

15. There he takes off the veil, and standing, puts incense in the censer without blessing or kissing; then kneeling down on the platform, he incenses the Blessed Sacrament.

SECTION IV.—*Of the Last Part of the Ceremony.*

1. The celebrant arising, goes to the altar, makes a genuflection, takes off the veil from the chalice, and places the paten on the corporal.

2. Then he takes the chalice, lays the consecrated Host on the paten, takes the paten with both his hands, and places the Host on the corporal, not saying any thing; and not making the sign of the cross, he places the paten on the corporal at his right hand.

3. The celebrant, having made a genuflection, takes the chalice, goes to the Epistle side, and holding the chalice in his left hand, puts in it wine and water, without blessing, and without saying any thing.

4. The chalice is not wiped, but is placed on the side of the corporal.

5. The celebrant goes to the middle, and having made a genuflection, replaces the chalice in the usual place, without making the sign of the cross, and covers it with the pall.

6. Remaining in the same place, the celebrant puts incense in the censer, without blessing.

7. Then taking the censer, he kneels, incenses the offering, saying as usual, *Incensum istud*, &c.

8. Having incensed the offerings, he kneels again, and incenses the cross (*ex Decr. S. R. C.* 14 *Maii* 1707), saying *Dirigatur Domine*, &c., and having again knelt to the cross, continues, as usual, the incensing of the altar, kneeling every time he passes by the middle of the altar.

9. The celebrant then gives the censer to the censer-bearer, saying, *Accendat in nobis*, &c.; he is not incensed.

10. Immediately, taking care not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament, he goes from the platform down to the second step, a little back of the altar on the Epistle side, having his face turned towards the people, and washes his hands, not saying any thing.

11. He returns to the middle of the altar, kneels, rises, and placing his hands joined on the altar, bowing, says with a low, but intelligible voice, *In spiritu humilitatis*, &c.

12. He kisses the altar, kneels, and turning towards the people on the Gospel side, he says, *Orate fratres;* and returns by the same way to the middle, without completing the circle, and kneels again.

13. The words, *Suscipiat*, are not answered.

14. The celebrant, with his hands joined before his breast, in a ferial tone, says, *Oremus. Præceptis*, &c.; and whilst he says, *Pater noster*, he extends his hands.

15. The clerks answer, *Sed libera nos a malo*, and the celebrant, *Amen;* with a low voice, still holding his hands extended, he continues in the ferial tone as before, *Libera nos*, &c., and at the end, the acolytes answer, *Amen.*

16. The celebrant kneels, arises, uncovers the chalice, puts the paten under the Host, and holding with his left hand the paten on the altar, with the right he raises the Host, so that it may be seen by the people.

17. Immediately after, he raises the Host over the chalice already uncovered, and forthwith divides it into three parts as usual, not saying any thing; the last part he puts into the chalice, without saying any thing, and without making the sign of the cross.

18. The chalice being covered, he kneels, rises, and with his hands joined over the altar, his body inclined,

he says secretly, *Perceptio corporis*, omitting the two other prayers.

19. He again kneels, then taking the Paten with the Host, says, as usual, *Panem Cœlestem*, &c., and also the *Domine, non sum dignus*, &c., striking his breast.

20. He signs himself with the Host, saying, *Corpus Domini nostri*, &c., and communicates.

21. Having meditated a little, he uncovers the chalice, and kneels.

22. He arises, and having gathered, as usual, the fragments, he takes the chalice with both his hands, not saying any thing, and without making the sign of the cross, he reverently takes the particle of the Host with the wine.

23. Omitting the usual ablution of the chalice, he washes his fingers, as customary, over the chalice, with wine and water.

24. Meanwhile, all rise, and the candles are put out.

25. Having taken the ablution in the middle of the altar, the celebrant wipes the chalice, covers it with the small black veil, arranges it, and bowing, with his hands joined before his breast, he says secretly, *Quod ore sumpsimus*, &c.

26. The first acolyte carries the chalice to the side-table.

27. The celebrant, going down, makes with the clerk a genuflection to the cross, and having covered his head, he returns to the sacristy.

28. There he takes off the sacred vestments, and puts on a white stole over his surplice.

Section V.—*Of the bringing back of the Pyx to the Altar.*

1. The celebrant, preceded by the first acolyte, with the veil, and the other two with candles, goes to the repository.

2. Having made a genuflection on the floor of the chapel, he knèels on the lowest step, and prays for a while.

3. Then he rises, goes up to the altar, opens the repository, kneels, takes the pyx, and places it on the corporal, and keeels again.

4. Going down the first step, he kneels on the platform, and receives the veil from the first acolyte.

5. He goes up to the altar, kneels, and with his hands covered with the veil, takes the pyx, and preceded by the clerks with lighted candles, brings back the pyx, which should be kept in a tabernacle, in some remote chapel within the church, or in the sacristy, placing it there with the accustomed genuflections.

6. When the pyx is shut up in the tabernacle, all kneel down, and the sign for the *Angelus Domini* is given with the usual wooden instrument.

7. Lastly, the candles of the altar are put out, and every thing is put in its proper place.

8. Should there be no chapel or sacristy, the pyx must be left in the repository, with a lamp burning before it.

CHAPTER VI.

OF HOLY SATURDAY.

ARTICLE I.

WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED FOR THE SACRED RITES TO BE PERFORMED ON THIS DAY.

Outside the Door of the Church.

1. A table covered with a white cloth, and on it,
2. A small book-stand with a Missal.
3. A plate with five grains of incense.
4. The censer, with the box, containing incense.
5. A vessel with holy water and the sprinkle.
6. A white maniple, stole, and dalmatic.
7. A lantern with a candle.
8. Also, near the table, a chafing-dish with coals, or wood to be lighted for the new fire.
9. Tongs.
10. A long ornamented rod, with the triple candle fastened on the top. This has but one common stock, from which three candles, of equal length, rise in a triangular form.

At the Great Altar.

1. The altar is to have on it the candlesticks and cross, as on solemn festivals.
2. Its front is to be covered with two altar-veils, a white one under another of violet color.
3. A stand on the Gospel side, to fix in it the rod with the triple candle.

4. On the same side, a high book-stand for the *Exultet*.

5. The paschal candle on a large candlestick, the wick of which should be so prepared as to be easily lighted; five holes in the form of a cross should be made in the candle.

6. The lamps dressed at proper and convenient places.

On the Side-table.

1. The side-table should be covered with a white cloth.

2. A Missal for the *Exultet* and for Mass.

3. The chalice covered with a white burse and veil.

4. A plate with the cruets of wine and water, and a small linen towel.

In the Sacristy.

1. Four surplices for the acolytes; the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope; also, a violet maniple, stole and chasuble.

2. A white maniple, stole and chasuble.

3. A white veil.

4. Candles, to accompany the ciborium, when the priest brings it back to the altar.

At the Baptismal Fonts.

1. A table covered with a white cloth.

2. Two towels.

3. The holy-water vase, with the sprinkle.

4. Vessels to fill water from the fonts.

5. The vessels containing the oil of the catechumens, and the holy chrism.

6. A pitcher of water, with a basin for washing the hands, and a few slices of bread without crust on a small plate, for the same purpose.

7. Some clean cotton on a plate, for wiping the fingers.

If baptism be administered, besides what is above mentioned, the following things ought to be prepared.

1. The Roman Ritual.

2. A small plate with salt.

3. The vessels with the oil of the catechumens, and the holy chrism.

4. A white stole and cope.

5. A towel to wipe the head of the baptized person.

6. Another piece of linen for the white garment.

7. A candle, to be lighted.

Article II.

OF THE SACRED RITES TO BE PERFORMED ON HOLY SATURDAY.

Section I.—*From the beginning of the Office to the blessing of the Paschal Candle.*

1. Outside the church, fire is struck from a flint, and with it the charcoals in the pan are kindled.

2. At a proper hour, four clerks put on their surplices in the sacristy, and prepare every thing at their proper places.

3. The sign being given with the clapper, the celebrant washes his hands, puts on the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope.

4. They proceed to the principal door in the following order:

The first acolyte with his hands joined.

The third acolyte with the processional cross.

The celebrant between the second and fourth acolytes.

5. When outside, the acolyte with the cross stops, turning himself, and holding the crucifix turned towards the celebrant.

6. The celebrant places himself before the table, which is between him and the cross.

7. There, standing, he reads out of the Missal, placed on the book-stand on the table, the three prayers for the blessing of the fire, and then the prayer for the blessing of the incense.

8. Whilst the celebrant blesses the incense, the first acolyte takes, with the tongs, some of the new blessed fire, and puts it in the censer.

9. The celebrant, with the usual blessing and kiss, puts the incense in the censer, then he sprinkles the fire, and the grains of incense, saying the anthem *Asperges me*, and incenses them.

10. The censer-bearer, having received the censer, puts some more new fire into it.

11. The celebrant takes off the cope and stole, puts on a maniple, and a stole on his left shoulder, as deacons wear it, and a dalmatic of white color.

12. Meanwhile the second acolyte lights a candle with the new fire, and places it in a lantern, and the fourth acolyte takes the plate with the grains of incense.

13. The celebrant again puts incense in the censer with the usual blessing and kisses, and takes the rod with the triple candle.

14. They go to bless the paschal candle in the following order:

The acolyte, carrying the grains of incense on the right hand, and the censer-bearer on the left.

The third acolyte with the cross.

The celebrant, holding the rod with the triple candle, and the second acolyte, with the lighted taper, at the left.

15. The acolytes, carrying the grains of incense, the censer, and the cross, go into the church, and stop when the celebrant has entered the door.

16. The celebrant having entered the church, lights one of the three candles out of the lighted taper, and kneels with the rest of the clergy and the people, the cross-bearer excepted.

17. Thus kneeling, the celebrant says with a distinct voice, *Lumen Christi;* then he rises, and the acolytes also arising, answer, *Deo gratias.*

18. They go as far as the middle of the church, where again the second candle being lighted, every thing is done as before, except that the celebrant raises his voice higher.

19. At last they go as far as the steps of the altar, and the third candle being lighted, every thing is done the third time, as before, but they raise their voice still higher.

Section II.—*Of the Blessing of the Paschal Candle.*

1. The acolytes having answered for the third time, *Deo gratias*, all rise, and form a straight line, with the celebrant in the middle, before the altar.

2. The second acolyte retiring, lays the taper on the table, takes the Missal for the *Exultet*, gives it to the celebrant, who gives him the rod with the triple candle.

3. The celebrant, holding the Missal in his hands, kneels on the lowest step of the altar, and without say-

ing *Munda cor meum*, says only, *Jube Domine benedicere. Dominus sit in corde meo, et in labiis meis, ut digne et competenter annuntiem suum paschale præconium. Amen.*

4. Then rising, and having made with the others a genuflection to the altar, they go to the book-stand, which is covered with a white veil, and placed at the Gospel side, in the following order:

The censer-bearer, having at his right the fourth acolyte, with the grains of incense.

The third acolyte, with the cross, having at his left the second acolyte, with the rod with the triple candle.

The celebrant with the Missal.

5. Being arrived at the book-stand, they range themselves by it in the following order, in a straight line, and turn, as well as the celebrant, their face towards it.

The celebrant lays the Missal on the book-stand.

The cross-bearer at the right of the celebrant.

The censer-bearer at the right of the cross-bearer.

The acolytes, holding the triple candle, at the left of the celebrant.

The acolytes, with the grains of incense, at the left of the triple candle.

6. The celebrant, receiving the censer from the censer-bearer, incenses the Missal open on the book-stand, and with a clear and joyful voice begins the *Exultet*.

7. At the words, *Curvat imperia*, he puts the grains of incense in the side of the paschal candle, in the following order: 1 4 2 5 3

8. The fourth acolyte leaves on the side-table the plate, in which the grains were, and takes a rod, with a wax taper fastened at the top, and returns to his former place, at the left of the triple candle.

9. At the words, *Rutilans ignis accendit*, the celebrant lights the candle from the triple candle.

10. At the words, *Apis mater eduxit*, the celebrant stops, until the fourth acolyte has lighted a taper to light the lamps of the church.

11. The *Exultet* being ended, the celebrant shuts the Missal, and the second acolyte puts the triple candle in the stand prepared for it at the Gospel side. The third acolyte leaves the cross at the Epistle side.

12. Then, preceded by the censer-bearer, with the acolyte that carried the grains of incense, at his left, and also by the second and third acolyte, he kneels before the altar with them all, and returns to the sacristy.

13. There, having taken off the white vestments, he puts on the violet maniple, stole, and chasuble.

Section III.— *Of the Prophecies.*

1. The celebrant thus vested, preceded by the acolytes, goes to the altar.

2. Having bowed to the cross, he goes up to the altar, kisses it in the middle, and goes to the Epistle side.

3. There, with a loud voice, he reads the twelve prophecies, with the prayers and tracts; he kneels with all the clergy and the people, whilst he says, *Flectamus genua*, before every prayer, the last only excepted; and the clerk, arising, says, *Levate*.

4. After the last prayer, the celebrant, having made, from the place where he stands, a bow to the cross, goes down to his seat at the Epistle side, and takes off the chasuble and maniple.

5. If the church has a baptismal font, the celebrant

puts on a violet cope, and sits down. Otherwise he goes before the altar for the litany, as below.

Section IV.—*Of the Blessing of the Font.*

1. The celebrant being seated as above, the first acolyte takes from its stand the paschal candle, lighted, and goes before the altar.

2. The third acolyte takes the cross, and likewise goes before the altar.

3. The two other acolytes go to the celebrant.

4. The celebrant, arising, begins with a loud voice the tract, *Sicut cervus*, as here below, which he continues slowly with the acolytes.

5. When the tract is begun, the procession moves to the front, bowing to the altar, in the following order:

The acolyte with the paschal candle. The cross-bearer. The celebrant, between the two other acolytes, with his head covered, reciting the tract:

"Sicus cervus desiderat ad fontes aquarum: ita desiderat anima mea ad te Deus.

"Sitivit anima mea ad Deum vivum: quando veniam, et apparebo ante faciem Dei?

"Fuerunt mihi lacrymæ panes die ac nocte, dum dicitur mihi per singulos dies, ubi est Deus tuus?"

6. All stop before the railing of the font, and the celebrant having his face turned to the cross, after the tract is over, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, *Omnipotens Sempiterne Deus*, &c., the fourth acolyte holding the Missal before him.

7. The acolyte carrying the paschal candle, and the cross-bearer, go within the railing, if the place is spacious enough; they, however, stand opposite the celebrant.

8. The celebrant goes near the font, and says the second prayer and the preface, as in the Missal, holding always his hands joined.

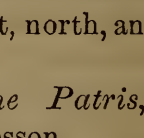
9. During the preface, at the proper places, as pointed out by the Rubrics, he performs the following rites:

1. At these words, *Gratiam de Spiritu Sancto*, with his right hand he divides the water in the form of a cross, and immediately after wipes his hand.

2. After the words, *Non inficiendo corrumpat*, he touches the water with his hand, and wipes it.

3. After the words, *Indulgentiam consequatur*, with his right hand he makes three crosses over the font.

4. After the words, *Super te ferebatur*, he divides the water with his right hand, and spills it towards the four parts of the world, east, west, north, and south, in the following manner:



5. After the words, *In nomine Patris*, &c., he changes his voice in the tone of a lesson.

6. After the words, *Tu benignus aspira*, the celebrant breathes thrice over the water in the form of a cross.

7. After the words, *Purificandis mentibus efficaces*, he dips the paschal candle a little into the water, saying, *Descendat in hanc plenitudinem fontis*, &c., and draws it forth. He dips it deeper the second time, saying louder, *Descendat*, &c., and takes it out again. Lastly, he dips the paschal candle to the bottom of the font, and says still louder, *Descendat*, &c., and takes it out.

8. The celebrant breathes three time over the water, in the form marked in the Missal, and continues, *Totamque hujus aquæ*, &c.

9. At the words, *Fœcundet effectu*, he takes the paschal candle out of the font, and it is wiped.

10. He continues the preface, and in a lower tone concludes it, saying, *Per Dominum nostrum*, &c., and the assistant acolytes answer, *Amen.*

11. The second acolyte takes the holy-water vase, and with it takes some water out of the font.

12. The celebrant having received the sprinkle, already dipped into the water of the font, sprinkles both himself and the bystanders; then, accompanied by two clerks, he sprinkles the people in the church and returns to the font.

13. Holy water is also taken out of the font for the vessels that are by the doors of the church.

14. The celebrant, having returned to the font, puts in the water the oil of the catechumens in the form of a cross, saying, *Sanctificetur*, &c.*

15. Then he puts in the chrism, saying, *Infusio chrismatis*, &c.

16. Lastly, he puts in both oils together, in the form of a cross, saying, *Commixtio chrismatis*, &c.

17. He mixes with his hands in the font the oils with the water, spreading them all over the font.

18. He wipes his hands with some cotton, and washes them with some crumbs of bread.

Section V.—*Baptism of Infants.*

"*Duo potissimum* (these words are of the Roman Ritual) *ex antiquissimo Ecclesiæ ritu, sacri sunt dies, in quibus solemni cæremonia hoc Sacramentum administrare maxime convenit, nempe Sabbatum Sanctum*

* As, generally, the font is not sufficiently large, the water is blessed in a more capacious vessel; in which case the font is filled with blessed water by means of vases prepared for that purpose.

Paschæ, et Sabbatum Pentecostes, quibus diebus Baptismatis fontis aqua rite consecratur."

The celebrant, having finished the blessing of the font, proceeds to the baptism of the infants, if any are to be baptized.

1. After the blessing of the font, the children to be baptized should be with their sponsors outside the door of the church.

2. The celebrant, having washed his hands, preceded by an acolyte with the cross, another acolyte remaining by the font with the paschal candle, goes between the two other acolytes, to the door of the church.

3. There, the celebrant performs all that is prescribed by the Ritual, as far as the introducing of the child into the church.

4. Then he lays on the infant the extremity of the stole which hangs from his left shoulder, and introduces it into the church, saying, *N. Ingredere in Templum Dei*, &c.

5. Then having said the *Credo* and *Pater*, with his back turned to the railing of the font, he says the *Exorcism;* touches the ears and nostrils of the infant, and anoints it with the oil of catechumens on the breast, and between the shoulders.

6. Remaining still outside the railing, the celebrant takes off the violet cope and stole, and puts on the white.

7. Preceded by the cross, and followed by the infants to be baptized, with their godfathers and godmothers, he goes inside the railing of the font.

8. The celebrant makes the usual questions before the font, *N. Credis?* &c., *N. Vis baptizari?* &c.

9. The godfather having answered, *Volo*, he administers baptism, in the manner prescribed in the Ritual, &c.

10. After the baptism, the celebrant washes his hands, and having put off the white cope and stole, puts on the violet.

Section VI.—*Of the Litany, Mass, and Vespers.*

1. The celebrant, preceded by the cross and paschal candle bearers, and attended by the other acolytes, returns before the altar.

2. The paschal candle is placed on its stand, and the cross laid against the wall on the Epistle side.

3. The celebrant, standing before the altar, takes off the cope only.

4. Then kneeling down with the clergy and people, he recites the Litany from the Missal, which is placed on a stool before him.

5. The acolytes repeat all that is said by the celebrant.

6. At the verse, *Peccatores*, the violet front veil is removed from the altar, the candles are lighted, and flower-pots are placed between the candlesticks.

7. The celebrant continues the Litany, as far as *Christe exaudi nos*, inclusively.

8. Then he rises, and, preceded by the acolytes, goes to the sacristy; where, having taken off the violet stole, he puts on a white maniple, stole, and chasuble.

9. Accompanied by the acolytes, as above, he returns to the altar, before the step of which he makes the confession as usual, saying the Psalm, *Judica me, Deus*, and the *Gloria Patri*.

10. He goes up to the altar, and having said the prayer, *Aufer a nobis*, in the middle of it, he says immediately, *Kyrie eleison*, there being no *Introit*.

11. At the *Gloria in excelsis*, the bells are rung.

12. After the Epistle, the celebrant says thrice, *Alleluia*, raising his voice gradually each time; and the acolytes repeat it in the same tone of voice as the celebrant, who continues the verse and the tract.

13. *Credo* is not said, neither the *Offertorium* after the *Dominus vobiscum*, nor the *Agnus Dei;* the *Pax* is not given.

14. In place of the *Communio*, vespers are said, as in the Missal, viz.:

15. The celebrant, at the Epistle side, says the anthem *Alleluia*, and with the acolytes continues the Psalm, *Laudate*, after which he repeats, *Alleluia*.

16. Then he says the antiphon, *Vespere autem*, &c., with the canticle, *Magnificat*.

17. The antiphon, *Vespere*, &c., having been repeated, the celebrant goes to the middle of the altar, kisses it, and, turned towards the people, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and then the prayer, as usual, at the Epistle side.

18. At the *Ite*, *Missa est*, is added, *Alleluia*, *Alleluia*.

19. After the Gospel of St. John, the celebrant returns to the sacristy, and puts off the sacred vestments.

Section VII.—*Of bringing back the Pyx to the Altar.*

1. The celebrant over his surplice puts on a white stole, and, preceded by two acolytes with candles, and by another with the burse and veil, he goes to the place where the pyx with the Blessed Sacrament is kept.

2. There, with the usual genuflections, he takes the pyx with his hands covered with the veil, and brings it back to the usual tabernacle.

3. He returns to the sacristy, in which he puts off the sacred vestments, and reads the anthem, *Trium puero-*

rum, with *Alleluia* and the Canticle, Psalm, and prayers of thanksgiving, as in the Missal.

4. Meanwhile the candles of the altar are put out.

5. Likewise the triple candle, which is not lighted any more; and the rod is removed.

6. Also the paschal candle is extinguished, but it is left in its stand. It is to be lighted on all Sundays and festivals of obligation at Mass and Vespers, until the Gospel of Ascension-day, inclusively; after which it is put out, and after Mass removed from its stand. Afterwards, it is lighted only on the eve of Pentecost, for the blessing of the font.

CHAPTER III.

THE ASPERGES.*—WHEN THERE IS BUT ONE PRIEST.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

In the Sacristy.

1. The sacred vestments for the priest, except the maniple and chasuble.
2. A cope, if the priest prefers to wear it.
3. The holy-water vase.
4. The sprinkle.
5. The Missal, or Asperges-card.
6. Surplices for the acolytes.

---

* The Asperges, or sprinkling of the holy water, takes place every Sunday of the year, except when the Bishop solemnly celebrates.

In the Sanctuary.

The chasuble and maniple on the priest's bench.

At the Altar.

Every thing ready for Mass.

1. At the appointed time, the acolytes put on their surplices, the priest washes his hands, and then puts on the amice, alb, girdle, and stole, assisted by the acolytes. The first acolyte takes the holy-water vase, and the second the Asperges-card, placing themselves a little behind the celebrant, who takes off his cap, and all bow to the image in the sacristy. The celebrant, having again put on his cap, goes to the altar, preceded by the acolytes; they bow to the clergy, should they be in the sanctuary.

2. Having arrived in front of the lowest step of the altar, the first acolyte at the right, and the second at the left, the celebrant gives his cap to the first acolyte, and all make a genuflection on the floor,† rise, and kneel on the lowest step.‡ The priest having received the sprinkle from the acolyte, intones the *Asperges*, or the *Vidi aquam*, according to the season, and sprinkles the altar three times, first in the middle, then at the right, and lastly, at the left side; in the mean time, the choir continues to sing the *Asperges*. Then the celebrant sprinkles himself; after which, he rises and sprinkles the

---

(*Cærem.*, *Epis.*, l. ii., c. xxxi). The water may be blessed in the church, or in the sacristy. (*Rub.*, *Miss.*) The holy water should be changed, at least, once a week. (*Cærem. Epis.*, l. i., c. vi.)

† It is supposed that the Blessed Sacrament is in the tabernacle.

‡ Should the Blessed Sacrament be exposed, the genuflection should be made with both knees. The usual kisses, in giving and receiving the sprinkle, should also be omitted, and the altar is not sprinkled.

acolytes, first the one at his right, and then the other, while these remain kneeling.

3. Then all rise, and all make either a profound bow to the altar, or a genuflection, if the Blessed Sacrament be in the tabernacle, or exposed; and turning at their right, they go as far as the railings of the sanctuary, the first acolyte, carrying the holy-water vase, at the right of the celebrant, and the second at his left, both raising the borders of the cope. From the railings the priest sprinkles the people three times, first in the middle, then at the Epistle, and lastly, at the Gospel side; after which, turning at the right, they go back to the front of the lowest step, and there make a genuflection.

4. Then they rise, and stand until the Antiphon *Asperges* is sung and repeated by the choir; after which, the celebrant sings the versicles, and the prayer from the book or card; the choir having answered, *Amen*, all make a genuflection, and go to the bench, where the priest takes off the cope, assisted by the second acolyte, who carries it away, removing also the holy-water vase and card; if the Missal has been used for the Asperges, he places it, opened at the right place, on the book-stand upon the altar. In the mean time, the celebrant, assisted by the first acolyte, puts on the maniple and the chasuble; after which, between the two acolytes, he goes in front of the lowest step, where all make a genuflection, the acolytes kneeling on the floor, a little behind the priest.

5. If the clergy be in the sanctuary, the celebrant, having sprinkled the altar and himself, rises, and being accompanied by the acolytes, proceeds to sprinkle the clergy. He sprinkles first at that side where the highest in dignity sits, saluting them before and after the

sprinkling. Should there be Canons, they sprinkle each in particular. After sprinkling the clergy, he goes to the railings, from which place he sprinkles the people in the manner above prescribed. He salutes the clergy on both sides of the sanctuary as he returns to the lowest step, makes a genuflection, and sprinkles the acolytes.

6. Should the Bishop assist, the celebrant, after having sprinkled the altar (accompanied by the acolytes carrying the holy-water vase), goes to the Bishop, bows to him, and, with the usual kisses, gives him the sprinkle. The prelate sprinkles himself, then the celebrant, and afterwards his own assistants. He then returns the sprinkle to the celebrant, who receives it with the usual kisses. Having bowed to the Bishop, they return to the lowest step of the altar, where, having made a genuflection, the celebrant sprinkles the two acolytes. They again make a genuflection, and go to the railings, to sprinkle the people, bowing to the bishop in going and returning.

7. Should there be deacon and sub-deacon, their maniples must be placed on the priest's bench in the sanctuary beforehand. The celebrant and all the assistants being vested, at the signal of the master of ceremonies, all bow to the cross, and, making the usual salutes, put on their caps; then the procession moves in the following order:

First, the clerk with the holy-water vase, followed by the two acolytes carrying candles; then the celebrant, with hands joined, accompanied on either side by the deacon and sub-deacon, raising the borders of his cope. (*Cærem. Epis.*)

8. Having arrived in the sanctuary, they salute the clergy; then, proceeding to the lowest step of the altar,

give their caps to the master of ceremonies, and make a genuflection. The master of ceremonies takes the caps to the priest's bench, and the acolytes go to the side-table. The celebrant and his ministers kneel on the lowest step, and the clerk, with the holy-water vase, goes to the right of the deacon, who takes the sprinkle, and, with the usual kisses, presents it to the celebrant, who, as he intones the *Asperges*, sprinkles the altar, as was before said in No. 2.

9. The celebrant, still kneeling, having sprinkled himself, sprinkles the deacon and sub-deacon. This done, the deacon receives the sprinkle, and gives it to the clerk, who carries the holy-water vase. Then they rise, make a bow to the altar, or a genuflection, if the Blessed Sacrament is in the tabernacle, and proceed to sprinkle the clergy; the clerk carrying the holy-water vase precedes the celebrant, who is accompanied by his minister, raising the borders of the cope. Having saluted the clergy, the deacon presents the sprinkle to the celebrant, who sprinkles, as he continues to say the *Miserere*, in a low voice, with his ministers.

10. Having sprinkled the clergy in the manner prescribed in No. 6, the celebrant, with his ministers, sprinkles the people at the railing; after which, the deacon takes from the celebrant the sprinkle, and gives it to the clerk, and then they return to the foot of the altar, saluting the clergy as they pass. There the deacon again gives the sprinkle to the celebrant, who sprinkles the acolytes and other clerks that may be about the altar. While sprinkling, the celebrant does not bow, but the clergy and others will stand uncovered, make a bow and the sign of the cross. (*Gavant., in Benedict.*)

11. If, on this occasion, that is, when the celebrant is assisted by deacon and sub-deacon, the Bishop is present, after the sprinkling of the altar, the celebrant, accompanied only by the master of ceremonies and the clerk carrying the holy-water vase, goes to the Bishop, bows to him, and, with the usual kisses, gives him the sprinkle; the rest is done as marked in No. 6. The deacon and sub-deacon remain standing at the foot of the altar. This is, as Gavantus says, through respect for the Bishop. The celebrant, having received the sprinkle from the Bishop, bows to him, and returns to the front of the altar, makes a genuflection, and sprinkles the deacon and sub-deacon. After this, he proceeds as on other occasions, except that he is accompanied only by the master of ceremonies and the clerk carrying the holy-water vase, the ministers remaining standing at their post in front of the altar.

12. The antiphon being sung, and repeated by the choir, the celebrant sings the versicles and the prayer, with joined hands, from the book that is held before him by his ministers. Then they bow, or make a genuflection, and go to the priest's bench, where, standing with their faces towards the altar (*Baldeschi*), the ministers take off the cope from the celebrant, and put on him the chasuble and maniple; after which, they take their own maniples. This done, they return to the altar, and commence Mass.

CHAPTER IV.

BENEDICTION WITH THE BLESSED SACRAMENT.*

Article I.

WHAT IS TO BE PREPARED.

1. There should be, at least, twelve lighted candles on the altar whenever the Blessed Sacrament is exposed in the monstrance, and benediction given with it.†

2. Likewise a throne, or small canopy, should be placed on the highest step over the altar, between the candlesticks; and in the canopy, a corporal or pall, on which the Blessed Sacrament is to be placed.

3. On the altar, a burse with another corporal, the remonstrance covered with a white veil, and the head of the tabernacle. ‡

4. On the side-table, a white benediction veil, and the book containing the prayers.

5. In the sacristy, a surplice, white stole and cope for the officiating priest. §

6. A surplice and white stole, for the priest or deacon if there be one, who is to expose the Blessed Sacrament.

---

* Benediction with the Blessed Sacrament should not be given without permission from the Ordinary. (*Benedict XIV.*, *Instit. XXX.*, n. 9., and *S. R. C.*, 28th April, 1640, 18th Dec., 1647.)

† *Benedict XIV.*, *Instit. XXX.*, 22, 24.

‡ The cross, unless it be too difficult to remove, the altar-cards, and reliquaries should be removed from the altar. (*Benedict XIV.*, *ibid.*, n. 17.)

§ According to Merati (Part iv., tit. xii., n. 30), it is commendable for the priest to wear an amice, alb, cincture, stole, and cope.

7. If thete are sacred ministers, two dalmatics, a stole for the deacon, two cinctures, two albs, and two amices.*

8. A sufficient number of surplices for the clerks that are to assist the priest, and for the torch-bearers.

9. Two, four, or even eight torches, to be carried by as many clerks.

10. The censer, and the incense-boat.†

Article II.

CEREMONIES TO BE PERFORMED WHEN THERE IS BUT ONE PRIEST.‡

1. The officiating priest having put on his surplice, stole, and cope, preceded by the censer-bearer, and the acolytes carrying the lighted torches, two by two, goes to the altar, makes a genuflection, rises, and kneels on the lowest step; the acolytes with their torches, forming a line at some distance behind the officiating priest, make a genuflection with him, and then kneel in the same place till the end of the ceremony.§

---

* In Rome it is customary, on great feasts, for an ordinary priest to be attended by sacred ministers, vested in dalmatics. However, in this respect, the Bishop's injunctions should be attended to.

† When benediction is given immediately after vespers, the celebrant keeps the same cope and stole which he wore at vespers. Also, when the benediction is given immediately after High Mass, the celebrant keeps the stole he had on, and having taken off the chasuble and maniple at his usual seat, he puts on a cope of the color used at Mass. If High Mass be celebrated with deacon and sub-deacon, they take off their maniples, and assist in their dress at the benediction of the Blessed Sacrament.

‡ It is a praise-worthy custom for the priest, on this occasion, to wash his hands, although the Rubrics do not prescribe it.

§ The censer-bearer may kneel in the middle, between the torch-bearers.

2. The priest rises, goes up to the altar, unfolds the corporal, and extends it in the middle; then he opens the tabernacle, makes a genuflection on one knee, takes the Blessed Sacrament from the tabernacle,* and puts it in the monstrance.† By this time, if necessary, the censer-bearer, unless there is another clerk to attend to it, shall have carried the stool or steps to the platform of the altar, that the priest may reach the place of exposition; the priest makes another genuflection on one knee, and exposes the Blessed Sacrament, then he joins his hands and makes a low bow, and another genuflection, having reached the platform; after which, turning to his right, he descends, kneels on the lowest step, bows, rises, and turns to his right, to put incense in the censer; the censer-bearer goes to the priest with the censer, who puts incense in, without, however, blessing it. If there are clerks assisting the priest, they rise with him: the one at the right receives the incense-boat from the censer-bearer, and presents the spoon to the priest; the other, at the left, supports the border of the cope, as the priest puts incense in the censer.

3. Then the priest kneels on the lowest step, takes the censer, and in the usual manner, incenses the Blessed Sacrament with three double swings, bowing before and after. During the incensing, the censer-bearer, if there are no assisting clerks, kneels at the right of the priest, relieving the border of the cope; then he re-

---

* At this time, where such is the custom, the choir commences the hymn, *O Salutaris Hostia!*

† Should the priest touch the Blessed Sacrament, he ought to purify his fingers in the little vase kept for that purpose near the tabernacle, and wipe them with the purificator.

ceives back the censer, makes a genuflection, and goes to his place, where he kneels.

4. In the mean time, the choir may sing such hymns and antiphons as are approved by the Church,* or by ancient usage; nevertheless, they should be in the Latin language. The corresponding versicles and responses may be sung also; last of all, the whole hymn, *Pange lingua*, &c., or the two last strophes, *Tantum ergo*, &c., and *Genitori*, &c., should be sung, and after it, the versicle, *Panem de cœlo*, &c., and the prayer, *Deus qui nobis*, &c.

5. During the *Tantum ergo*, at the words, *veneremur cernui*, all make a low bow, without, however, prostrating themselves.†

6. All remain kneeling, unless the *Te Deum* be sung, during which they stand, except at the verse, *Te ergo quæsumus*, &c., during which verse they kneel; at the commencement of *Genitori*,‡ the priest, his assistants, and the censer-bearer bow, rise, and incense is put in the censer, as is said in n. 2, and the Blessed Sacrament is incensed again, as before indicated. §

7. The hymn being finished, the singers begin the versicle, *Panem de cœlo*, &c.; the choir answers, *Omne delectamentum*, &c. During Paschal time and the Octave of Corpus Christi, *Alleluia* ‖ is added both to the versi-

---

* *Alex. VII.*, *constit. Piæ Solicitudinis.* *Benedict XIV.*, *constit. Inter omnigenas.* *Gardell.*

† Such is the practice in Rome and through all Italy, and it seems very becoming as an expression of deep sentiment of reverence.

‡ *Merati*, pars ix., tit. xii., 31. *Gardell.*, § xxxiv., 17.

§ The officiating priest incenses the Blessed Sacrament only twice, as is indicated. *Rit. Rom.*, *Cærem. Epis.*, and *Instruct.*, *Clem. XI.*, n. 2.

‖ *Merati*, pars iv., tit. xii. *Gardell.*, § xxxiv., 17.

cle and response. After this, the priest rises without making a genuflection, and sings, *Oremus*,* bowing at the same time; then he sings the prayer, *Deus qui nobis sub Sacramento*, &c., out of the book which, in the absence of sacred ministers, he holds in his hands.

He concludes the prayer with these words, *Qui vivis et regnas in sæcula sæculorum*;† neither before nor after this prayer *Dominus vobiscum* is said.

8. After the prayer, the priest kneels, and, if there is no one assisting, the censer-bearer goes to the side-table, takes the benediction-veil, and extends it on the priest's shoulders, then, if necessary, he carries the steps to the middle of the platform; then the priest bows, rises, goes to the platform, makes a genuflection on one knee, takes down the Blessed Sacrament from the throne, places it on the corporal, and makes another genuflection. In the mean time the steps are removed.

9. The priest then turns the back of the monstrance to his face; then covering his hands with the extremities of the veil, he takes hold of it at the highest part of its foot with his right hand, and at the lowest with his left; then he turns to his right on the Epistle side towards the people, raises the Sacrament as high as his eyes, brings it down lower than his breast, then he raises it in a straight line as high as his breast, afterwards brings it to his left shoulder, and completes the circle, turning himself to the altar to his right, on the

---

* *Gardell.*, xxiv., 22.

† Other prayers taken from the Missal may be added, especially the collect ordered by the Ordinary, under the same conclusion. (*S. R. C.*, 7th Sept., 1850.)

Gospel side, At last, he places it on the altar, turns its forepart towards his face, and makes a genuflection.*

10. During benediction the priest is silent, † but a few strokes of the hand-bell may give notice of benediction being given; also, the censer-bearer may incense the Blessed Sacrament with three double throws. ‡ The organ may play a grave and sweet melody during benediction, as at the elevation, during Mass.

11. The priest having replaced the monstrance on the altar, makes a genuflection on one knee, and is in the mean time, divested of the benediction-veil; having risen, he takes the Blessed Sacrament out of the monstrance, puts it in the tabernacle, makes a genuflection, closes the tabernacle, goes down to the lowest step, makes a genuflection with the clerks, and in the same order as he came to the altar, returns to the sacristy.

12. Whilst the Blessed Sacrament is replaced in the tabernacle, the psalm, *Laudate Dominum omnes gentes*, or any thing suitable for the occasion, may be sung.

---

* "Sacerdos, ostensorium manibus tenens, vertit se a parte Epistolæ, ita ut in medio Altaris populum respiciat. Tunc illud elevat decenti mora, non supra caput, sed tantum usque ad oculos, et eodem modo illud dimittit infra pectus; mox iterum recta illud attollit usque ad pectus; et deinde ad sinistrum humerum ducit, et reducit ad dexterum, nec ante pectus reducit, sed continuo se convertit ad cornu Evangelii; perficiens circulum, nec tamen, dum Crucem efformat, movens pedes." (*Cær.*, *Epis.*)

‡ The benediction with the Blessed Sacrament is to be given in silence by the celebrant, whether he be a Bishop or a priest, according to the Roman Ritual, the Ceremonial of Bishops, and several decisions of the Sacred Congregation of Rites, 9th Feb., 1762.

† Neither the ringing of the bell, nor the incensing during benediction is prescribed by the Rubrics, yet, in many well-regulated churches in Europe, the custom prevails of doing either or both. In some places even, the large church bell announces to the people that, at that moment, God, in His mercy, blesses them.

Article III.

When the officiating priest is assisted by another priest, or by deacon and sub-deacon.

1. If a priest or deacon assist at the benediction, he walks from the sacristy before the officiating priest. He carries the stole, not from his neck, but folded on his left arm. At the altar, he takes his place at the right of the officiating clergyman. After making the genuflection with the rest, he puts on the stole,* goes up to the platform, unfolds the corporal in the middle of the altar, opens the door of the tabernacle, and makes a genuflection on one knee. In making a genuflection on the platform, he turns his body a little towards the Gospel to avoid turning his back to the officiating priest. He exposes the Blessed Sacrament in the manner prescribed in Art. II., n. 2.

2. Having made the genuflection after the exposition, he turns to his left, goes down, kneels on the lowest step, and takes off the stole without kissing it. Then, having bowed with the officiating priest, he rises, moves a little backward so as to allow the censer-bearer to pass at his right in going to the officiating priest with the censer. He receives the incense-boat, and presents the spoon to the officiating priest without kisses. Incense having been put in the censer, the assisting priest receives back the spoon, returns the boat to the censer-bearer, and from him he receives the censer, which he presents to the officiating priest in the usual manner, but without kisses. He bows

* If a deacon assists, he should put on the stole, suspending it from his left shoulder to his right side, under his arm.

with the officiating priest, and relieves the border of the cope during the incensing. He bows again with him, takes the censer, and returns it to the censer-bearer.

3. At the *Genitori*, he bows, and rises with the officiating priest for the incense, in which he proceeds as before.

4. After the prayer, *Deus qui nobis sub Sacramento* &c., he puts on the stole, goes up to the altar, and, with the usual genuflections, he takes the monstrance, places it on the corporal, extended in the middle of the altar, and makes another genuflection. Then he goes down, kneels on the lowest step, and takes off the stole. In the mean time the benediction-veil is extended on the shoulders of the officiating priest by a clerk, or by the censer-bearer. Then the assisting priest, and the clerk at the left of the officiating clergyman, if there is any, bow, rise, and ascend the steps, at the same time raising a little the lower part of the vestments of the officiating priest, as he goes to bless the people. While he makes a genuflection on the platform, they kneel on the edge of the same. During the benediction, they support the borders of the cope, each on his side, keeping profoundly inclined at the same time.

5. After the benediction, the assisting priest puts on the stole, rises, goes to the altar, and makes a genuflection at the same time that the officiating priest, having reached the floor, kneels on the lowest step. Then he takes the Blessed Sacrament out of the monstrance, and puts it in the tabernacle. Then he makes another genuflection, closes the door of the tabernacle, folds the corporal, places it in the burse, and, having gone down to his place, he takes off the stole and kisses it. Then, having given the cap to the officiating priest, with the

usual kisses, he makes with him a genuflection on the floor, and all return to the sacristy.

6. Should there be a deacon and sub-deacon dressed in dalmatics, as they go from the sacristy to the altar, and from the altar to the sacristy, the deacon at the right, and the sub-deacon at the left of the officiating priest, they relieve the borders of the cope. The deacon makes the exposition of the Blessed Sacrament, and replaces it in the tabernacle, unless there is another priest for that purpose. They assist the officiating priest to put incense in the censer, instead of the above-named priest. They hold the book before him while he sings the prayers, but they do so kneeling. The officiating priest takes the monstrance to give benediction without the assistance of the deacon.

Article IV.

WHEN THE BISHOP GIVES BENEDICTION.

1. Besides the preparations mentioned in Art. I., the following things are to be prepared: The cope, stole, pectoral cross, cincture, alb, amice, mitre, and, if the Bishop is in his diocese, the crosier.* Also, the hand candlestick with a candle in. (These articles are prepared instead of the vestments for the priest.) On the lowest step of the altar a cushion.

2. The same ceremonies are observed as when a priest gives benediction, with the following particulars:† The Bishop, having put on the amice, alb, cincture. pectorai

* Should the Bishop wash his hands, the pitcher, basin with water, and a towel, are prepared.

cross, stole, cope, and mitre, takes the crosier, if he be in his diocese, to the sanctuary, preceded by the censer bearer, torch-bearers, master of ceremonies, deacon and sub-deacon dressed with dalmatics, relieving the borders of the cope. Then follow the crosier-bearer and mitre-bearer.

3. On arriving at the foot of the altar, the Bishop gives the crosier, and the mitre is taken off by the deacon, then he makes a genuflection on the floor,* for which purpose the master of ceremonies will put the cushion, and replace it on the lowest step, on which the Bishop kneels.

4. The benediction veil having been put on the Bishop's shoulder, he bows profoundly, rises, with the deacon and sub-deacon, and with them ascends the steps, while they raise his alb in front. Then he kneels with the sub-deacon at his left, on the edge of the platform, where the master of ceremonies has previously put the cushion. Meanwhile the deacon, having made a genuflection on the platform, takes the monstrance, keeping the fore-part of it towards himself, and standing, gives the Blessed Sacrament into the hands of the Bishop, who then rises, and, without saying any thing, blesses the people with three signs of the cross,† *i. e.*, the first on the Epistle side, the next in the middle of the altar, and the third on the Gospel side.

During the benediction, the deacon and sub-deacon, kneeling on the edge of the platform, raise the cope on each side. While standing, the Bishop gives the monstrance to the deacon or priest kneeling at his right,

---

* *Cærem. Episc.*, lib. i., ch. xv., and *S. R. C.*, 12th Nov., 1831.

† *Cærem. Episc.*, lib. ii., ch. xxxiii.

and, the veil being taken from his shoulders, kneels on the cushion on the lowest step.*

5. The deacon or the priest, having placed the monstrance on the corporal, takes the Blessed Sacrament out of it, and places it in the tabernacle, with the usual genuflections.

6. After this, the Bishop takes his mitre and crosier, if he use it, makes a genuflection on the floor,† and returns to the sacristy.

If there be no sacred ministers to assist the Bishop at the benediction with the Blessed Sacrament, he will conform to the directions found in Art. I. for the benediction given by a priest in a similar case; however, in blessing the people, he will make three signs of the cross, as explained above—n. 4.

---

* Ib., Gardellini, sec. xxxi, 12.

† Ib., lib. i., ch. xv., S. R. C. 12th Nov., 1831.

CEREMONIAL.

PART III.

Ceremonies of High Mass.

CHAPTER I.

RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THE CLERGY IN CHOIR.

Article I.

The Order of going to the Choir.

1. The clergy, dressed in their cassocks and surplices, go out of the sacristy, two by two, so close together that the right shoulder of the one may almost touch the left shoulder of the other; and they proceed gravely, with regular step, holding their caps with both hands below their breasts, each pair keeping at equal distance from the other.

2. When they arrive at the altar, they make a genuflection to the cross, both taking care to make it at the same time, and to rise slowly, and with gravity; in this, the uniformity and decorum of the ceremonies consist. Each pair make their genuflection in the same place that the first made theirs; it will, therefore, be necessary that those who are behind should advance slowly, so as to allow those before them, time to make the genu-

flection with decorum. After the genuflection, they turn and salute each other, and then proceed to their place,* one on one side of the choir, the other on the other, and remain standing.

Article II.

The Order to be observed in Choir.

1. There are three different postures to be observed in choir, viz., to stand, sit, or kneel. When it is time to stand, all must stand, and no one must sit down or kneel; so all must be uniform, when it is time to sit or kneel.

The clergy should remember not to kneel down during the elevation at Low Masses that may be celebrated whilst they are in the choir. (*Sac. Con. Rit.*, 5th Mart., 1667.) And they should conform to the directions of the master of ceremonies, in whatever regards divine worship. (*Sac. Con. Rit.*, 4th June, 1817.)

2. During High Mass, the clergy remain standing, from the end of the confession, until the celebrant has

---

* There should be no chairs in the sanctuary, except that of the Bishop, or some very distinguished personage. Priests, even Canons, and others belonging to the clergy, should sit on benches. These should be neatly made, with high backs, especially when attached to the walls. The bench for the celebrant should be near the altar on the Epistle side, and should be sufficiently large to accommodate the celebrant, deacon, and sub-deacon. It may be richly ornamented with carved work, but should never look like a throne.

"Sacerdos, Diaconus, et Subdiaconus, celebrantes solemniter, possunt et debent sedere in banco, dum canitur Gloria, Credo, &c.; non obstante qualibet consuetudine." (*S. R. C.*, 15th Jan., 1611.)

"Canonici Missam celebrantes coram Episcopo, non debent sedere in sede cum postergali, sed in aliquo scamno oblongo, tapete, vel panno cooperto in latere Epistolæ." (*S. R. C.*, 19th Maji, 1614.)

said the *Kyrie eleison*, whilst he is singing the *Gloria in excelsis*, and until he is seated after reciting it; whilst he is singing the prayers; whilst the deacon is singing the Gospel; whilst the celebrant is singing the *Dominus vobiscum*, and the *Oremus*, at the *Offertory;* during the incensing of the choir; during the preface, until the *Sanctus* is recited; after the elevation, until after communion; at the prayer, after communion, until the end of Mass.

3. The clergy kneel from the beginning of Mass until the end of the confession; whilst the deacon sings the *Flectamus genua*, rising again when the sub-deacon sings *Levate;* whilst the sub-deacon sings in the Epistle, *In nomine Jesu omne genu flectatur*, &c., to the word *infernorum*, inclusively; in time of Lent, at the verse, *Adjuva nos;* at Pentecost, at the verse, *Veni Sancte Spiritus;* at the *Verbum caro factum est*, and at the *Incarnatus est* of the Credo in the Masses of Christmas and of the Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin; from the *Sanctus*, till after the consecration; at the communion of the clergy, after the celebrant has said *Indulgentiam;* in the ferial Masses of Advent, Lent, ember days and vigils, which are fast days; and in masses for the dead, at the prayers, at the *Sanctus*, till the *Pax Domini*, inclusive; at the *Post Communio*, except the vigils of Easter, Pentecost, Christmas, and the ember days of Pentecost. (*Rub. Miss.*, part 1.) The clergy remain seated with their caps on, at all times when it is not prescribed above for them to stand or kneel.

4. The clergy take off their caps whenever they stand up; when they are saluted by the officiating clergy, or by others, who come to and from the choir, to return the salutation; whenever they have to bow their heads.

In the above cases, it is understood that the cap only should be taken off. Should any wear the calotte,* it is taken off also when a genuflection is made; when the deacon sings the Gospel; at the *Incarnatus est;* when the choir is incensed; at the consecration; in giving and receiving the *Pax;* at the communion of the clergy; when the celebrant gives the blessing.

5. They bow the head during Mass at the following times: at the *Glori Patri*, till the *Sicut erat*, exclusively; whilst it is sung by the choir; when the name of Jesus or Mary, or of the saint whose office is recited, or of whom a commemoration is made, is pronounced; and at the name of the Pope; during the *Gloria in excelsis*; at the words, *Adoramus te*, *Gratias agimus tibi*, *Jesu Christe*, *Suscipe deprecationem nostram;* during the *Credo*, at the words, *Jesum Christum; adoratur;* in time of the preface, at *Gratias agamus Domino Deo nostro.* A low bow is made when the priest gives the blessing at the end of Mass.

6. During the time of singing, all should sing in a uniform manner, not elevating or lowering the voice more than the rest, and if any be unable to keep tune, it is better to be silent. They should also be attentive not to be faster, or slower than the others, but all should utter at the same time, the same syllable and note, and each one should be attentive not to get out of tune.

7. When the sub-deacon goes to give the *Pax*, the first of the choir should, on his approach, bow to him, and lean his head towards his left cheek, placing at the same time, his hands under his elbows, and the sub-deacon, laying his hands on the shoulders of the others, says,

* This is a small cap, used for covering the crown of the head, where the clerical tonsure is made.

Pax tecum; to which he answers, *Et cum spiritu tuo,* and again bows to the sub-deacon, then turning to the one next, he gives the *Pax* in the same way that the sub-deacon gave it to him, and so on, each one to the one next to him.

8. The clergy in choir, should always observe silence, with modesty and recollection, shunning any thing that might have an air of levity, or irreverence.

Article III.

The Internal Dispositions required of those who attend the Choir.

1. A right intention to worship God purely for his glory, and not for interest or vanity.

2. Reflection on what is to be done, in order that no mistakes may be made, which are the cause of many defects. This preparation should be made before going to the choir, by reading the instructions for the ceremonies, and impressing them upon the mind by serious recollection, and, even in time of choir, at leisure moments, by reflecting on what ceremony comes next, and how it is to be performed. Thus nothing will be unforeseen, and all will be done well.

3. Attention to what is doing; not giving way to thoughts, even if good in themselves, foreign to the present occupation, as such thoughts do not come from God, but proceed from some evil cause, to divert us from the good we are doing. The presence of God will aid us to have proper attention, that we may apply our mind to what is done, or said, attending to the signification; exciting sentiments corresponding to those, which those words express, which St. Augustin beautifully recom-

mends in his commentary on the tenth Psalm: *Si orat psalmus, orate; et si gemit, gemite; et si timet, timete; omnia enim quæ hic conscripta sunt, speculum nostrum sunt.* What St. Augustin recommends in singing the Psalms, we should do in regard to whatever is recited or sung in Mass, or any other sacred function.

4. Devotion is required, making us delight in those sacred duties, lest we be as those who perform them reluctantly and with tepidity, to whom that sentence is applicable: *Maledictus homo, qui facit opus Dei negligenter.*

Article IV.

The order to be observed in receiving Holy Communion.

1. After all have received the *Pax*, all who go to communion meet together in the middle, two by two, with their caps and calotte off, with their hands joined, bowing at the *Confiteor*, and striking their breast, &c. The officiating clergy, who assist at Mass, communicate first; as also the priests, if any wish to communicate, with their stoles of the color of the day. Whilst the acolytes, after their communion, are descending the side-steps on each side, the two first of the clergy, who are yet to communicate, approach, making their usual genuflection, on the floor, before they ascend the steps, and after descending, they separate in coming down the steps, so as to leave space for the two who follow them to communicate; and so on, throughout. All kneel on the edge of the platform to receive communion; and, afterwards, with gravity and devotion, return to their places in the choir, and conform themselves to the rest of the clergy. If any of the laity communicate, they do

it at the railings of the choir, or on the floor, at the foot of the altar; and the celebrant descends to the lowest step to give them communion, beginning always at the Epistle side.

2. The same order is likewise observed in going to receive candles from the celebrant, ashes, or blessed palms, or in going to kiss sacred relics, and in similar ceremonies; each one holding in his hand his cap and calotte, and kissing first the candle, or blessed palm, and then the celebrant's hand.

Article. V.

The order in going from the Choir.

1. No one should leave the choir without necessity; in which case, he goes to the middle, makes a genuflection, salutes the choir, first on the Gospel side, then at the Epistle side. If the celebrant is sitting at the Epistle side, he should bow first to that side, then to the other. The same is done when any one enters the choir after the functions have commenced; he should, however, remain some time kneeling, saying some prayers, then make a genuflection, and bow to the choir, as mentioned above. No one should go out of the choir or enter it, whilst the celebrant is reciting the Confession, during the singing of the prayers, the *Gloria Patri*, *Incarnatus est*, *Veni Sancte Spiritus*, *Adjuva nos*, &c. Should any one enter the choir at these times, he must stop, and kneel, or stand, conforming himself to the rest of the choir: during the Confession, at the beginning of Mass, he must remain kneeling till it is finished.

2. After the service, the acolytes go out of the Sanctuary, and after them the members of the choir; those

who are last on the Gospel side, and the last on the Epistle side, advance in a straight line, and meet together in the middle, make a genuflection, and turning, follow the acolytes; the others do the same, and proceed to the sacristy, in the same order as they left it. When they arrive at the sacristy, they separate; one going on one side, and the other on the other, forming two lines: when the celebrant arrives, he bows to them, and they return a similar bow, and then with modesty, gravity, and in silence, take off their dress.

CHAPTER II.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE OFFICERS.

Article I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

At the Altar.

I. The altar should be decorated according to the solemnity of the festival.

2. Six candlesticks with candles, and the cross with image of the Crucified, in the middle, prominently located.

3. Relic-cases, with relics or flowers, between the candlesticks.

4. The *Antipendium* and the canopy of the Tabernacle of the color of the vestments.

5. The altar cards.

6. The book-stand, with the missal opened at the proper place.

On the Side-table.

1. The table is to be covered with a linen cloth.

2. A plate with the cruets containing wine and water, the finger-towel, and the hand-bell.

3. The chalice with the purificator, paten, Host, pall, covered with the chalice-veil, on which is placed the burse having in it the corporal.

4. The Gospel book, or missal, with marks in the right place.

5. The veil for the sub-deacon should cover the chalice, and hang down on each side of the side-table.

In the Sanctuary.

1. A carpet on the steps and platform of the altar.

2. A carpet on the platform of the celebrant's bench.

3. The celebrant's bench may be covered with a green cloth. (*Merati.*)

In the Sacristy.

1. On the sacristy altar the sacred vestments for the celebrant: viz., chasuble, stole, maniple, alb, cincture, and amice.

2. On each side of the chasuble the dalmatics for the deacon and sub-deacon, the stole for the deacon, two cinctures, two albs, and two amices. The two maniples should be placed outside the dalmatics, as they are to be put on after the celebrant has put on the chasuble.

3. In a convenient place, the surplices for the master of ceremonies and for the three clerks; also as many surplices as there are clergymen to assist.

4. Two candlesticks with candles, for the acolytes.

5. The censer and the incense-boat.

6. The fire ready for the censer.

7. A number of torches for the elevation, if they are to be used.

Article II.

Instruction for the Censer-bearer.

1. The censer-bearer goes to the sacristy a quarter of an hour before Mass, puts on his surplice, and, if no acolytes be present, assists the deacon and sub-deacon to vest.*

2. In the beginning of Mass, he prepares the fire in the censer; and, at the end of the Confession, he approaches the altar, and goes up to the platform, hands incense-boat to the master of ceremonies, and when the incense is put in, and blessed, he adjusts the cover of the censer, and hands it to the deacon; he takes the boat in his left hand, and goes down holding his right hand on his breast.†

---

* Should the clergy proceed to the altar in solemn procession, preceded by the cross, the censer-bearer will have incense blessed by the celebrant (or by the Bishop if present) before leaving the sacristy; and then, with smoking censer, will walk immediately before the cross-bearer. (*Cærem. Epis.*, lib. ii., ch. viii.)

† As the censer-bearer moves either alone or with the clergy, he carries the censer in his right hand, holding it at the top just under the chain-holder, having previously pulled the cover-chain sufficiently high that the fire may burn. Unless there is another clerk for the incense-boat, he carries it in his left hand, otherwise he keeps his left hand extended on his breast, as he moves along modestly and gravely. Should there be two censer-bearers, the one at the left carries the censer in his left hand. In making a genuflection, while holding the censer, he will so raise his hand that the censer will not touch the floor. When his hands are not employed, they should be joined. When incense is to be put in the censer, with his left hand he will

3. He stands near the deacon, whilst he is incensing the celebrant, and bows to the priest both before and after; then takes the censer in his right hand (he should make a genuflection, if he is obliged to pass before the altar, to put away the censer, and the Blessed Sacrament is present), puts it in its proper place, and returns to the choir.

4. When all the prayers are sung, he goes to prepare the censer; and, as soon as the priest has finished the Gospel (unless there be a long tract), he goes to the altar, to have incense put in and blessed; then, holding the censer in his right hand, and the boat in his left, he descends to the floor, and goes before the acolytes, in

---

present the boat to whom he should; then, with the same hand, he takes from his right the top of the censer's chains, and brings it to his breast, and with his right he takes the censer's chains near the top of the cover, and raises the censer sufficiently high that he who is to put incense in it may easily do so. After the blessing, if a blessing is to be given, he lowers the censer, and takes it in his right hand at the top. When the censer-bearer puts incense in it, he will hold the chains at the top, and also near the cover with his left hand, and with his right will put in incense. If he presents the censer to one of the ministers who is to give it to some one else, he will present it with his right hand. If to the officiating priest, or to a minister who is to incense, he will present the top with his right hand, and the middle of the chains near the cover with his left. If to the celebrant or officiating priest, and the Rubrics require it, he will kiss first the top of the censer, and then the right hand of the receiver. When he receives back the censer, he does so with his right hand. To incense in a proper manner, having lowered the cover of the censer, he takes the top of the chains in his left hand, and brings it to his breast; with the fingers of his right hand he takes the chains close to the cover, and brings it as high as his eyes; then he lowers it, and stretches his arm, while he raises it again towards the one whom he is incensing, causing the censer to swing forward, and then lowers it again towards himself. He will repeat the same as often as he is to give throws, or swings. He bows before and after incensing. This manner of incensing is the same practised in Rome and in Italy, in well-regulated churches.

the middle of the choir, before the altar, at some distance from the steps, and stands between the acolytes. When the master of ceremonies gives the sign, he makes a genuflection, then bows to the choir, together with the officiating ministers; passes the first acolyte, and goes on the left of the deacon, a little in the rear, so that he may be opposite the first acolyte.

5. At the proper time he gives the censer to the master of ceremonies, and takes it again in the same manner; he raises the lid of it a little, and swings it, in order to keep the coals alive, having to use it to incense the priest.

6. At the end of the Gospel, he approaches the deacon, and presents him the censer, making with him the usual bows before incensing the celebrant, and after he takes it, makes a genuflection to the altar, and puts it in its place. He then goes to his place, makes a genuflection behind the sub-deacon, and remains there; he bows at the word *Deum*, if the *Credo* is sung.

7. Towards the end of the *Credo*, he goes to prepare the censer, and is ready at the altar after the oblation of the chalice. The incense is put in as usual; he takes the incense-boat and places it upon the side-table,* and remains there at the Epistle side, with his hands joined before the breast. He attends the deacon whilst he is incensing the celebrant, the choir, and sub-deacon; and he stands at his left hand, a little in the rear, making the bows and genuflections at the same time with him. He receives the censer from the deacon, and when he arrives at his place behind the celebrant, incenses him twice; then he incenses the acolytes once each; he goes

* The technical name is *credentia*.

then to the entrance of the choir, and incenses the people thrice, once in the middle, then on the left, and last on the right, making the usual bows both before and after, and the genuflections to the altar, passing and repassing. He then puts the censer in its place.

8. He again prepares the censer, and a little before the elevation, approaches the altar at the Epistle side, to the right of the master of ceremonies, to have the incense put into the censer; when that is done, he kneels on the floor, and, at the elevation of the sacred Host, incenses it three times, making a low bow, both before and after. He does the same at the elevation of the chalice. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.) After this, he makes a genuflection, puts away the censer, and returns to the altar.

9. Here his duty ends, unless the acolytes remain holding the torches until communion; in which case he takes the veil from the subdeacon at the proper time, and, after folding it, lays it on the side table.

10. After receiving the *Pax* from the one next to him in the choir, or from the master of ceremonies, according to different circumstances, he takes the chalice-veil to the Gospel side, presents at the proper time the cruets for the ablutions, and returns to his place, after putting every thing on the table.

11. After the *Pax*, if the clergy communicate, he takes the veil of the chalice, and communion cloth, passes to the Gospel side, and kneels on the floor. After the "Indulgentiam," he kneels on the lateral edge of the platform, to extend and hold the cloth with the master of ceremonies. After communion, he goes down, makes a genuflection with the master of ceremonies, and proceeds to the side-table, to present the cruets, as was said above.

The censer-bearer makes a genuflection on one knee, when he goes from the choir, or returns to it; when he leaves or approaches the altar, after the consecration only, not before it; in passing from one side of the altar to the other.

When the incense is not blessed, the censer is held in the left hand; otherwise in the right, and the boat in the left. When it is carried for any particular function, viz.: when the Gospel is sung, or in processions, the censer-bearer puts his little-finger in the ring of the small cover, and the thumb through that of the large cover. On other occasions—for instance, when he goes to have incense put into it, &c.—it is usual to hold it by the chains below the small cover, with the large cover a little raised, except in the act of incensing.

Article III.

Instruction for the Acolytes.

1. The acolytes, who should be of equal size (*Cærem. Episc. lib.* i.), put on their surplices a quarter of an hour before Mass, and prepare, and take to the altar whatever is necessary; they assist the deacon and sub-deacon in vesting, after they have lighted the candles on the altar (unless some other person do this), one on one side, the other on the other; beginning from the candle nearest to the cross; and in putting them out, they begin with the furthest. If there be only one to light them, he will begin on the Epistle side, and end with those on the Gospel side; and *vice versa*, in extinguishing them.

They must take care not to let the wax fall upon the altar cloth.

2. The second acolyte lights the candles in the sacristy.

3. When the celebrant is vested, they put the maniples on the deacon and sub-deacon, presenting them first to be kissed.

4. At a signal given by the master of ceremonies, they take their candles, and meeting together, make a bow to the cross, or to the chief picture in the sacristy, then with their eyes modestly cast down, with a moderate pace, they go before the clergy to the altar. (*Rub. Miss.* part ii.)

5. The first acolyte, at the right of his companion holds the knob of the candlestick with his right hand, and the foot with his left; the second with his left holds the knob, and the foot with his right. (*Cærem. Episc. ibid.*)

6. When they arrive at the altar, they make a genuflection on the floor; they then separate, and go to the corners of the steps, and stand facing each other.

7. When the sacred ministers have arrived, they turn towards the altar, make with them a genuflection, and then go to place their candles on the table. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) Turning towards the altar, they kneel down, with their hands joined, and answer in a low voice to the priest; at the end of the Confession, they rise, and stand near the table.

Whenever the sacred ministers go to sit down, the acolytes raise the dalmatic and chasuble over the back of the seat, so that they may not sit upon them; this, however, depends upon its situation; should it be necessary to pass before the celebrant, they bow to him. If the celebrant makes a genuflection during the Epistle or Gospel, they do the same; and they make the usual signs of the cross at the *Sequentia Sancti Evangelii.*

If the deacon and sub-deacon use the folded chasuble, the second acolyte, during the singing of the prayer, takes off the subdeacon's chasuble, and puts it on again, after he has kissed the celebrant's hand. In like manner he takes off that of the deacon, while the priest is reading the Gospel; the first acolyte puts on him the large stole, and takes it off after removing the book for the *Post Communio;* and then the second acolyte puts on him the folded chasuble.

8. Whilst the celebrant is putting incense into the censer, they take their candlesticks, and the censer-bearer having descended from the altar, they follow him to the middle of the choir; he then goes between them, they make a genuflection to the altar, and salute the choir, together with the sacred ministers. In these, and in similar actions, uniformity as to manner and time is requisite, that they may appear as one person moving and bowing.

9. Whilst the sub-deacon is at the place where the Gospel is usually sung (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.), the first acolyte places himself at his right, and the second at his left, in a straight line, facing the left part of the choir. During this time, they never kneel down (*Rub. Miss.*, part i.), neither do they make the sign of the cross, but remain motionless. Then on each side of the sub-deacon they go to the place where the Gospel is to be sung.

10. At the end of the Gospel, they go to the middle of the choir, three or four steps from the lowest front step of the altar, according as the space will allow, and make there a genuflection with the deacon, and then return to the side table. Having placed there the candlesticks, they remain standing, and kneel at the *Incar-*

natus, on one knee, when it is repeated by the priest; and on both, when it is sung.

11. When the subdeacon takes the chalice, the second acolyte folds the veil; the first follows the sub-deacon with the cruets and towel (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.) places all upon the altar, and presents the cruets to the sub-deacon. When the wine and water are put into the chalice, he takes them back, and remains standing at his place.

12. Whilst the deacon is incensing the celebrant, they prepare the water to wash his hands. The first alcolyte takes the towel; the other the cruet and basin. When the deacon has done incensing, they attend to the washing of the celebrant's hands (*Rub.*, *ibid.*), bowing to him both before and after. They then put everything on the side table, and remain there standing.

13. They bow to the censer-bearer both before and after being incensed; and the first alcolyte bows to his companion before being incensed.

14. At the commencement of the Preface, they go to the sacristy, to light the torches, and return at the *Sanctus* (*Rub.*, *ib.*, tit. vii.); and both enter together in the middle of the choir before the altar; they make a genuflection, then bow to the choir, and to each other, and kneel at some distance apart, in a straight line.

15. After the elevation, if the clergy do not communicate, and it is not a privileged feast, according to the Rubrics, they meet together, make a genuflection, then bow to the choir, and take away the torches. Otherwise, they remain with the torches, kneeling until after communion. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

16. The first acolyte takes the veil off of the sub-deacon at the proper time, and folds it, and lays it on the

table. They bow when the celebrant is communicating.

17. The first acolyte takes the cruets to the altar at the proper time for the ablutions; and, in the mean time, the second takes the veil of the chalice to the other side of the altar, making a genuflection in passing and repassing. If they hold the torches till after communion, the censer-bearer supplies their place.

18. During the blessing, at the end of Mass, they kneel down on both knees; at the beginning of the Gospel, they rise and make the sign of the cross on themselves, as usual, at the *Initium Sancti Evangelii.*

If the clergy remain in choir after the Gospel, the acolytes take the candles, go together to the middle, make a genuflection and, with the sacred ministers, bow to the choir.

19. Towards the end of the Gospel, they take the candlesticks and go to the middle; they make a genuflection at the words, *Et verbum caro*, or at the end of any other Gospel, and move towards the sacristy; there they bow to the cross, and with the candlesticks in their hands wait until the sacred ministers arrive, and then make a bow together. They put out their candles afterwards, and assist the deacon and sub-deacon in taking off the maniple and the folded chasuble, if they use them. When the celebrant has taken off the vestments, they assist the deacon and sub-deacon to disrobe, and then go to put out the candles on the altar, unless some other person do it.

The acolytes remain always standing by the side-table, except when they have to do something, as on the occasions mentioned above. Whilst the celebrant is singing, or reading, they keep their hands joined before

their breast; at other times they keep them folded. In the choir the bow is generally made, first on the Gospel side, then on the Epistle side, beginning always by the greater dignity. In holding the torches, or carrying them, they should hold them always on the outside; that is, the first acolyte being always on the right hand of the other, holds the torch in his right hand, and his companion holds his torch in his left. When one hand only is occupied, the other is held open upon his breast. When they present anything to the celebrant, they kiss it before they present it; and also when they receive it from him (except in Masses for the dead). If they pass before the altar in going for the torches, they make a genuflection. Should they communicate in time of Mass, after the deacon and sub-deacon, and the priests, if any communicate, they make a genuflection on one knee, before and after communion. During their communion, they hand their torches to others.

Article IV.

Duty of the Master of Ceremonies.

1. The Master of Ceremonies should be acquainted with the duties of all the clergy, and be attentive to their performance, making signs to them, but not pulling or pushing them; and in case some mistake be not of much importance, it is better to let it pass.

2. He should go to the sacristy, a quarter of an hour beforehand, and after a short prayer, put on his surplice, and prepare the chalice, together with the pyx (in case the clergy communicate) and put in as many particles as there are persons to communicate. He prepares two Missals with the marks at their proper places, and takes

all to the side-table, which should be covered with a white cloth—*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.—and there, aided by the acolytes, he arranges everything: he should see that the cruets are there prepared, together with the towel, the bell, the censer with the incense-boat, the torches for the elevation, &c. He leaves one Missal on the table; the other he places on the book-stand at the Epistle side; he opens it at the Mass of the day, and covers the table with a veil of the same color as the vestments which are to be used.

3. He gives notice in time to the clergy that are to officiate, and with the acolytes assists them in vesting. He does not present the maniple to the deacon and sub-deacon, nor the folded chasuble, when they are used, until the celebrant is vested.

4. When it is time, he gives notice to the acolytes to move towards the sanctuary; when the clergy have passed on, he makes a sign to the officiating clergy to proceed; they bow to the cross, and he precedes them, without either cap, or calotte, on his head; which is to be observed in all other functions. (*Cong. Rit.* 17th Jul., 1734.) He gives holy water to the sub-deacon and deacon.

5. If there be any steps to ascend in going to the altar, the master of ceremonies raises the border of the celebrant's alb. When the officiating clergy enter the choir, or arrive at the altar, he receives the caps from the deacon and sub-deacon, and after the genuflection, places them in order on the bench where they are to sit. He then kneels down at the Epistle side, with his face turned to the Gospel side, and answers the celebrant in a low voice; making the usual signs of the cross, and bows.

6. At the end of the Confession, he goes up to the

altar with the ministers, to have the incense put in; and comes down again to the Epistle side. When the celebrant is incensing that side, he takes off the Missal, and afterwards replaces it, without making any genuflection.

7. If in time, after the incensing of the altar and the celebrant, he points out the beginning of the *Introit*, as he should do, whenever he attends to the book, raising or lowering it as may be necessary, and pointing out what is to be read or sung, turning the leaves, &c.

8. When the celebrant has said the *Kyrie eleison*, if the singing is to continue for any length of time, the master of ceremonies invites him to go and sit down on a bench prepared, not on chairs (*Cœrem. Episc., lib.* i.,) as is expressly ordered by the *Sac. Cong. Rit.* 17th Sept., 1822. He descends to the floor, aud with his hands modestly folded before his breast, stands at the right hand of the deacon; he should observe the same at the *Gloria* and *Credo*, whilst the clergy are sitting.

9. When the choir is singing the last *Kyrie*, he makes a moderate bow, to invite the ministers to the altar, and he goes to the Epistle side. When the ministers do not sit, during the singing of the *Kyrie*, he gives them notice to go to the middle of the altar, and to stand in a line, one after the other; when the *Gloria in excelsis Deo* is intoned, he directs them to go on each side of the celebrant to recite it with him.

10. When they have said the *Gloria in excelsis*, he gives them notice to sit down; but not whilst the choir is singing, *Adoramus te*, *Gratius agimus tibi*, *Jesu Christe*, *Suscipe deprecationem nostram*. When they are seated, by a moderate bow, he gives them notice to take off their caps, whilst the choir is singing the above-

mentioned words, *Adoramus te*, &c.; during which time he bows to the altar.

11. At the *Cum Sancto Spiritu*, he makes them a sign to go to the altar, and he goes to the Missal to find the prayers which are to be sung, pointing them out to the celebrant, and turning the leaves of the Missal.

12. At the beginning of the last prayer, he goes to the side-table, takes the Missal in both hands, so as to turn the opening of it to his right, and presents it to the sub-deacon, bowing both before and after. He then places himself at his left, standing a little in the rear, and at the conclusion of the last prayer, at the words *Jesum Christum*, he bows, and goes to the middle of the altar with the sub-deacon, makes a genuflection, salutes the choir, returns to the same place, and points out the Epistle, supporting his left whilst he is singing. He makes a genuflection at the words *In nomine Jesu*, &c., and bows at the names of Jesus and Mary, and of the saint whose feast is celebrated; giving notice to the choir, immediately before, to kneel down, or take off their caps.

13. When the Epistle is finished, he accompanies the sub-deacon to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection and bows to the choir, then goes with him to the Epistle side, to receive the celebrant's blessing. He receives the Missal from the sub-deacon, and gives it to the deacon, at the beginning of the Gospel. When the celebrant has recited the Gospel, he goes up to the platform, or to the highest step at the Epistle side, to have incense put in, and he hands the incense-box, open, to the deacon.

Should the choir sing a *Sequentia*, or long *Tract*, he invites the ministers to sit down, and he stands near the

bench, as at the *Gloria*. At the end of it he makes a sign to rise, and goes to the Epistle side to have incense put in.

During the Ferial days in Lent, the ministers kneel at the words, *Adjuva nos Deus*, on the edge of the platform, so that it is well to have the incense put in before, to give time to the deacon to say the *Munda cor meum*. And as the organ is not played on those days, he can request the choir to prolong their chant, so as to have time to perform these ceremonies without confusion.

14. Whilst the deacon is receiving the celebrant's blessing, the master of ceremonies stands at the Epistle side, with his face towards the altar. He then places himself at the right hand of the deacon, and makes a genuflection with all the other ministers, and goes to the Epistle side, always at the right hand of the deacon, a little in the rear; he presents him the censer after the *Sequentia Sancti Evangelii*, he takes it again after the Missal is incensed, gives it to the censer-bearer, and remains at the side of the deacon to turn the leaves of the Missal.

If it be necessary to make a genuflection, or bow, during the singing of the Gospel, he makes it towards the altar, which will serve as a notice to the celebrant.

15. At the end of the Gospel, he goes to the Epistle side, and there makes a genuflection with the others. He receives the Missal from the sub-deacon, with the usual bows, and places it on the side-table, then returns to the Epistle side, and remains there until the *Credo* is recited, he bows at the same time with the celebrant, and also makes the sign of the cross with him.

16. When the celebrant says, *Et incarnatus est*, the

master of ceremonies makes a genuflection on one knee only, and at the end of the *Credo*, makes a sign to sit down; he stands, in order to give notice when they are to take off their caps. When the *Incarnatus est* is sung by the choir, he kneels on both knees, together with the acolytes and censer-bearer, the sacred ministers take off their caps. In the Masses of Christmas and the feast of the Annunciation, all kneel down at those words; he, therefore, should prepare cushions for the occasion.

17. After *Et homo factus est*, he makes a sign to the deacon to come for the burse, and after giving it to him, he returns to the bench of the sacred ministers. At the words, *Et vitam venturi*, &c., or a little before, he gives notice to the celebrant and others to go to the altar, and goes to the Epistle side.

18. When the celebrant has said the *Oremus*, at the *Offertory*, he makes a sign to the sub-deacon to make a genuflection, and go to the side-table. When there, he puts upon him the veil, letting it hang down somewhat lower on the right than on the left. He accompanies him to the altar, taking the pyx with him from the side-table; he assists in uncovering the chalice, and when the sub-deacon has taken the paten, he should have the incense put in as usual.

19. He afterwards goes to the Epistle side, and when the celebrant is incensing the cross or the Epistle side, he passes to the Gospel side, making a genuflection in the middle, and removing the Missal, goes down to the floor. After the celebrant has incensed that side, he replaces, and remains there to attend to the book, pointing to the prayers, and turning the leaves.

20. At the end of the Preface, he gives notice to the

deacon to go up on the platform to the right of the celebrant, to recite the *Sanctus*. At the *Te igitur*, the deacon goes to the left of the celebrant, and the master of ceremonies to the Epistle side, both making a genuflection in the middle, as they pass. The master of ceremonies remains there until the words, *Qui pridie quam pateretur ;* when after putting incense in the censer, he kneels down with the censer-bearer, and, at the elevation, rings the bell three distinct times. He makes a low bow with the censer-bearer, both before and after each elevation.

21. After this, he rises, and remains there, or goes to the top step, near the altar, until the *Nobis quoque peccatoribus*, and then passes to the other side, making a genuflection in the middle, always behind the sub-deacon.

22. When the deacon goes from the left side of the celebrant, the master of ceremonies takes his place, makes a genuflection with the celebrant and deacon, who should be at the right hand of the celebrant. The master of ceremonies remains at the left, attending to the Missal, until the *Agnus Dei*, making the genuflections with him, and turning the leaves, &c.

23. Before the *Pater Noster* is commenced, he makes a sign to the deacon to make a genuflection and go behind the priest, on the usual step; and at the words, *Dimitte nobis*, he again gives notice to the deacon and sub-deacon to make a genuflection, and go up to the altar at the Epistle side; the sub-deacon leaves there the paten, and takes off the veil, the master of ceremonies makes him a sign to make a genuflection there, and return to his place on the floor. The deacon remains at the right of the celebrant, and he at the left, until the

Pax Domini is sung, at which time he gives the sub-deacon notice to make a genuflection at his place, and come up to the left of the celebrant, where he makes again a genuflection, and says the *Agnus Dei.* (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.) The master of ceremonies makes a genuflection at the same time, goes down to the floor, and waits to accompany the sub-deacon, when he goes to give the *Pax* to the choir, beginning at the Gospel side, giving it to the first in dignity, and then passing to the Epistle side, making a genuflection in the middle.

24. When this ceremony is over, he returns to the altar, makes a genuflection on the floor with the sub-deacon, and receives the *Pax* from him, bowing both before and after. He then gives it to the first acolyte, or to the censer-bearer, when he assists at the side-table in place of the acolytes, who are occupied in holding the torches. He remains after this, in his usual place, at the Epistle side, until the celebrant has communicated.

If the clergy communicate, the sub-deacon covers the chalice, after the celebrant has received the precious blood. The two sacred ministers make a genuflection and change places. The deacon uncovers the pyx, and they both again make a genuflection with the celebrant. After this, the deacon stands upon the highest step at the Epistle side, facing the Gospel side, and bowing lowly, he recites the *Confiteor*, and the celebrant, turning on the platform, towards the deacon, says the *Misereatur* and *Indulgentiam*, making the sign of the cross over those who are to communicate, and holding his left hand on his breast. When the deacon is about to say the *Confiteor*, the sub-deacon retires to the highest step on the Gospel side, with his face turned towards the deacon, and with his hands joined; he remains there till

after the *Indulgentiam;* both of them then change places, making a genuflection as they pass the middle of the altar, one behind the other, at the same time with the celebrant, and place themselves by the side of the celebrant, the deacon at the Gospel side, the sub-deacon at the Epistle side.

If the sacred ministers communicate, after the *Indulgentiam*, they kneel upon the edge of the platform in front of the celebrant, after communion, they make a genuflection in the same place, and place themselves by the side of the celebrant as mentioned above, taking the communion-cloth from those who hold it, as they pass, and giving it back when they have passed. The deacon takes the paten, and holds it at a just distance below the sacred particle, and accompanies the priest's hand in giving communion. The sub-deacon stands near the priest, with his hands joined, and face turned towards the people, during the communion ; at the end of which, the censer-bearer takes the communion-cloth, and places it on the side-table, and the master of ceremonies assists at the ablution on the Epistle side.

25. When the celebrant returns to the Epistle side, the master of ceremonies stands by him at the Missal, which he closes after the last prayer, if there be not a particular Gospel at the end of Mass. In case there be, after the deacon sings the *Ite, missa est*, the master of ceremonies hands the Missal to the sub-deacon for greater convenience, to take to the other side.

26. In time of the blessing, he and all the ministers kneel down, and rise after it is given. Towards the end of the last Gospel, he makes a sign to the acolytes to take the candlesticks, and go to the middle of the altar. They make a genuflection there at *Verbum caro factum*

est, or at the end of any other Gospel, and move towards the sacristy, followed by the clergy. He takes the caps of the sacred ministers, with whom, at the proper time, he makes a genuflection, and gives them their caps, presenting first to the deacon that of the celebrant.

27. They return to the sacristy in the same order as they came; he salutes the clergy at the same time with the sacred ministers, and having bowed to the cross, or picture, in the sacristy, he assists in disrobing the celebrant, and then removes the things from the side-table.

If the clergy remain in choir, the acolytes take the candlesticks at the end of the Gospel, and go to the middle. When the sacred ministers descend, all make a genuflection together, and salute the choir; the master of ceremonies presents the caps, and they proceed in the above-mentioned order to the sacristy.

The sacred ministers make a genuflection on the floor, when they first come to the altar before Mass, and at the end before they leave the sanctuary; at other times they make it on the step, as far as practicable.

Article V.

Instruction for the Sub-deacon.

1. The sub-deacon should repair to the sacristy a quarter of an hour before Mass; and, after a short prayer, wash his hands, and put on the vestments, except the maniple, or folded vestment, when it is used, which he puts on after the celebrant is vested. After assisting the celebrant to vest, he puts on his cap.

2. On a sign made by the master of ceremonies, he bows before the picture in the sacristy, holding his cap in his hand; he makes also a moderate bow to the cele-

brant, and then puts on his cap, and proceeds, with his hands joined, after the clergy, and before the deacon.

3. He receives the holy water from the master of ceremonies, with his cap in his hand, and then puts it on. When he enters the choir, he goes to the left of the celebrant, gives his cap to the master of ceremonies, and proceeds with the other ministers.

4. He makes a genuflection with the deacon before the altar, and answers with him during the Confession, making the sign of the cross, and bowing with the celebrant. He stands erect when the celebrant says the *Confiteor ;* bows moderately, when he says, *Misereatur vestri ;* and bows profoundly, when he recites the *Confiteor ;* turning a little towards the celebrant, at the words, *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater*. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.) He stands upright, when the celebrant says, *Indulgentiam ;* and again bows moderately at the *Deus tu conversus*, until the *Oremus*.

He holds his hands joined before his breast, except when he sits down, or is engaged : when he performs some sacred rite with his right hand, he keeps his left open upon his breast ; and when the priest makes a low bow, or a genuflection, he also bows, or makes a genuflection, and supports the priest's arm as he rises.

5. When the celebrant has said the *Oremus*, he goes up to the altar with him, raising a little the extremity of his alb. When the celebrant incenses the altar, he raises the chasuble with his hand, and makes a genuflection every time he passes before the cross. (*Rub.*, *ib.*, iv.) When the celebrant returns the censer to the deacon, he goes down to the Epistle side, and stands at the left of the deacon facing the celebrant, and makes with him a low bow, both before and after incensing.

6. After that, he goes to the Epistle side, and stands on the step below that on which the deacon stands at his right, so that, with the celebrant and deacon who stands at his right, an imperfect semicircle may be formed.

7. He makes the sign of the cross at the beginning of the *Introit*, and answers to the *Kyrie*, and remains there, or goes to sit down (*Rub. Miss.*, part i.), according to the directions of the master of ceremonies, making a moderate bow to the altar.

8. On notice given by the master of ceremonies, when the choir is at the last *Kyrie*, he goes with the deacon to the altar, the celebrant being between them; they bow to the part of the choir nearest to them. When they arrive before the altar, he makes a genuflection at the same time with the deacon, on the lowest step, and then they stand one behind the other. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.)

9. He bows at the word *Deo*, when the celebrant sings the *Gloria;* then he goes up to the platform, to the left of the celebrant, and says the remainder of the *Gloria* with him. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) He should take care not to say it faster than the celebrant. He ought also to bow and make the sign of the cross with him.

10. At the end of the *Gloria*, he makes a genuflection with the deacon, and (at the right of the deacon, or before him, according to the situation of the bench, or choir) goes to sit down. He takes his cap, makes a moderate bow with the deacon to the celebrant, and then sits down at his left; puts on his cap, keeps his hands open on his lap, and takes off his cap, when directed by the master of ceremonies.

If the choir is singing a verse, at which it is necessary

to bow, whilst he is going to the bench, he stops, and bows towards the altar.

11. At the sign made by the master of ceremonies, he rises, goes down from the bench, leaves his cap, makes the usual bow to the celebrant, and after two or three steps, salutes the choir, together with the deacon and celebrant; first on the Epistle side, then on the Gospel side.

12. When he arrives at the altar, he makes a genuflection with the others, raises the celebrant's alb, as he goes up to the altar, and then stops at his place behind the deacon.

13. After the *Dominus vobiscum*, he goes behind the deacon at the Epistle side. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) He bows with the celebrant during the prayers; but does not answer *Amen*, which he should observe whenever the choir responds.

When *Flectamus genua* is to be said, the deacon sings it in the act of bending the knee, and the sub-deacon sings *Levate;* and rises before the rest. All kneel down except the celebrant. (*Rub.*, *ib.*, lib. v.) If the deacon has on the folded chasuble, he will take it off, and put it on after receiving the celebrant's blessing.

14. He takes the book, when it is presented by the master of ceremonies, bowing a little in the act of receiving it. He rests the upper part of the Missal on his breast, holding it below with both hands (*Rub.*, *ib.*, lib. vi., n. 4), with the edge to his left, and turning towards the altar, he waits until the celebrant has said the words, *Jesum Christum;* when they occur in the conclusion, he bows at them, and then goes to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection on the lowest step, bows to the choir at the Gospel side, and at the

Epistle side; he returns behind the celebrant, opens the book, and sings the Epistle (*Rub.*, *ib.*), and when these words occur, *In nomine Jesu omne genu flectatur*, &c., he makes a genuflection, with one knee only, upon the step.

15. When the Epistle is ended, he shuts the book, and holding it, as was mentioned above, he returns to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection, salutes the choir, as he did before the Epistle, goes to the Epistle side, kneels upon the upper step, and kisses the celebrant's hand, which he places on the Missal. (*Rub. ibid.*)

16. After receiving his blessing, he rises, gives the book to the Master of Ceremonies, and removes the Missal to the Gospel side (*Rub. ibid.*, n. 5), making a genuflection in passing before the altar.

17. After placing the book upon the altar, he remains on the upper step with his face turned towards the Epistle side, and there answers to the priest, making the sign of the cross, and bowing with him, and turning the leaves, if necessary. He answers, *Laus tibi Christe*, at the end, and goes upon the platform, and turns the book for the convenience of the celebrant, leaving room to spread the corporal.

If the choir sings the *Adjuva nos*, the *Veni*, *Sancte Spiritus*, &c., he kneels on the edge of the platform at the celebrant's left, until it be finished. (*Rub. Miss.*, part i.)

18. When the incense is put into the censer, and blessed, he goes down to the floor, and waits for the deacon. He makes a genuflection with the other ministers, salutes the choir, and proceeds before, or if the space will allow, at the left of the deacon, to the place

where the Gospel is to be sung, and there stands between the acolytes, holding the book open (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.), and leaning it upon his forehead or upon his breast, as may be more convenient for the deacon. Being occupied in holding the book, he does not bow, nor make a genuflection, when the name of Jesus occurs, although the others do. (*Rub. Miss.*, part i.)

19. At the end of the Gospel, he takes the book open to the celebrant (*Rub. ibid.*), by the shortest way (he does not make a genuflection, even if he pass before the Blessed Sacrament), and presents it to him to kiss, pointing out, with his right hand, the beginning of the Gospel, which was sung. He shuts the book, after the priest has kissed it, withdraws a little, salutes the celebrant, and then goes down to the floor in front of the Epistle side, where, without making a genuflection, he gives the Missal to the master of ceremonies.

20. At the intoning of the *Credo*, he stands behind the deacon, and having made a genuflection with him on arriving at the middle of the altar, he bows at the word *Deum*, and goes up to the celebrant's left, observing the same that was prescribed for the *Gloria*. (*Rub. ibid.*)

21. At the *Incarnatus est*, he makes a genuflection, and at the end of the Creed goes to sit down, as he did at the *Gloria*. When the *Incarnatus est* is sung, he takes off his cap, and bows moderately till *Homo factus est* is finished.

In the three Masses of Christmas, and on the feast of the Annunciation, even if the office is not said on this festival, on account of its occurring on some privileged day, he kneels down with the other ministers, whilst the words *Et incarnatus*, &c., are sung.

22. When the deacon goes for the burse, the subdeacon rises, and stands with his cap in his hand until the deacon has passed with the burse, and bowed to the celebrant; then sits down, and puts on his cap. When the deacon returns to sit down, the subdeacon rises a little before, and sits down again simultaneously with him.

The subdeacon may stand up while the deacon is preparing the corporal, according to the custom of many. He takes off his cap whenever the master of ceremonies gives notice.

23. At the end of the *Credo*, when the sign is made, he returns with the other ministers to the altar, observing what was prescribed at the end of the *Gloria*.

24. When the celebrant says *Oremus*, at the *Offertory*, he bows, then makes a genuflection, and goes to the table, puts the veil upon his shoulders, takes the veil off the chalice, and gives it to the second acolyte; he takes hold of the chalice at the knot with his left hand, covers it with the right end of the veil, places his right hand over it, goes upon the platform to the deacon's right, and there places the chalice upon the altar. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

When there is no *Credo*, he takes the burse upon the chalice. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

25. After the deacon has taken off the pall and paten, he wipes the chalice with the purifier, and presents it to the deacon. He receives the cruets from the acolyte, presents wine to the deacon, and receives back the cruet in his left hand. When the deacon has poured the wine into the chalice, he presents the cruet of water to the celebrant, and bowing a little toward him, says, *Benedicite*, *Pater Reverende* (*Rub. Miss.*, *ibid*); but if he

is a prelate, he says, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater.* After the celebrant has blessed it, he pours it into the chalice, and gives back the cruets to the acolyte. (*Rub., ibid.*)

26. He does not cover his hands with the veil before he receives the paten from the deacon; after receiving it in his right hand, he covers it with the end of the veil, which is at his right, and then rests it against his breast, as he should do whenever he moves from one place to another, when he is incensed, while he is kneeling, and when he responds to the *Orate Fratres.* He goes in front of the altar, makes a genuflection on the lowest step, and then remains standing until the words of the Pater Noster, *Dimitte nobis debita nostra;* holding the paten on a level with his eyes, with his left hand under his right elbow. The end of the veil, at his left hangs down at his side.*

27. When the deacon kneels at the elevation, he also kneels at his place, on the lowest step, until it is over. (*Rub., ibid.*)

28. At the words *Dimitte nobis*, he makes a genuflection at his place, and goes up to the altar at the Epistle side, near the deacon, and presents him the paten. When the acolyte or censer-bearer has taken off the veil, he makes a genuflection there, and returns to the floor behind the celebrant: and without making another genuflection, stands there with his hands joined. (*Rub., ibid.*)

29. When the celebrant says *Pax Domini*, he makes a genuflection, and goes up to his left, makes there a

---

S. R. C., Nov. 12, 1831, has decreed that the sub-deacon should proceed to say the *Sanctus* with the celebrant in churches where the custom exists; otherwise, he remains in his place.

genuflection with the others, and then bowing towards the Blessed Sacrament, says, *Agnus Dei*, &c., striking his breast at the *Miserere nobis*, and at the end of the third he makes a genuflection, and returns where he was at first. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

30. When the deacon comes to give him the *Pax*, he salutes him both before and after, then makes a genuflection at his place (at the same time that the deacon makes it on the platform), and, accompanied by the master of ceremonies, he proceeds to give the *Pax* to the clergy, beginning with the first one on the more worthy side, and then on the other. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*) Laying his hands on the shoulders of the one to whom he gives it, he says, *Pax tecum*, bowing to each of them after having given it, but not before. If there be several rows of clergymen, he gives it to the first in each row, and makes his genuflection before the Blessed Sacrament when he passes in the middle of the choir.

Should he have to give the *Pax* to prelates, he puts his hands under their elbows.

31. After giving the *Pax* to the clergy, he returns to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection on the step, and gives it to the master of ceremonies; then goes up to the right of the celebrant, and there makes again a genuflection. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

32. At the *Domine non sum dignus*, he strikes his breast, and bows moderately to the Blessed Sacrament. He bows profoundly to the Blessed Sacrament whilst the celebrant is receiving both species. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

33. He uncovers the chalice at the proper time, makes a genuflection, and presents wine and water for both ablutions, observing the usual ceremonies. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

After giving the water, he lays the purifier on the celebrant's fingers.

34. He gives back the cruets to the acolyte, and changes place with the deacon, making a genuflection only in the middle of the altar behind the deacon. When he comes to the Gospel side, he wipes the chalice and adjusts it in the usual manner, putting upon it the purifier, the paten with the pall, the veil, and lastly the burse, with the corporal in it; then holding the chalice with his left hand, and placing his right upon the burse, he takes it to the table, makes a genuflection in the middle of the altar, and returns behind the deacon. (*Rub. ibid.*)

35. After the *Ite, missa est*, or *Benedicamus Domino*, whilst the celebrant is saying the *Placeat*, he goes up to the second step, and he kneels on the edge of the platform, at the words *Benedicat vos*, and bowing, receives the blessing.

36. He rises and goes to the Gospel side, and there holds the card for the celebrant, or attends to the book, if necessary. (*Rub., ib.*) He does not make a genuflection towards the altar, at the *Verbum caro*, being obliged to hold the Gospel-card with both hands for the convenience of the celebrant, and for the same reason, he does not make the sign of the cross at *Initium Sancti Evangelii*, &c.

If any other Gospel is read, after the *Ite, missa est*, or *Benedicamus Domino*, he receives the Missal from the master of ceremonies, makes a genuflection, and takes it to the Gospel side, and kneels down as was said, at the left of the deacon, upon the edge of the platform, to receive the blessing. He rises, and attends at the celebrant's left, making the sign of the cross, genuflection,

&c.; at the end, he shuts the Missal, and leaves it there.

37. At the end of the Gospel, he goes upon the platform at the celebrant's left, and, on notice given by the master of ceremonies, bows to the cross, goes down to the floor with the other ministers, makes a genuflection with them, puts on his cap, and proceeds immediately after the clergy towards the sacristy.

38. When in the sacristy, he stands at the left of the celebrant; he salutes the clergy, bows to the picture, or cross in the sacristy, and to the celebrant, then takes off his maniple, and the folded vestment when it is used, and assists the celebrant to disrobe.

If the clergy remain in the choir, he bows to them after having bowed towards the altar, then puts on his cap, and proceeds as above.

Article VI.

Instruction for the Deacon.

1. The deacon goes to the sacristy a quarter of an hour before Mass, makes a short prayer, and looks over the Gospel, and *Ite, missa est*, or *Benedicamus Domino*, which he has to sing; he then washes his hands, and puts on all the vestments, except the maniple (and the folded vestment when it is used), which he puts on after the celebrant is entirely vested. He assists him in vesting, handing him the sacred vestments, by turns with the sub-deacon.

2. When the celebrant is vested, and has put on his cap, he also puts on his, and remains standing at the celebrant's right, with his hands joined, until the master of ceremonies gives the signal, he then descends

with the other two ministers, bows with them to the cross, or image, with his cap in his hand, and again bows moderately to the celebrant, and, with his cap on and hands joined, proceeds after the sub-deacon.

3. In entering the church, he receives the holy-water from the master of ceremonies, or from the sub-deacon, with his cap in his hand, and presents it to the celebrant, bowing as usual, then makes the sign of the cross, and puts on his cap.

4. He takes off his cap when he comes to the choir, waits for the celebrant, and goes to his right; he gives his cap to the master of ceremonies, then receives the celebrant's cap with both hands, with the usual kisses, (except in Masses for the dead), and hands it to the master of ceremonies.

5. He goes to the altar at the celebrant's right, makes a genuflection, answers with the sub-deacon, and makes the sign of the cross on himself, with the priest, &c. He bows moderately towards him when he says the *Misereatur*, and makes a low bow towards the altar when he says the *Confiteor*, turning a little towards the celebrant at the words, *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater*. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.)

He rises at the *Indulgentiam*, and bows again at *Deus tu conversus*, continuing in this posture to the *Oremus*, inclusively.

He generally holds his hands joined before his breast, except when he is sitting, or doing something. When he uses his right hand, he keeps his left upon his breast. When the celebrant makes a genuflection, if he be by his side, he makes it with him, and with one hand supports his arm whilst he is rising; if he holds the taper, he does not make a genuflection.

6. After the *Oremus*, he goes up to the altar at the celebrant's right, raising the alb a little in front. He receives the incense-boat from the master of ceremonies, takes the spoon, kisses it, and presents it to the celebrant, kissing his hand, and says, *Benedicite, Pater Reverende.* If he be a Prelate, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater.* (*Rub., ib.*)

7. After the incense is put in, he receives the spoon from the celebrant, and kisses it, after kissing his hand. (*Rub. ib.*) He should observe this on similar occasions. When the incense is blessed, he takes the censer, holding with his right hand the top of the chain, with his left the other extremity, and presents it to the celebrant, kissing first the lower part of the chain, then the right hand of the celebrant, which is placed between his own hands. (*Rub. ib.*)

8. Whilst the celebrant is incensing the altar, the deacon stands a little in the rear at his right, and with his left hand holds up the back of the chasuble. He makes a genuflection every time he passes before the cross. (*Rub. ib.*)

9. At the end of the incensing, he receives the censer from the celebrant, kissing his right hand, as above; then with the top in his left, and with his right holding the bottom of the chain near the cover, he descends to the floor at the Epistle side, and incenses the celebrant thrice, making a low bow both before and after; he gives the censer to the censer-bearer, and goes up to the step, near the platform, to the celebrant's right. (*Rub. ib.*) He points out the *Introit*, makes the sign of the cross with the celebrant, and answers at the *Kyrie*, &c. He remains in the same place, or, if the master of ceremonies gives notice, he goes to sit down with the other

sacred ministers, making first a bow towards the altar, from whatever place he is standing. (*Rub. Miss.*)

10. At the last *Kyrie*, if he is sitting, he returns to the altar in the same manner as at the end of the *Gloria* and *Credo*. If he is not seated, at the sign made by the master of ceremonies, he goes behind the celebrant (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.), in the middle, on the step next to the platform, and at the word *Deo* in the *Gloria*, he bows, and goes up to the celebrant's right, and continues the *Gloria* with him (*Rub. Miss.*, *ib.*), making the bows together, and at the end the sign of the cross; he makes a genuflection with the rest, he goes before the celebrant at the sub-deacon's left to the seat.

11. On arriving at the bench, he takes the celebrant's cap, and presents it with the usual kisses, he then takes his own cap, and bows to the celebrant at the same time with the sub-deacon, sits down, and puts on his cap. He keeps his hands open on his knees, and when the master of ceremonies gives notice, he takes off his cap and rests it on his right knee.

12. Towards the end of the hymn, at the words, *Cum Sancto Spiritu*, &c., he takes off his cap and rises, places his cap on the bench, receives the celebrant's, first kissing his hand, then the cap, and lays it on the bench. Going to the altar, he salutes the choir at the same time with the other ministers, first on the Epistle side, then, after a few steps, on the Gospel side, and at the celebrant's right.

13. When he comes before the altar, he makes a genuflection on the first step, and raises the celebrant's alb; he remains behind on the upper step, and after the *Dominus vobiscum*, removes behind him to the Epistle side (*Rub.*, *ibid.*), without making a genuflection, or

bow; and remains there whilst the celebrant is singing the prayers, bowing when he bows.

If the *Flectamus genua* is to be sung after the *Oremus*, the deacon sings it in the act of bending the knee, and rises, after the sub-deacon has sung *Levate.* (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

14. As soon as the celebrant terminates the last prayer, the deacon goes to his right on the upper step, and at the end of the Epistle, which the celebrant reads in a low voice, he answers, *Deo gratias*, and remains there until the celebrant begins the Gospel. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

15. On notice from the master of ceremonies he goes down to the floor, and receives from him the Missal, and holds it nearly on a level with his eyes, the edge of the book being at his left; he salutes the clergy first on the Epistle side, then on the Gospel side, and goes to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection on the lower step, then goes up and places upon the altar the closed book (*Rub.*, *ib.*), with the edge towards the Gospel side; and he remains there without repeating the genuflection.

If the deacon has on a folded vestment, at a signal from the master of ceremonies, whilst the celebrant is reading the Gospel, he comes down, takes it off assisted by an acolyte, and puts on the large stole, which he keeps on until he removes the Missal, at the *Post Communio;* and then he puts the vestment on again. After putting on the large stole, he receives the Missal from the master of ceremonies, and proceeds as above.

16. When the master of ceremonies directs, the incense is blessed; then the deacon goes upon the upper step, kneels on the edge of the platform, and bowing profoundly, says; "Munda cor meum, ac labia mea, Omnipotens Deus, qui labia Isaiæ Prophetæ calculo

mundasti ignito : ita me tua grata miseratione dignare mundare, ut Sanctum Evangelium tuum digne valeam nuntiare. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen." After this prayer he rises, takes the book, and turning towards the celebrant (who also turns towards the deacon), kneels on the platform and says, *Jube Domne benedicere.* (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

17. He kisses the celebrant's hand placed on the book, after receiving his blessing ; then he rises, bows to the celebrant, and goes down to the floor ; he makes a genuflection at the sub-deacon's right, bows to the choir, and proceeds abreast with, or after the sub-deacon, to the place where the Gospel is to be sung : then he gives the sub-deacon the Missal open, and with his hands joined, he intones the *Dominus vobiscum.* After *Sequentia Sancti Evangelii*, placing his left hand open on the book, with his thumb he makes the sign of the cross on the beginning of the Gospel, and then on himself, putting his left hand on his breast. After this, he takes the censer, and incenses the book, first in the middle, then at the right, and lastly at the left ; he returns the censer to the master of ceremonies, and sings the Gospel with his hands joined. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) He bows, and makes his genuflection, wherever it is prescribed. (*Rub. Miss.*, part i.)

18. Having finished the Gospel, he points out the text to the sub-deacon, and incenses the celebrant thrice as usual, from the Gospel side, making a low bow, both before and after. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

19. He then gives the censer to the censer-bearer, and goes up to the second step, or to the top one, behind the celebrant, and makes a genuflection there, at the same time with the sub-deacon and censer-bearer.

When the celebrant intones the *Credo*, he bows at the word *Deum*, and goes up to the celebrant's right, and observes all the ceremonies prescribed for the *Gloria in excelsis;* then he goes to his seat. (*Rub. Miss.*, part ii.)

20. After the choir has sung *Et homo factus est*, he rises, leaves his cap upon the bench, with his hands joined, bows to the celebrant, and goes to the table, takes the burse, holding it up with both hands, and keeping the open part of it towards his eyes. He bows to the celebrant as he passes him by, then to the choir, first at the Epistle side, next at the Gospel side; after which he makes a genuflection on the lowest step, and goes up to the altar.

21. After taking out the corporal, he places the burse at the Gospel side, and spreads the corporal; then adjusts the Missal for the convenience of the celebrant. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) He makes a genuflection there, without putting his hands upon the altar, and goes to his seat, bowing to the celebrant before he sits down. Towards the end of the *Credo*, at the words *Et vitam*, or a little before, he returns to the altar with the others, as at the end of the *Gloria.*

In the three Masses on Christmas day, and on the day of the Annunciation, even if this festival be not then celebrated, all kneel when the *Incarnatus est* is sung.

22. He bows when the celebrant says *Oremus;* then goes up to his right; and when the sub-deacon brings the chalice, he uncovers it (if it be a Mass in which there is no *Credo;* he takes the burse, and spreads the corporal, takes off the pall, and places it near the corporal), then takes the paten with the Host, and presents it, kissing first the paten and then the celebrant's hand. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

23. If it is necessary to consecrate Hosts for the communion of the clergy, he uncovers the pyx, and during the oblation of the Host, he raises it up a little in his right hand, and with his left supports the celebrant's arm; he then covers it, and places it upon the corporal, behind the foot of the chalice. When the sub-deacon has purified the chalice, he takes it in his left hand, and pours in the wine, and the sub-deacon pours the water. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

24. After having wiped off the drops of wine and water from the side of the chalice, he takes it, holding it below the cup with his right hand, and the foot with his left, and presents it to the priest, with the usual kisses. He supports with his right hand the foot of the chalice, or the celebrant's arm (*Rub.*, *ib.*), and with his left on his breast, he says with him, "Offerimus tibi, Domine, calicem salutaris, tuam deprecantes clementiam, ut in conspectu divinæ majestatis tuæ, pro nostra et totius mundi salute cum odore suavitatis ascendat. Amen." At the end, he covers the chalice with the pall, and puts the paten in the sub-deacon's right hand, and covers it with the right extremity of the veil. (*Rub.*, *ibid.*)

25. The incense is put in and blessed, as was explained above. When the celebrant incenses the offerings, the deacon raises the chasuble with his left hand, and places his right hand on the foot of the chalice. After the genuflection, he removes it from the middle towards the Epistle side, but not outside of the corporal; after the incensing of the cross he puts it back in its place. (*Rub.*, *ib.*) He makes a genuflection with the celebrant, and proceeds as at the *Introit*.

26. After having incensed the celebrant, he incenses

the choir, beginning at the Gospel side, and ending at the Epistle side; he makes a genuflection in the middle of the choir, in passing from one side to the other.

27. In incensing, he makes a moderate bow to those he is going to incense; and then incenses each one once; he bows to them when he is done. After incensing the choir at the Epistle side, he incenses the sub-deacon twice; he then gives the censer to the censer-bearer, and goes up behind the celebrant, on the highest step, makes a genuflection, and turns, that he may be incensed by the censer-bearer. (*Rub.*, *ib.*)

If there be prelates in the choir, they are incensed with a double swing of the censer, as the sub-deacon, and a bow is made both before and after.

28. Whilst the Preface is sung, the deacon remains behind the celebrant; at the words *Supplici confessione dicentes*, he goes up to the platform at his right, says with him the *Sanctus*, makes on himself the sign of the cross at the *Benedictus*, passes to the left to turn the leaves of the Missal, and as he passes through the middle he makes a genuflection on the edge of the platform.

29. At the words, *Quam oblationem*, the deacon goes to the celebrant's right, making a genuflection, as he passes through the middle; if the pyx be there, he places it before the celebrant, uncovers it, kneels on the platform during the elevation of the Sacred Host, raises the celebrant's chasuble with his left hand, and rises with him, after he has adored the sacrament, covers the pyx, replaces it behind the chalice, kneels down again, and raises the celebrant's chasuble.

30. When the celebrant is about to place the chalice on the altar, the deacon rises, covers it, makes a genuflection with him, and returns to his left. He does not

make the genuflection as he passes through the middle, but only after he has arrived at the celebrant's left, where he attends him at the Missal.

31. At the words, *Per quem hæc omnia*, the deacon makes a genuflection, and goes to the right of the celebrant; at the words, *Præstas nobis*, he uncovers the chalice, and makes a genuflection with the celebrant. After the words, *Omnis honor et gloria*, he covers it, makes a genuflection with the celebrant, and remains there till he begins the *Pater*. Then, having made a genuflection, he retires behind the celebrant, on the highest step.

32. At the words, *Et dimitte nobis*, the deacon makes a genuflection with the sub-deacon, and goes to the left of the celebrant, where, having received from the sub-deacon the paten, he wipes it with the purifier, kisses and presents it to the celebrant, kissing his hand. He then uncovers the chalice, makes a genuflection, covers the chalice again as soon as the celebrant has put into it the small particle of the consecrated Host, makes again a genuflection, bowing together with the celebrant, and says the *Agnus Dei*, striking his breast, after which he kneels at the right of the celebrant.

33. After the celebrant has finished the first prayer, the deacon rises at the same time with the celebrant, kisses the altar outside of the corporal; with his hands joined before his breast, receives from him the *Pax*, making to him a bow before and after, and answers, *Et cum spiritu tuo*. Then, having made a genuflection, the deacon goes down as far as the last step, and standing on it, gives to the sub-deacon the *Pax*, makes to him a bow, goes up to the left of the celebrant, makes a genuflection, and remains there till after the last ablution.

Whilst the celebrant communicates under both species, the deacon bows profoundly.

34. After the last ablution, the deacon carries the Missal to the Epistle side, making a genuflection at the same time with the sub-deacon as they pass before the middle. And when he uses the large stole, takes it off and puts on the folded chasuble. Then he goes on the highest step behind the celebrant, follows him when he goes to the middle, and returns to the Epistle side.

35. When the celebrant has said *Dominus vobiscum*, after the last prayer, the deacon turns to the people, and sings, *Ite, missa est.*

When the *Benedicamus Domino* or *Requiescant in pace* is sung, the deacon does not turn round to the people. In Lent, when *Humiliate capita vestra Deo* is to be sung, after the third prayer of the *Post communio*, the celebrant having sung *Oremus*, the deacon turns round to the people by his right hand, sings *Humiliate*, and turns again to the altar by the same right side.

36. Whilst the celebrant says the *Placeat*, the deacon, retiring towards the Epistle side, turns to the altar. When the celebrant says *Benedicat vos*, the deacon, kneeling on the edge of the platform, receives the blessing, making on himself the sign of the cross; he then rises, makes with his thumb the usual crosses on his forehead, lips, and breast, at the beginning of the Gospel, and makes a genuflection at the words, *Et Verbum caro.*

37. After the Gospel, the deacon goes up to the right of the celebrant; at the sign made by the master of ceremonies, he bows to the cross, descends with the rest below the steps, makes a genuflection, salutes the clergy,

if they remain in the sanctuary, presents the cap to the celebrant with the usual kisses, first of the cap, and secondly of the hand, receives from the master of ceremonies his cap, puts it on, and walks to the sacristy behind the sub-deacon.

38. When arrived at the sacristy, the deacon takes off his cap, salutes the clergy, if they have also left the sanctuary, makes a bow to the crucifix and to the celebrant, takes off his maniple (also the folded chasuble when used), helps the celebrant to disrobe, salutes him, and takes off his sacred vestments.

When the sacred ministers have to pass from one side of the altar to the other, before the consecration, they make the genuflection in the middle; but after the consecration, they make it on each side near the celebrant, both before and after, without placing on the altar their hands, which they hold joined before their breast. Only at the *Dimitte nobis* they make the genuflection in the middle, before they go up to the altar. The first and last genuflection is to be made on the floor, below the lowest step; all the others on the lowest step.

Article VII.

Instruction for the Celebrant.

1. The priest who is to celebrate High Mass should foresee every thing that is to be sung, especially the *Gloria*, the prayers, the Preface, and the manner of singing them, according to the quality of the Mass, and the festival which is celebrated.

2. At the proper hour, the celebrant having spent some time in prayer, and washed his hands, puts on the

sacred vestments, attended by the ministers, who should have previously put on their own.

3. The celebrant being vested, puts on his cap, and on notice given by the master of ceremonies, takes it off, goes below the steps, makes a bow to the crucifix, or to the principal image of the sacristy, salutes the sacred ministers at his right and at his left, covers his head, at the door of the sacristy takes off his cap, receives the holy water from the deacon, makes the sign of the cross, puts on his cap, and, with his hands joined and his eyes modestly cast down, walks towards the sanctuary.

If, on their way to the altar, where High Mass is to be celebrated, the celebrant pass before the high altar, he should make a profound bow to it, and in case the Blessed Sacrament be kept there, he should make a genuflection. If he pass before an altar whilst Mass is celebrated, and in time of the elevation, as the bell rings, the celebrant, with the ministers on each side of him, should stop, and kneel on both knees till after the elevation.

4. As the celebrant enters the sanctuary, he takes off his cap, gives it to the deacon, makes a profound bow to the cross, or a genuflection, if the Blessed Sacrament be kept there, and begins the *Confession*, having the deacon at his right and the sub-deacon at his left.

If the clergy are already in the sanctuary, the celebrant should salute them as he enters it.

5. At the words, *Vobis, fratres—Et vos, fratres*, the celebrant turns towards the deacon and sub-deacon. After the *Confession*, he goes up to the platform, kisses the altar, puts incense thrice into the censer, saying, *Ab illo benedicaris in cujus honore cremaberis. Amen.*

and makes the sign of the cross on the censer with his right hand, holding the left on his breast.

6. The celebrant, having received the censer from the deacon, makes a profound bow to the cross, or a genuflection to the Blessed Sacrament (if it is on the altar), in the latter case, laying his left hand on the altar; he then incenses the cross with three double swings* (as directed in the plates, n. 2, 3); after this, he again makes a bow to the cross, or a genuflection to the Blessed Sacrament, and, remaining in the same place, incenses the relics (if there be any) with two swings, between the candlesticks at the side of the Gospel (as in n. 4, 5), makes again a bow or genuflection, and, with two other swings, incenses the relics at the Epistle side (as in n. 7). If there are more or less than two cases of relics on each side, the celebrant incenses them also with two double swings. If the relic of the saint whose festival is celebrated is placed in the middle of the altar, the celebrant, after having incensed the cross, incenses it with two double swings, bowing to it before and after. Having incensed the relics, the celebrant proceeds to incense the altar; he incenses the table of it, at the Epistle side, with three double swings, corresponding to the places where the three candlesticks stand (as in n. 8, 9, 10), walking one step at each swing. On arriving at the Epistle side, the celebrant lowers his hand, and incenses, with one swing, the lower part of that side of the altar, and with another, the upper part (as in n. 11, 12). Then, turning to the altar and raising his hand, he incenses the table of the altar with three swings as far as the middle (as in n. 13, 14, 15), advan-

* We borrow this term from Rev. J. Hughes, *High Mass, &c.*

cing in like manner, one step at each swing; when he is arrived at the middle, he makes the bow or genuflection, and incenses the other side of the altar with three swings (as in n. 16, 17, 18); then he incenses the lower and the upper part of the Gospel side with two swings (as in n. 19, 20); without moving from that corner, he raises the censer, and incenses with three swings the table of the altar towards the middle (as in n. 21, 22, 23); then lowering his hand, he incenses with three swings the front of the altar on the Gospel side (as in n. 24, 25, 26), advancing one step at each swing; having arrived at the middle, he makes a bow or genuflection, and continues to incense the front of the altar with three other swings (as in n. 27, 28, 29), advancing likewise one step at each swing; when he is arrived at the Epistle side, he stops, gives the censer to the deacon, and, standing with his face turned towards him, is incensed by him.

When there are no relics on the altar, the ceremony of incensing pointed out by n. 4, 5, 6, 7, is omitted.

7. After the incensing, the celebrant reads the *Introit*, says the *Kyrie*, and if the music is long, makes a bow to the cross, and goes to sit down. He should be sitting when he receives his cap from the deacon, as also when he gives it back to him. Whilst sitting, the celebrant holds his hands spread on his lap, and when he returns to the altar, he salutes the clergy, first at the Epistle side, then the Gospel side, before he arrives at the middle.

8. When he is arrived before the lowest step, the celebrant makes a profound bow or a genuflection, goes up to the platform, and there, in the middle, intones the *Gloria in excelsis Deo*, and continues it with the ministers in a low voice. Having finished it, at the invitation

of the master of ceremonies, the celebrant makes a bow, and by the nearest way goes to the bench, as before. Whenever he is invited by the master of ceremonies, he takes off his cap; at the end of the *Gloria* he takes it off and returns to the altar, as directed above, he kisses it in the middle, turns to the people, sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and then the prayers.

9. If the altar is fixed in such a manner that the priest is always turned to the people, the celebrant, saying, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Orate fratres*, *Ite*, *missa est*, and giving the blessing, ought not to turn.

10. After the sub-deacon has sung the Epistle, the celebrant places his hand on the Missal, to be kissed by the sub-deacon, and then gives him the blessing; afterwards he goes to the middle, says, *Munda cor meum*, goes to the Missal, reads the Gospel, but after reading it he does not kiss the book, nor does he say, *Per evangelica dicta;* then he returns to the middle of the altar to put the incense into the censer, and tobless it.

If there is in the gradual any verse at which the clergy kneel, when the choir sing it, the celebrant kneels on the edge of the platform, with the ministers at his sides, till the verse is sung.

11. When the deacon, having said *Munda cor meum*, kneels before the celebrant, and says, *Jube Domne benedicere*, the celebrant turned towards him, with his hands joined, says, "Dominus sit in corde tuo, et in labiis tuis, ut digne et competenter annunties Evangelium suum: In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen." In saying, *In nomine*, &c., he makes on him the sign of the cross, then he places his right hand on the book, to be kissed by the deacon.

12. When the deacon goes down below the steps, the

Fig. A.

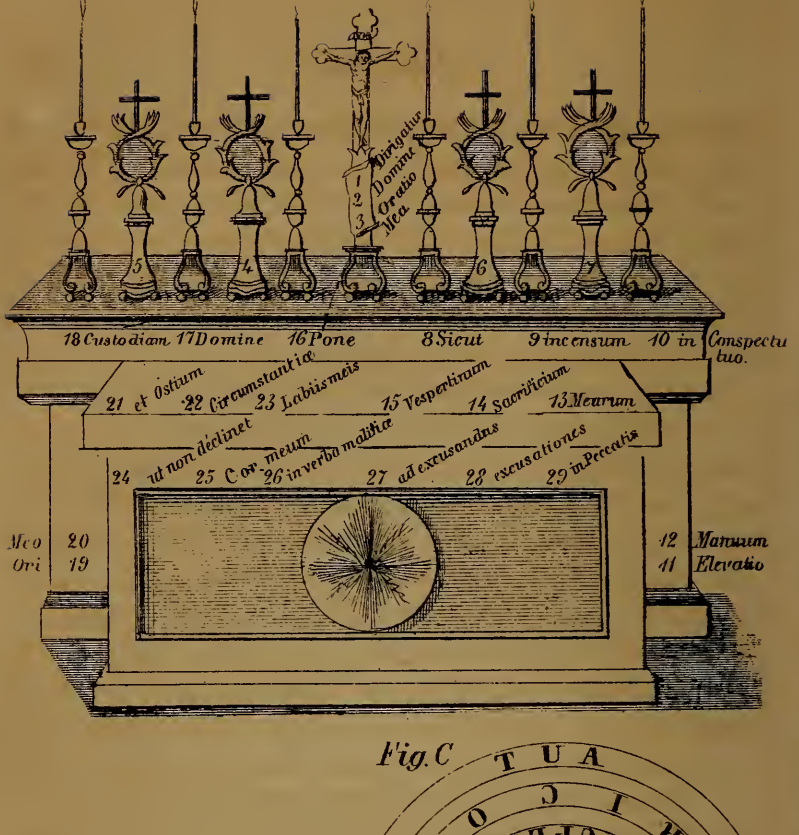


Fig. C

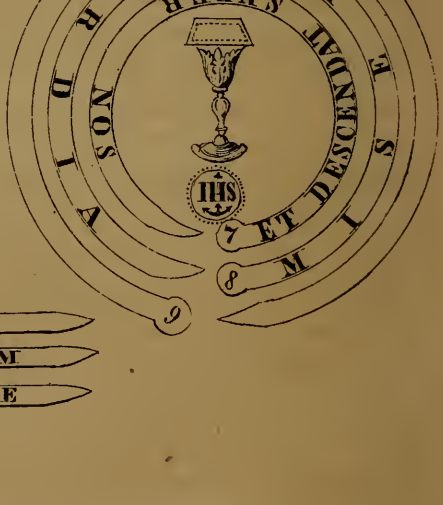
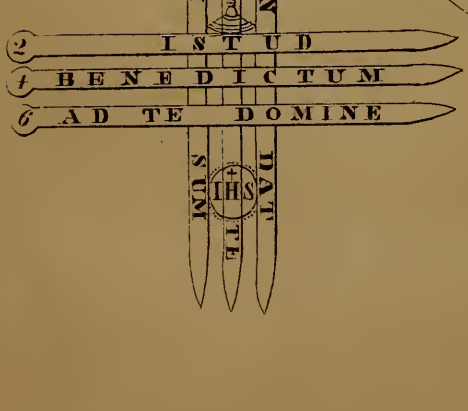


Fig. B.



celebrant retires to the Epistle side, and remains turned to the altar, with his hands joined, till the deacon begins to sing the Gospel; then he turns round towards the deacon, makes the usual signs of the cross at the words, *Sequentia*, &c., bows to the cross at the name of Jesus, bows also towards the book, at the name of Mary, and of the saint whose feast is celebrated.

13. When the sub-deacon offers him the Missal, the celebrant kisses it, saying, *Per evangelica dicta*, &c., remains in the same place till he is incensed by the deacon, goes to the middle, intones the *Credo*, if it is to be said, and continues it in a low voice with his ministers.

14. Having said the *Credo*, the celebrant goes to sit, as said above; at the *Incarnatus* he takes off his cap, and bows towards the cross, till the verse is finished; he takes it off also at the words, *Simul adoratur*, and at the end of the *Credo* returns to the altar, kisses it in the middle, and sings *Dominus vobiscum* and *Oremus*.

15. After having said the *Offertory*, the celebrant receives from the deacon the paten with the Host, offers it, saying the usual prayer, blesses the water, saying, *Deus, qui humanæ substantiæ;* receives from him the chalice, offers it, saying, *Offerimus*, &c.

16. The celebrant having said, *In spiritu humilitatis*, and *Veni sanctificator*, puts incense into the censer, saying the prayer, "Per intercessionem Beati Michaelis Archangeli, stantis a dextris altaris incensi, et omnium electorum suorum, incensum istud dignetur Dominus benedicere, et in odorem suavitatis accipere. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen." At the word *benedicere*, the celebrant makes the sign of the cross on the incense, then he receives the censer, and without making any reverence, he incenses the sacred offerings,

forming with the censer three crosses on both chalice and Host, saying at the first, *Incensum istud;* at the second, *a te benedictum;* at the third, *ascendat ad te, Domine;* and afterwards making three circles round the chalice and Host, beginning the two first from the right to the left, and the third from the left to the right (see the plate), and saying at the first, *et descendat super nos;* at the second, *misericordia;* and at the third, *tua.*

17. After the incensing of the sacred offerings, the celebrant makes a profound bow, or a genuflection, and incenses the cross and the altar, as directed above, but with this difference, that at each swing he says the prayer, distributed as follows: at n. 1 (see the plate), *Dirigatur;* 2, *Domine;* 3, *Oratio mea;* 8, *Sicut*; 9, *Incensum;* 10, *In conspectu tuo;* 11, *Elevatio;* 12, *Manuum;* 13, *Mearum;* 14, *Sacrificium;* 15, *Vespertinum;* 16, *Pone;* 17, *Domine;* 18, *Custodiam;* 19, *Ori;* 20, *Meo;* 21, *Et ostium;* 22, *Circumstantiæ;* 23, *Labiis meis;* 24, *Ut non declinet;* 25, *Cor meum;* 26, *In verba malitiæ;* 27, *Ad excusandas;* 28, *Excusationes;* 29. *In peccasis.*

18. When the celebrant gives back the censer to the deacon, he says, *Accendat in nobis Dominus ignem sui amoris et flammam æternæ charitatis. Amen.* Afterwards he is incensed, he washes his hands, and continues Mass; he sings the Preface, the *Pater*, &c. After the *Agnus Dei*, having said the first of the three prayers before the communion, he kisses the altar, gives the *Pax* to the deacon, saying, *Pax tecum*, and goes on as usual.

19. After the communion of the precious blood, if communion is to be given, the celebrant, after the dea-

con has uncovered the pyx, makes a genuflection with him; then turns towards the deacon whilst he says the *Confiteor;* after which, he says, *Misereatur* and *Indulgentiam*, &c. As usual, he turns to the altar, makes a genuflection, takes the pyx in his left hand, and one of the small Hosts in his right, and, turned to the people, says, *Ecce Agnus Dei*, &c. Then he gives the communion, first to the deacon, afterwards to the subdeacon; and likewise he gives the communion to the others, first to him who kneels at the Epistle side, then to the other who kneels at the Gospel side.

For the communion of the people, the celebrant goes to the railing of the sanctuary, and there gives the communion, beginning from the Epistle side.

20. After communion, the celebrant either takes the Hosts that are left, or if the Blessed Sacrament is kept at that altar, he puts them in the pyx with the others in the tabernacle. When requisite, he removes from the pyx into the chalice the small particles that may there be, takes the purification and ablution as usual, wipes the chalice with the purifier, leaves it to the subdeacon, and goes to the Epistle side, to read the *Communio.*

21. When the choir has sung the *Communio*, the celebrant sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Oremus*, and the prayers; then he sings again, *Dominus vobiscum*, and remains turned towards the people, whilst the deacon sings *Ite, missa est*, or he turns to the altar, if the *Benedicamus Domino* be said, and he says it in a low voice. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 7th Sept., 1816.)

22. The celebrant then says, *Placeat*, gives the blessing, and reads the last Gospel, as usual; after which he goes to the middle, makes a bow to the cross, goes

down below the lowest step, makes a profound bow or a genuflection. If the clergy remain in the sanctuary, the celebrant salutes them on each side, receives from the deacon the cap, puts it on himself, and walks to the sacristy, after the deacon.

23. At the door of the sacristy, if the clergy have returned thither, the celebrant takes off his cap, having his ministers at his side, salutes them, first at the right, then at the left; makes a bow to the cross, salutes the ministers, and, assisted by them, takes off the sacred vestments, salutes them again, and retires to make his thanksgiving.

CHAPTER III.

HIGH MASS FOR THE DEAD.*

Article I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

1. In the sacristy, black vestments.
2. The bench of the ministers should be bare.
3. Antipendium of black or purple color; a carpet also of purple color, covering the platform only.
4. The side-table is to be covered with a cloth, hanging down a little on each side; besides every thing necessary for the celebration of Mass, the candles to be

* Solemn Mass for the Dead *præsente cadavere* is permitted every day, except on great festivals of precept of first class, on the last three days in Holy Week, and on the feast of the titular saint. (*S. R. C.*, 29 *Jan.*, 1752.)

distributed to the clergy should be prepared on it. The chalice is not to be covered with the long veil, which is not used by the sub-deacon at this Mass.

Article II.

What is to be particularly observed at High Mass for the Dead.

1. During the *Confession*, the master of ceremonies kneels below the steps at the Epistle side; after the *Confession*, the deacon and sub-deacon, without going up to the middle of the altar, go to the Epistle side, to attend as usual the celebrant for the *Introit*. There is no incensing at the beginning of this Mass. The clergy and the minor ministers kneel down, while the celebrant sings the prayers.

2. The sub-deacon, after having sung the Epistle, does not carry the Missal to the celebrant, but immediately gives it to the master of ceremonies, and does not kiss the celebrant's hand or receive his blessing.

3. While the *Sequentia* is sung, the celebrant having read it, goes with the ministers to sit on the bench; then candles are distributed to the clergy, who keep them lighted in their hands whilst the Gospel is sung, and from the *Sanctus* till after the communion of the celebrant.

4. Five or six strophes before the end of the *Sequentia*, the ministers and the celebrant are invited by the master of ceremonies to go by the nearest way to the altar, where the celebrant goes to the middle, and says, *Munda cor meum*, &c.; the sub-deacon removes the book with the stand from the Epistle side to that of the Gospel, and the celebrant reads the Gospel. The deacon, at the proper time, carries, as usual, the Missal to

the altar, lays it in the middle, kneels on the edge of the platform, and says, *Munda cor meum*, but does not ask the blessing of the celebrant or kiss his hand.

5. After the celebrant has done reading the Gospel, the master of ceremonies invites the deacon and sub-deacon to go down below the steps. The acolytes, without candlesticks, go behind the deacon and sub-deacon. All make a genuflection, and go to the usual place, where the deacon sings the Gospel. Incense is not used at the Gospel.

6. After the Gospel, the sub-deacon does not carry the book to the celebrant to kiss, but gives it back at once to the master of ceremonies. Then each one returns to his place.

7. After the celebrant has said *Oremus*, at the *Offertory*, the sub-deacon, invited by the master of ceremonies, goes to the side-table, and carries from thence to the Epistle side the chalice, with its veil and burse.

8. The Deacon takes the corporal out of the burse, and spreads it on the altar, as usual; the sub-deacon takes the veil off the chalice, and gives it to the acolyte; when he presents the water, he does not offer it to the celebrant to be blessed.

9. At the Mass for the Dead, neither the celebrant's hand nor any thing given to or received from him is to be kissed.

10. While the celebrant is making the oblation of the chalice, the master of ceremonies invites the sub-deacon to go to the left of the celebrant, whither he goes, making a genuflection in the middle. The sub-deacon does not hold the paten, as at the other Masses.

11. After the oblation of the chalice, the deacon places the paten partly under the corporal, and covers the rest

of it with the purifier; at the proper time he presents the censer for the incense, and both ministers attend the celebrant at the incensing, which is done in the usual manner; the celebrant only is incensed by the deacon, after the incensing of the altar.

12. The celebrant being incensed, the sub-deacon receives from one of the acolytes the water-cruet and the basin; the deacon having given the censer to the censer-bearer, receives from the other acolyte the towel, and both go to wash the celebrant's fingers; afterwards they go to the middle, as usual, behind the celebrant. The deacon at the proper time answers, *Suscipiat*, &c.

13. At the end of the Preface, the deacon goes up to the right of the celebrant, and the subdeacon to the left, and say with him the *Sanctus;* then the subdeacon returns to his place below the steps, and the deacon goes to the left of the celebrant to attend to the book.

14. At the words, *Quam oblationem*, the deacon goes to the right of the celebrant, and the subdeacon to the Epistle side, where he kneels on the second step. Having put incense in the censer, he receives it from the censer-bearer, and incenses the Blessed Sacrament thrice, at each elevation; afterwards he gives back the censer to the censer-bearer, returns to his place in the middle, makes a genuflection, and remains there till *Pax Domini.*

The acolytes remain kneeling on each side of the altar, holding their candles till after the celebrant's communion.

15. At the words, *Dimitte nobis*, the deacon only makes a genuflection, and goes up to the right of the celebrant, to give him the paten.

16. A little before the celebrant says *Agnus Dei*, the

subdeacon makes a genuflection, and goes to the left of the celebrant; there he makes a genuflection with the others, who profoundly bowing towards the Blessed Sacrament, say the *Agnus Dei*, without striking their breast.

17. After the *Agnus Dei*, the deacon and sub-deacon exchange places, making a genuflection both before and after; the *Pax* is not given; the rest goes on as usual.

18. After the last *Dominus vobiscum*, the deacon, without turning himself to the people, sings, *Requiescant in pace* (always in the plural number). The celebrant, turned likewise to the altar, says the same in a low voice. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, Sept. 7, 1816.) The blessing is not given; the rest is as usual.

CHAPTER IV.

SOLEMN VESPERS.

Article I.

THINGS TO BE PREPARED.

In the Sanctuary.

1. Six candlesticks on the altar, and the cross in the middle.

2. In the middle of the sanctuary, at a proper distance, two or four stools for the cope-bearers.

3. Against the railings in the middle, three stools, or

a bench sufficiently long to accommodate the censer-bearer and the two acolytes.

4. Near the bench for the officiating priest, a stool for the master of ceremonies.*

5. A book-stand with the book, in front of the priest's bench, for the officiating priest, which may be covered with a veil of the color of the day.

6. The celebrant's bench, covered with a green cloth.

7. At the altar the antipendium; and if there is the Blessed Sacrament, on the tabernacle the canopy of the color of the day.

In the Sacristy.

1. A surplice and a cope of the color of the day; and if the Benediction is to be given immediately after Vespers without previously going to the sacristy, a stole of the color of the cope.

2. Two or four surplices and copes of the same color for the cope-bearers.

3. Four surplices for the master of ceremonies and the three servers; and surplices for the clergy.

4. The censer and incense-boat.

5. Two candlesticks with candles for the acolytes.

Article II.

General Rules to be observed by the Clergy in the Sanctuary for solemn Vespers and Complin.

1. Besides what has been said in the first chapter of this book concerning High Mass, clergymen should observe what follows, in solemn Vespers; they should not

* If the servers are to wear caps, they should be put on the bench beforehand.

enter the sanctuary whilst *Deus in adjutorium*, *Gloria Patri*, prayers, *Capitulum*, the first verse, and the last strophe of any hymn, the first strophe of the *Ave Maris Stella*, and *Veni, Creator Spiritus*, and the two last strophes of the hymns, *Pange Lingua*, *Vexilla Regis prodeunt*, are sung.

2. At Complin, they should not go into the sanctuary whilst the *Confession* is made; should, however, any one enter the sanctuary at the above-mentioned times, he should kneel, or bow, or stand, during the singing of the aforesaid verses or strophes, in conformity with the clergy already in the sanctuary.

3. As soon as the officiating clergyman arrives at the altar, the clergy kneel to say, each in particular, the prayer, *Aperi;* they should kneel likewise during the first strophe of the hymns, *Ave Maris Stella*, and *Veni, Creator;* during the strophe, *Tantum ergo;* when the Blessed Sacrament is exposed; while they sing the strophe, *O crux ave, spes unica*, even if it be said during the Paschal time; at the ferial prayers; at the anthem of the Blessed Virgin, said at the end of the office, and at the *Pater*, *Ave*, and *Credo*, recited after said anthem, except all Saturdays after Vespers, and all Sundays and the Paschal time, in which the clergy kneel only at theprayer, *Sacrosanctæ.*

4. The clergy should stand while the *Pater* and *Ave* are said; and from the beginning of Vespers till the first Psalm is intoned. When the antiphon is intoned, all the clergy who are on the same side with the clergyman that intones it, rise as soon as the chanters in cope come to give the tone: the clergy should stand also during the chapter, the hymn, and from the hymn till the end of Vespers, only except whilst the choir sing

and repeat the antiphon of the *Magnificat;* at which time they sit, if the incensing be over. They should likewise stand during the prayer and commemorations, and till the end of Vespers.

5. At Complin, the clergy stand from the beginning till the intonation of the first Psalm; from the intoning of the hymn till the end of Complin. When, as before directed, they are not to stand or kneel, they sit.

6. The clergy bow, and take off their caps at the *Gloria Patri*, at the names of Jesus and Mary, at the last strophe of the hymns, when it contains the doxology; at the words, *Sit nomen Domini benedictum*, of the Psalm, *Laudate pueri Dominum*, and whilst the *Confiteor* is said at Complin.

Article III.

Instruction for the Acolytes.

1. Before the beginning of Vespers, the acolytes go to the sanctuary, and put their cap on the place where they are to sit. Having lighted the candles on the altar, they afterwards light those of their own candlesticks, and go to the sanctuary, as when High Mass is to be celebrated.

2. When the officiating clergyman has arrived at the altar, the acolytes turn themselves to the altar, make with the others a genuflection, and immediately after go to place the candlesticks on the steps near the altar, each on his own side; they put out the candles of their candlesticks, and go to their place.

3. Towards the end of the last Psalm, the acolytes, leaving their caps on their seats, go to light the candles of their candlesticks, and with them go to the middle

before the lowest step, make a genuflection, and go to the officiating clergyman.

4. Having made a bow to him, the acolytes, turned towards each other, stop on each side of the book-stand which is before him, till he has intoned the hymn, and when the *Ave Maris Stella* or the *Veni Creator Spiritus* is said, they stand during the first strophe, then they go, after having saluted the celebrant; they should take care to turn in such a manner that each one remain on his own side; that is, the first acolyte at the right, and the second acolyte at the left; then they return to the altar, where, having made a genuflection, they carry the candlesticks to their place, and leave them lighted; afterwards they go to their seats.

5. After the *Gloria Patri* of the *Magnificat*, the acolytes take the candlesticks, and go, as before, to the celebrant, salute him, place themselves as before, and remain there till after all the prayers are sung; after which, when the celebrant has said *Dominus vobiscum*, having saluted him, they go to the middle; and when he has arrived at the same place, they make a genuflection together with him, salute the clergy, and walk to the sacristy.

If the clergy also immediately after Vespers return to the sacristy, when the celebrant has arrived before the altar, they do not make a genuflection with him, but remain standing during the anthem of the Blessed Virgin, and its prayer; after the celebrant has said *Divinum auxilium*, they make a genuflection, and walk to the sacristy, as directed. Ch. iii., n. 19.

Article IV.

Instruction for the Censer-Bearer.

1. The censer-bearer prepares every thing as directed for High Mass.

2. He goes to the sanctuary with the clergy, and sits in such a place of the sanctuary as may be most convenient, that he may go to the sacristy when required. The hymn being intoned, or if there be no hymn as in Easter-week, about the end of the fifth Psalm, he takes off his cap, leaves it on his seat, and having made a genuflection to the altar, goes to the sacristy to prepare the censer.

3. When the celebrant, after intoning the antiphon of the *Magnificat*, arrives at the altar, the censer-bearer also goes thither, making a genuflection below the steps; the incense having been put into the censer, and blessed as usual, the censer-bearer gives the censer to the master of ceremonies, from whom he receives the incense-boat; then, without making a genuflection in the middle, he goes immediately to the left of the celebrant; there he makes a genuflection, keeps the celebrant's cope raised on his side during the incensing, and follows him, making a genuflection at the same time with the master of ceremonies, whenever the celebrant makes it; or if the Blessed Sacrament be not on the altar, whenever he makes a bow in the middle.

4. After the incensing of the altar, the censer-bearer goes to the Epistle side, receives the censer from the master of ceremonies, puts the censer-boat on the table, gives back the censer to the master of ceremonies, remains at his left, makes with him a profound bow to

the celebrant before and after he is incensed, receives the censer, and incenses the clergy, as directed in the instruction for the deacon.

5. The censer-bearer having incensed the clergy, incenses with a double swing the master of ceremonies, and then incenses the people, as directed for High Mass; he carries the censer to the sacristy, and returns to the sanctuary, making the usual genuflections.

If there be chanters in cope, the censer-bearer does not go to the left of the celebrant for the incensing, as in such case they assist the celebrant; the clergy also are incensed by the first of them, and the censer-bearer accompanies him, as he does the deacon at Mass, holding his cope raised at his right hand, that he may more easily throw the incense. After the clergy on each side are incensed, the censer-bearer accompanies the chanters in cope to incense the other chanters dressed likewise in cope; then he receives from him the censer, and standing at the Epistle side, he incenses him with two double swings, then the master of ceremonies with a double swing, and lastly the people.

If, besides the high altar, any other altar is to be incensed, the censer-bearer will follow the directions of the master of ceremonies.

Article V.

Instruction for the Master of Ceremonies.

1. The master of ceremonies having prepared every thing, and placed the signs at the book of the celebrant, which is to be placed on a stand covered with a long veil of the same color of the vestments, and which should be sufficiently light to be easily removed, goes to

the sacristy, helps the celebrant to put on the surplice and cope; and every thing being ready, invites the acolytes to walk to the sanctuary, having first, in an audible voice, announced to the clergy the Vespers, the commemorations to be made, and other particulars.

2. As the clergy walk out of the sacristy, the master of ceremonies invites the celebrant to follow them, and walks with him to the altar; at the door of the sacristy he gives him the holy water; when they arrive at the altar, he makes a genuflection at the right of the celebrant below the steps, kneels during the *Aperi*, rises, and invites the celebrant to rise also.

3. When the celebrant bows to the altar, the master of ceremonies makes a genuflection, salutes the clergy at the Gospel side, and at the Epistle side; accompanies the celebrant to his seat, stops there at his left, receiving from him, and giving him at the proper times, his cap with the usual kisses, turning the leaves of the book when necessary, pointing out to him every thing that he has to read or sing, and raising his cope whenever he has to make the sign of the cross.

4. The master of ceremonies sits on a stool near the celebrant, whilst he is not employed in attending him particularly, and whilst the Psalms are sung; making him signs to take off or put on his cap, whenever he is to do it; he likewise makes the same signs to the clergy in the sanctuary, unless another be appointed for this purpose, which is desirable.

5. Towards the last Psalm, the master of ceremonies makes a sign to the acolytes to light their candles, and to come before the celebrant, whilst the antiphon is repeated; likewise he makes them a sign when they should go.

6. When the *Magnificat* is intoned, the master of ceremonies receives the celebrant's cap, accompanies him to the altar, having, with him, saluted the clergy, first on the Epistle side, then on the Gospel side.

7. When arrived at the altar, the master of ceremonies makes a genuflection below the steps at the right of the celebrant, raises his cassock a little in front, and the lower extremity of the cope, whilst with him he ascends to the platform, presents the incense-boat and the spoon as usual, with the customary kisses, for the benediction of the incense, saying, *Benedicite*, *Pater Reverende.*

8. The incense being blessed, the master of ceremonies gives the boat to the censer-bearer, receives from him the censer, and gives it to the celebrant; whilst the latter incenses the altar, the master of ceremonies raises his cope on his side, and with the censer-bearer makes a genuflection whenever the celebrant makes a bow, or a genuflection in the middle.

9. After the incensing, the master of ceremonies receives the censer from the celebrant, gives it to the censer-bearer, goes again by the celebrant on the platform, makes with him a bow to the cross, goes down below the steps, makes a genuflection, salutes the clergy, accompanies the celebrant to the bench, and there incenses him with three double swings, gives the censer to the censer-bearer, goes near the celebrant, and points out to him whatever he has to read or sing. The master of ceremonies is incensed after the clergy on each side of the sanctuary.

10. When the celebrant has said *Fidelium animæ*, the master of ceremonies gives him the cap, goes with him to the altar, after having saluted the clergy.

11. If Complin is not said after Vespers, the master of ceremonies having made a genuflection before the altar, presents to the celebrant the book, to intone the anthem of the Blessed Virgin, either kneeling or standing, as required by the particular time; then at the left of the celebrant, he returns to the sacristy, salutes the clergy, makes a bow to the cross, and assists the celebrant to take off the sacred vestments.

12. If there be chanters in cope, they attend the celebrant at the altar for the incensing, and the first of them incenses the celebrant and the clergy.

13. If, besides the high altar, any other be incensed, as for instance that of the Blessed Sacrament, which ought to be incensed first, the master of ceremonies should observe what follows: whilst the hymn is sung, he should invite two or four of the clergymen in the sanctuary, who are the first in dignity, to assist at the incensing.

14. The *Magnificat* having been intoned, the acolytes will be ready with their candlesticks in the middle of the sanctuary, and the censer-bearer between them, and the two or four clergymen behind the acolytes, all turned to the altar.

15. The master of ceremonies accompanies the celebrant to the altar between the two chanters in cope; whither being arrived, they make the genuflection, salute the clergy, and walk out of the sanctuary in the following order:

16. The censer-bearer walks first, then the acolytes, the chanters in cope, having the celebrant in the midst, and raising his cope on each side. They put on their caps before they move forward.

17. If there be four cope-bearers, the two chanters

walk first, and the two others after them, at the side of the celebrant. The four clergymen follow the celebrant, two by two.

18. Having arrived at the altar of the Blessed Sacrament, they make a genuflection. The acolytes and the cope-bearers, with the celebrant in their midst, place themselves in a row before the lowest step. The celebrant, with the two cope-bearers next to him, ascends to the altar to incense it, and the others remain standing below.

19. After the incensing, having made a genuflection, they return to the high altar as they came. The acolytes having arrived at the sanctuary, divide and retire, the first with the censer-bearer at his right towards the Epistle side, the second towards the Gospel side, so also the chanters in cope; and the celebrant, in the middle of the two assistant cope-bearers, having arrived, and all forming one line, they all salute the clergy on each side, walk to the altar, and make a genuflection below the steps.

20. The acolytes immediately put the candlesticks at their places on each side of the altar; the others remain as before till after the incensing of the high altar, for which the incense is not again put into the censer.

21. After the incensing, they all make the genuflection (the celebrant only makes an inclination, if the Blessed Sacrament be not at the high altar), salute the clergy, and the four clergymen return to their places, after having bowed to each other.

Article VI.

Instruction for the Cope-Bearers.

In some festivals, Vespers are sung with the assistance of two or four clergymen, according to the greater or less degree of solemnity of the festival, dressed in surplice and cope. When there are four, two of them, who should be those amongst them who are inferior in dignity, should perform the office of chanters, and go to the celebrant and clergy to pre-intone the antiphon and intone the Psalms in the middle of the sanctuary. The two others attend immediately the celebrant; when there are only two, these perform the office of assistants and chanters.

1. The cope-bearers having put on their surplices, assist the celebrant to put on his surplice and cope; then, attended by the acolytes, they put on their own copes, which should be of the proper color and uniform, as also their caps.

2. At a sign made by the master of ceremonies, they come down, bow to the cross, and with their caps on, walk after the clergy, at the side of the celebrant, raising his cope on each side; if there be four cope-bearers, the two chanters walk together before.

3. As they enter the sanctuary, they take off their caps, and when arrived at the altar, all in one line make a genuflection below the lowest step (the celebrant bowing, if the blessed sacrament be not at the altar); they kneel on the lowest step; at a sign made by the master of ceremonies they rise, make a genuflection, salute the clergy, accompanying the celebrant to the bench, they stop before him, being turned towards him,

without turning entirely their back to the altar, until the first cope-bearer-chanter has pre-intoned to him the first antiphon.

4. Then they all go to the middle to intone the Psalm, taking care always to make a genuflection to the altar, in going to and from it, and a bow to the celebrant every time they pass before him. Having intoned the first Psalm, they make a genuflection, salute each other, and go to sit down on the stools prepared for them in the middle of the sanctuary, before the altar.

5. The cope-bearers put on their caps only after having seated themselves, and sing together with the rest of the clergy.

6. After the first Psalm, both chanters go to pre-intone the antiphon to the clergyman who occupies the first place on the Gospel side; who having intoned it, they go to the middle to intone the Psalm, and thus successively and alternately on each side of the sanctuary; the two assistants remain sitting during all this time.

7. All the Psalms being sung and the last antiphon repeated, the four cope-bearers go to the celebrant, and remain before him, whilst he sings the chapter; then the first chanter pre-intones to him the hymn; which being intoned, they return to their places, after having made a bow to the celebrant and a genuflection to the altar. They remain there standing, with their heads uncovered.

When the *Ave Maris Stella*, or *Veni Creator*, is sung, the cope-bearers go to the middle, and kneel during the first strophe.

8. After the hymn, the cope-bearers go to the middle, and sing the verse; then they go to pre-intone the anti-

phon to the celebrant, return to the middle, intone the *Magnificat*, make a genuflection, and go to the celebrant.

9. As they accompany him to the altar, having placed him in their middle (in case no other altar is to be incensed), they salute the clergy, and make together a genuflection to the altar; the two assistant cope-bearers, with the celebrant in their middle, go up to the altar, and the others, if there be any, remain below the steps; the first assistant cope-bearer presents the incense-boat for the benediction of the incense, and the second raises the celebrant's cope a little on his right.

10. During the incensing, they hold the celebrant's cope raised a little on each side; after which they return to the middle, make a bow to the cross, go below the steps, make a genuflection to the altar, salute the clergy and accompany the celebrant to the bench; the first assistant cope-bearer incenses the celebrant, then the clergy, beginning at the Gospel side; and the others go to their places.

11. After having incensed the clergy, who are on the first or highest row of benches, or stools, on each side, the first assistant cope-bearer incenses the cope-bearers, each with two double swings; then he continues to incense those who are in the inferior rows; then, having returned to his place, he is incensed by the censer-bearer.

12. When the celebrant is about to say the prayer, all the cope-bearers rise, go to attend him at the conclusion, bowing at the name of Jesus, and having bowed to the celebrant, they go to the middle to sing the *Benedicamus Domino;* or if there be any commemorations, after the first prayer, they go to the middle to

sing the verses; they remain there, and sing the *Benedicamus Domino.*

13. Having sung the *Benedicamus*, the cope-bearers go again to the celebrant, make with him a bow to the clergy, go to the altar, make a genuflection to the cross, go to the sacristy in the same order as they had come from it, or assist to recite the usual anthem.

14. The cope-bearers go to the sacristy, and if the clergy also have left the sanctuary, and are already in the sacristy, they salute them, and take off their copes, after having assisted the celebrant to disrobe.

If, besides the high altar, any other is to be incensed, they follow the directions of the master of ceremonies.

Article VII.

Instruction for the Celebrant.

1. The officiating priest, whom we call the celebrant, having made an inclination to the cross, walks, with his cap on, to the altar, attended by the master of ceremonies; when arrived there, he takes off his cap, makes a profound bow to the cross, or if the Blessed Sacrament be kept at the high altar, makes a genuflection below the steps, and kneels down to say the *Aperi Domine*, which he, as well as each of the clergy, say privately, so as not to be heard.

What has been said about the profound bow or genuflection, is to be observed whenever we say that the celebrant makes a profound bow; for if the Blessed Sacrament is kept at the high altar, the celebrant should make a genuflection.

2. After the *Aperi*, the celebrant rises, makes a pro-

found bow, salutes the clergy at each side of the sanctuary, and goes to the bench, which is the same where he sits with the ministers at High Mass, and should be placed at the Epistle side near the wall, facing the Gospel side, and near the altar. There, standing, he says, *Pater et Ave;* intones *Deus in adjutorium;* bows at the *Gloria Patri*, towards the altar; sits when the first Psalm is begun, and having received the cap from the master of ceremonies, he puts it on.

3. Every time the *Gloria Patri* is sung, he takes off his cap, and bows during that verse, then he puts on his cap; likewise he takes it off, and bows at the names of Jesus, Mary, and of the saint whose feast is celebrated.

4. After the Psalms have been sung, the celebrant rises, sings the chapter, intones the hymn, during which he remains standing, and intones the antiphon of the *Magnificat.*

5. Whilst the choir sings the antiphon of the *Magnificat*, the celebrant sits down; when the *Magnificat* is begun, he rises, goes to the altar with his hands joined, and salutes the clergy as usual; when he has arrived at the altar, he makes a profound bow to the cross, goes up, kisses the altar, and makes the incensing as directed for High Mass. After it, he gives the censer to the master of ceremonies (if there be no cope-bearers), goes to the middle, bows to the cross, goes below the steps, makes a profound bow, and goes to his place, where he is incensed with three double swings.

6. After the *Magnificat* is sung, the celebrant sits down, with his cap on, whilst they sing or repeat the antiphon of the *Magnificat;* then he rises, sings the prayers, and the *Dominus vobiscum;* the *Benedicamus* is to be sung either by the cope-bearers or the choir;

and having said *Fidelium animæ*, &c., he goes to the altar in the usual manner.

7. The celebrant when arrived at the altar, if Complin is not to be sung, after having said the words, *Pater noster*, in an audible voice, and continued and finished secretly, he says, *Dominus det nobis suam pacem;* then the anthem of the Blessed Virgin is said or sung, either standing or kneeling, according to the different prescriptions of the Rubrics for the different times; the celebrant standing, says or sings, in the ferial tone, the prayer, and after it, *Divinum auxilium.*

8. If the clergy leave the sanctuary, the celebrant waits till the last couple have made the genuflection, then at the sign made by the master of ceremonies, having made a profound bow to the altar, he walks with his cap on to the sacristy, and on his entering it, he takes it off, salutes the clergy, and disrobes, as usual.

9. If Complin is to be sung after Vespers, then the celebrant leaves the sanctuary after having said *Fidelium animæ*, &c., and returns to the sacristy preceded by the acolytes, and attended by the master of ceremonies and cope-bearers, if there be any.

At the hymn, *Ave Maris Stella*, or *Veni Creator Spiritus*, the celebrant, after having intoned them, kneels at his place before his seat, during the first strophe. He kneels also there on similar occasions. For the incensing of another altar besides the principal one, he follows the directions of the master of ceremonies.

The celebrant should never put on his cope in the sanctuary during Vespers; but he must do it in the sacristy, before he goes to the sanctuary for Vespers. Neither should he incense the bishop, or any other

superior prelate; but after having incensed the altar, he must be incensed at his place, with three double throws, but if the bishop be present, only with two throws, after which the bishop is incensed with two throws.

CHAPTER V.

OF SOLEMN VESPERS, AND OF THE PROCESSION ON CORPUS CHRISTI, AND DURING THE OCTAVE OF THIS FEAST.

Article I.

Of Solemn Vespers, the Blessed Sacrament being exposed.

1. The master of ceremonies should see that every thing necessary for this solemnity be prepared; besides what is required for solemn Vespers, and a stole for the clergyman who is to expose the Blessed Sacrament.

2. If the Blessed Sacrament be not kept at the high altar, but at another, the master of ceremonies should have the umbrella,* long veil, and candles ready to carry it to the high altar.

3. On the altar he should prepare a corporal, the key of the tabernacle, and monstrance.

4. On the side-table, the long veil, and the Missal with a mark in it, at the place where the prayer of the Blessed Sacrament may be found.

---

* A small ornate canopy somewhat in the shape of an umbrella, which is carried over the Blessed Sacrament.

5. The cope-bearers and the celebrant, having put on their copes—the celebrant, besides the cope, should have on a stole—the clergy walk to the sanctuary preceded by the acolyte, and the censer-bearer with his censer and boat before them.

6. Arrived before the altar, they make a genuflection; the acolytes carry their candlesticks to the usual place; the celebrant with the cope-bearers kneel on the lowest step; the priest who is to expose the Blessed Sacrament, puts on the stole, goes up to the altar, extends the corporal in the middle of it, opens the tabernacle, makes a genuflection turning towards the Gospel side, takes the Blessed Sacrament, puts it in the monstrance and places it in the middle, makes a genuflection, and places it on the throne; then he goes below the steps at the Gospel side, takes off the stole, and remains there kneeling.

7. The celebrant, with his two assistants, having made a profound bow, rises; he then puts incense into the censer, the first assistant holding the incense-boat and presenting the spoon, without kissing it, and the second holding the cope at his right, kneels down again; receives the censer from the first assistant, makes a profound bow, incenses thrice the Blessed Sacrament, the two assistants raising in the mean time his cope on each side; makes again a profound bow, gives back the censer to the first assistant, who gives it to the master of ceremonies; and having said the *Aperi Domine*, they rise, make a genuflection below the steps on both knees, and a profound bow, and go as usual to the bench.

8. But if the Blessed Sacrament be kept at another altar, a little before Vespers, a priest in surplice and stole, with his cap on, carrying the burse with a corporal

in it, and the key of the tabernacle before his breast, preceded by some acolytes with candles, and attended by the master of ceremonies, carrying the long veil and the umbrella, goes from the sacristy to the altar where the blessed sacrament is kept.

9. When they have arrived at the altar, they all make a genuflection; the priest gives the cap to the master of ceremonies, goes up to the altar, extends the corporal on it, opens the tabernacle, and having made a genuflection, takes out the blessed sacrament, kneels, receives the veil, which the master of ceremonies puts on his shoulders, rises, covers his right hand with the veil, takes the Blessed Sacrament, covers it with the other extremity of the veil, and carries it with both his hands before his breast, reciting some Psalms, to the high altar, preceded by the acolytes with lighted candles, who alternately with the priests say the Psalms; and followed by the master of ceremonies, who carries the umbrella opened over him.

10. Having arrived at the altar, the acolytes kneel below the steps at a short distance from them; the priest goes up, places the Blessed Sacrament on the corporal, kneels, and in the mean while takes off the veil, which the master of ceremonies carries to the side-table, leaving the umbrella in some convenient place.

11. The priest rising, places the Blessed Sacrament in the monstrance, makes a genuflection, places it on its throne, goes below the steps, makes a genuflection on both knees on the lowest step, rises, puts incense into the censer, but does not bless it; kneels again, makes a profound bow, incenses the Blessed Sacrament with three double throws; after a short prayer, rises, and all make a genuflection on both knees, and go to the sacristy.

12. After the exposition of the Blessed Sacrament, at

a sign made by the master of ceremonies, the clergy go into the sanctuary, and make a genuflection on both knees in the middle; they go to their places without bowing to each other; there they stand, and wait till the celebrant, with the cope-bearers, have arrived before the altar; then they kneel on the lowest step. The latter, as soon as they arrive within sight of the Blessed Sacrament, take off their cap, and carry it in their hands; they make a genuflection on both knees below the lowest step.

13. After having made a profound bow, while kneeling, the celebrant and his assistants rise with the master of ceremonies, and the acolytes; the acolytes carry their candlesticks, each to his side of the altar, and place them on the highest step near it; the celebrant with his assistants kneels on the lowest step; and at the same time all the clergy in the sanctuary kneel at their places; say the *Aperi;* at the sign made by the master of ceremonies, all rise, and the celebrant with the cope-bearers goes to the bench. It is to be remarked, that when the blessed sacrament is exposed, no bow is made to any one in the sanctuary.

14. Vespers are sung as usual as far as the *Magnificat*, except that no one should put on his cap, and the singers and cope-bearers do not bow to each other.

15. At the *Magnificat*, the celebrant with the cope-bearers goes to the altar, where, having made a genuflection on both knees, he goes up with his assistants, kisses the altar, puts in the incense, kneels on the edge of the platform, incenses the Blessed Sacrament, rises, makes a genuflection, and incenses the altar as usual.

16. After the incensing of the altar, the celebrant and his assistants go to the middle, make a genuflection,

bending one knee, go below the steps, the celebrant with the second assistant by the Gospel side, and the first assistant by the Epistle side; make a genuflection, bending both knees on the floor below the steps, and return to the bench. No other altar is incensed; but the celebrant, clergy, and people are incensed as usual; the censer-bearer incenses the people, not from the middle, but from one side, taking care not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament.

17. After the prayers, the acolytes carry the candlesticks to their place, and after the *Benedicamus Domino*, the celebrant does not say *Fidelium animæ*, but goes with the cope-bearers immediately to the altar, makes a genuflection on both knees below the steps, and a profound bow, rises, and kneels with them on the lowest step.

18. In the mean while the acolytes come to the sanctuary with lighted candles, and kneel on each side; the singers intone the *Tantum ergo;* the celebrant incenses the Blessed Sacrament as usual, and after the verse, *Panem de cœlo*, &c., says the prayer, *Deus qui nobis*, &c., with the short conclusion, *Qui vivis et regnas in sæcula*, &c.; then a priest in surplice puts on the stole, goes up to the altar, and with the usual genuflections places the Blessed Sacrament on the corporal, in the middle of the altar, and retires, taking off his stole.

19. The celebrant puts on the long veil, makes a profound bow, goes with the assistants up to the altar, makes a genuflection, rises, takes with both his hands, covered with the veil, the Blessed Sacrament, and turning by his left to the people, gives the benediction as usual.

If the altar were so situated that the celebrant always

faces the people, he should not turn as directed above.

20. After the benediction, the celebrant makes a genuflection, takes off the long veil, goes down, kneels on the lowest step, and makes a profound bow. Then a priest in surplice puts on the stole, makes a genuflection, puts the Blessed Sacrament in the tabernacle, makes again a genuflection, and shuts it.

If there be no tabernacle at the high altar, the priest above mentioned, having taken the sacred Host from the monstrance, and put it into its box, or into a pyx, covers it with a veil, and after the clergy have left the sanctuary, he carries it to the altar where the Blessed Sacrament is kept, in the manner described above.

21. At a sign made by the master of ceremonies, the acolytes with the candles go back, or, if necessary, leave them in a convenient place, take their candlesticks, go to the middle, make a genuflection, and walk to the sacristy, as usual.

Article II.

Of the Procession on Corpus Christi and its Octave.

1. The master of ceremonies should take care to have prepared in the sacristy, the cope, stole, cincture, alb, and amice for the celebrant; dalmatic, &c., for the deacon; tunic, &c., for the sub-deacon, but without maniples; the candlesticks for the acolytes, the processional cross, and, according to custom, the sacred vestments for the priests and other clergymen who attend—such as copes, chasubles, dalmatics, tunics, &c., but without stoles and maniples.

2. The canopy should be prepared in a convenient

place, and the umbrella, two censers with their boat, and at least four lanterns, beautifully made, and placed on sticks, with candles within.

3. The Blessed Sacrament being exposed, when every thing is ready, at the sign made by the master of ceremonies, the acolytes, preceded by the censer-bearer, walk from the sacristy to the sanctuary, followed by the clergy, two by two, according to their order and dignity, and the celebrant walking between the deacon and subdeacon, who raise his cope on each side.

4. When they arrive within sight of the Blessed Sacrament, they take off their caps, and, when they have arrived before the altar, they make a genuflection on both knees; the clergy go to their places, and the celebrant and ministers kneel on the lowest step.

5. At a sign made by the master of ceremonies, the ministers rise, the celebrant puts in the incense as usual, and incenses the Blessed Sacrament. The deacon takes from the throne the Blessed Sacrament, puts it on the corporal in the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection, and goes down.

6. The celebrant, having put on his shoulders the long veil, goes up with the ministers, and kneels on the edge of the platform; there he receives the sacrament from the deacon, rises, turns to the people, having the ministers at his side, who raise the extremities of his cope; he intones the *Pange Lingua*, and the procession moves, and makes the usual tour.

7. If there is a repository with an altar, where the procession is to stop, when the ministers arrive before it, the deacon kneeling receives the Blessed Sacrament from the celebrant, rises, puts it on the altar, or on the throne, if there is any, makes a genuflection, returns to the right

of the celebrant, who takes off his veil; the choir sings the *Tantum ergo*, and the Blessed Sacrament is incensed as usual.

8. After the *Panem de cœlo*, &c., the celebrant sings the prayer with the short conclusion, puts on the veil, gives the benediction, and the procession is continued.

9. The procession having returned to the church, and the sacred ministers having arrived at the altar, the deacon receives the Sacrament, &c. The *Tantum ergo*, &c., the verses, and the prayers are sung, and the bene diction given as above.

CHAPTER VI.

VESPERS FOR THE DEAD ON THE FIRST DAY OF NOVEMBER.

Article I.

Things to be prepared.

1. In the church, a cenotaph, or representation of a tomb, covered with a black cloth, with candlesticks and candles around it.

2. At the altar, the black altar-veil under the white one, if possible, otherwise it should be kept ready in the sacristy; also, if the tabernacle with the Blessed Sacrament is on the altar, the violet canopy under the white one.

3. On the side-table, a black cope for the celebrant.

4. A book-stand, or desk, in a convenient place.

Article II.

Ceremonies peculiar to these Vespers.

1. Whilst the *Magnificat* of the Vespers of *All Saints* is sung, the candles around the tomb are lighted, and whilst they sing the *Benedicamus Domino*, the acolytes go from the celebrant's bench, place their candlesticks as usual at each side of the altar, put out their candles, go behind the cope-bearers who sing the *Benedicamus*, make together a genuflection to the altar, and bow to the clergy, and preceded by the acolytes with their hands joined, go to the sacristy, and take off their copes.

2. After the *Benedicamus Domino*, the celebrant does not say *Fidelium animæ;* he takes off his white cope, and puts on the black; the acolytes take the carpet from the steps of the altar, and remove the white altar-veil and the white canopy.

3. The celebrant having put on the black cope, all rise, and the choir begin *Placebo Domino*, and sing it entirely, the Vespers being of double rite; and when they begin the Psalm, all the clergy sit, till the beginning of the *Magnificat.*

4. At the beginning of the *Magnificat*, they all rise, and the acolytes light their candles. After the *Magnificat*, they all sit down whilst the antiphon is repeated; the acolytes take their candlesticks, make a genuflection in the middle, and go before the celebrant.

5. The antiphon being repeated, all the clergy kneel, except the acolytes, the celebrant intones *Pater noster*, which is continued in a low voice; then the celebrant says, *Et ne nos inducas*, with the other verses, and the choir answers them. At the *Dominus vobiscum*, the

celebrant rises and says the prayer, *Fidelium Deus*, and after it, *Fidelium animæ*, &c., and *Requiem æternam*, &c.

6. The acolytes make the usual bow to the celebrant, go to the middle, make a genuflection, put the candlesticks in the proper place, return to the middle, and, when the singers have sung *Requiescant in pace*, they make a genuflection, and with their hands joined, go to the sacristy, followed by the clergy and the celebrant.

PART IV.

Ceremonies for the Principal Festivals

THROUGHOUT THE YEAR.

CHAPTER I.

FEAST OF THE PURIFICATION.

Article I.

Necessary preparations.

1. In the sacristy, a cope, stole, cincture, alb, and amice for the officiating clergyman: a folded chasuble, stole, cincture, alb, and amice for the deacon: likewise a folded chasuble, cincture, alb, and amice for the sub-deacons. The sacred vestments should be violet.

2. On the altar, six candlesticks and the cross as usual, and a violet altar-veil over a white one.

3. A small table covered with a white cloth should be placed near the altar, at the Epistle side; and on the table the candles to be blessed, covered also with a white linen cloth.

4. On the small table, a vessel with holy water, a sprinkle, and a basin, ewer, and towel; also the chalice

with every thing else necessary for Mass; the whole covered during the blessing of the candles with a violet veil.

5. In any convenient place, the processional cross, the censer with the incense-boat, and a chafing-dish with fire and tongs.

6. On the seat of the officiating clergyman, a white chasuble, stole, and maniple for him; on those of the ministers, a white dalmatic, stole, and maniple for the deacon; and also a white tunic and maniple for the sub-deacon.

7. If the Mass be not of the Blessed Virgin, but of the Sunday, the sacred vestments ought to be such as are required for the Sunday.

Article II.

From the vesting of the Ministers to the distribution of the Candles.

1. At a stated hour, the ministers put on the amice, alb, and cincture; then the officiating clergyman, attended by them, puts on the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole, and cope; lastly, the ministers put on the folded chasubles without maniples. The signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the ministers, with the officiating clergyman between them, bow to the cross, put on their caps, and go to the sanctuary; the deacon at the right of the officiating clergyman, and the sub-deacon at the left. Both sacred ministers raise the cope of the officiating clergyman.

2. Having arrived at the sanctuary, the celebrant gives his cap to the deacon, and the deacon and sub-deacon give theirs to the master of ceremonies, and,

having knelt on the floor of the sanctuary, they go up to the altar; the celebrant kisses it, and the ministers at the same time make a genuflection, and all go to the Epistle side, where the deacon stands on the first step, at the right of the celebrant, and the sub-deacon at the left, on the platform. Then the master of ceremonies uncovers the candles.

If the Blessed Sacrament be not kept on the great altar, the celebrant bows profoundly to the cross, and the ministers and the other clergymen make a genuflection.

3. The celebrant thus, in the middle of the ministers, with his hands joined, sings in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Oremus*, and the prayer *Domine Sancte*, with the other four that follow. When he blesses the candles, he lays his left hand on the altar; the deacon in the mean time raising the hem of his cope; as also when the celebrant uses the censer and the sprinkle.

4. At the beginning of the prayers, the censer-bearer puts fire into the censer, and at the end he goes to the Epistle side, having at his right hand the first acolyte, carrying the vessel with holy water and the sprinkle.

5. The fifth prayer being ended, the censer-bearer makes a genuflection, goes up to the highest step of the altar, to have incense put into the censer and blessed as usual by the celebrant, and goes down with the censer and the incense-boat; then the first acolyte makes likewise a genuflection, goes up to the highest step, gives the sprinkle to the deacon, who taking it in the middle, with the usual kisses, gives it to the celebrant, who sprinkles the candles thrice, first in the middle, then at the right, and lastly at the left of the candles, saying the anthem, *Asperges me*, &c., without the Psalm. The

deacon, having received the sprinkle from the celebrant, gives it back to the first acolyte; then takes the censer from the censer-bearer, gives it with the usual kisses to the celebrant, who incenses the candles thrice, in the same manner as he sprinkled them, but without saying any thing.

6. Afterwards the censer-bearer takes back the censer, and with the first acolyte makes a genuflection to the altar, and they carry the censer and the vessel with holy water to their proper places.

Article III.

From the distribution of the Candles to the Procession.

1. After the blessing of the candles, the celebrant and ministers go to the middle of the altar, and having bowed to the cross, turn to the people; the first acolyte at the Epistle side hands the candles to the deacon, who stands at the left of the celebrant.

2. Before the celebrant turns towards the people, the second master of ceremonies calls the clergyman first in dignity amongst those who are present in the sanctuary, who, without stole, goes to the highest step of the altar; where, standing, he receives from the deacon a candle, kisses it, and gives it to the celebrant, without kissing his hand; the celebrant also kisses the candle, but not the hand of the clergyman from whom he receives it; and gives the candle to the sub-deacon, who having received it with the usual kisses, lays it on the altar. The celebrant having received another candle from the deacon, gives it to the clergyman highest in dignity, who receives it kneeling with the usual kisses, and having made a genuflection to the cross, and bowed to the

celebrant, retires, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies. The latter should direct the clergy to go in proper order to receive the candles.

If there be not a priest to offer the candle to the celebrant, the deacon, having received it from the acolyte, places it on the middle of the altar; then the celebrant, having bowed to the cross, kneels on the platform towards the cross, and thus takes the candle from the altar, kisses it, and gives it to the sub-deacon; then, rising, he continues the distribution as is hereafter directed.

3. At the beginning of the distribution of the candles, the choir sings the anthem, *Lumen ad revelationem*, and the canticle, *Nunc dimittis.*

4. If the distribution be not finished at the end of the canticle, *Nunc dimittis*, the canticle ought to be repeated, and the *Gloria Patri* sung at the end of the distribution.

5. The clergyman highest in dignity having retired, the deacon and sub-deacon go on the highest step, kneel on the platform, receive with the usual kisses their candles from the celebrant; rise, and return to their former places, that is, the deacon to the left, to hand the candles to the celebrant, and the sub-deacon to the right, to hold up the border of his cope. The ministers give their candles to the acolytes, and then the celebrant distributes the candles, first to the priests, then to the clergy in inferior orders, who go up to the altar, two by two, kneel on the platform, kiss first the candle, then the celebrant's hand.

6. Towards the end of the distribution, at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, the acolytes light the candles of the clergy for the procession.

7. The distribution being ended, the celebrant and the ministers turn towards the altar, bow to the cross, go back in the same order as before, to the Epistle side, where the celebrant washes his hands, and in the mean time the choir sings the anthem, *Exurge*, &c., which is repeated.

8. After the anthem, the celebrant, standing at the Epistle side, without saying *Dominus vobiscum*, sings *Oremus*, and the prayer, *Exaudi*.

After Septuagesima, provided it be not on Sunday, before the celebrant says *Oremus*, the ministers place themselves behind the celebrant, the deacon sings *Flectamus genua*, immediately after the *Oremus* has been sung; he and all in the church kneel; the sub-deacon sings *Levate*, and they all arise, and stand till the prayer is finished. Where it is customary that the candles should be distributed to the people by the celebrant, he shall do it at the railing; the men first kiss the candle, then the hand of the celebrant; but the women kiss only the candle. After the distribution, the ministers go back to the altar, make genuflections on the lowest step, and the celebrant bows to the cross. They then go to the Epistle side, where the celebrant washes his hands at the small table. In case the number of people be great, another priest, in surplice and violet stole, may distribute the candles with the celebrant.

Article IV.

The Procession.

1. Whilst the celebrant sings the last prayer, the censer-bearer puts fire into the censer; when the prayer is finished, he goes to the Epistle side, the incense is put

into the censer, and blessed by the celebrant as usual. Then the sub-deacon bows to the altar, and goes, by the shortest way, to take the cross, which he receives from the second master of ceremonies, and walks between the acolytes to the middle of the sanctuary, where he stands turned towards the altar.

2. In the mean while, the deacon receives from the master of ceremonies the celebrant's candle, gives it to him, kissing it and the celebrant's hand, and having received his own candle, at the signal given by the master of ceremonies, turned towards the people, sings with a loud voice, *Procedamus in Pace.* The clergy answer, *In nomine Christi, Amen.*

3. The procession then moves in the following order: first, the censer-bearer, who makes a genuflection; then the cross-bearer between the acolytes, none of whom make a genuflection; then follow the singers, and the rest of the clergy, who make genuflections, two by two, and carry their candles lighted; then the deacon and the celebrant, who likewise carry their candles lighted, and, when notified by the master of ceremonies, descend the steps, and bow to the altar; the deacon then gives the cap to the celebrant, kissing it first, then the celebrant's hand. He afterwards places himself at the left of the officiating clergyman, raising the border of his cope. The singers sing the anthems as in the Missal.

If, during the procession, a Low Mass is said in the church, the bell should not be rung at the elevation; but if the bell should be inadvertently rung, the procession passing before that altar should kneel till the end of the elevation. (*Decr. R. S. C.*, 1 Mart., 1681.)

4. When they are out of the door of the church, they

all put on their caps, the censer-bearer, cross-bearer, acolytes, and master of ceremonies excepted; but as soon as they re-enter the church, they uncover their heads, the celebrant and deacon only excepted.

5. Coming into the church, the singers chant the response, *Obtulerunt*, even if the anthems be not yet finished.

6. The censer-bearer makes a genuflection in the middle of the sanctuary, and carries the censer back to its place. The cross-bearer and the acolytes do not kneel; they go to the side-table, on which the acolytes place their candlesticks, and the cross-bearer the cross; the latter goes to the ministers' bench, where he waits for the celebrant and the deacon.

7. The clergy having made a genuflection in the middle of the sanctuary, go to their places, and extinguish their candles. The celebrant and deacon, as they come into the sanctuary, take off their caps, go to the middle of the sanctuary, put out the candles, give them to the master of ceremonies, make the usual bows, go to the ministers' bench, turn towards the altar, and the ministers take the cope from the celebrant, help him to put on the chasuble, put on their own vestments, accompany him to the altar, and having made the usual bows, begin Mass, which is said as usual, and is to be sung by the priest that officiated at the distribution of the candles. (*Decr. S. C. R.*, 12 Jun., 1627.) If a Bishop bless the candles, a priest may say the Mass.

When the Mass of the feast of the Purification is to be celebrated, an acolyte should remove from the side-table and the altar all the violet ornaments.

Also, when the Mass of said festival is celebrated, the celebrant and the clergy hold lighted candles in their

hands during the Gospel; the clergy, moreover, hold them from the *Sanctus* till after the communion.

CHAPTER II.

ASH-WEDNESDAY.

ARTICLE I.

Necessary Preparations.

1. IN the sacristy, the violet cope and stole, also the cincture, alb, and amice for the celebrant; the folded chasuble and stole of violet color, with the cincture, alb, and amice for the deacon; the same things (the stole excepted) are to be prepared in the usual place.

2. On the altar, six candlesticks, with the cross and the violet altar-veil. At the Epistle side, a silver vessel containing ashes, and covered either with a violet veil or with its own silver cover.

3. On the side-table, besides the things that are necessary for High Mass, the holy-water vase with the sprinkle; a small plate with some bread; a ewer and basin with a towel.

On the ministers' bench, the chasuble and maniple for the celebrant; two other maniples for the ministers, who put them on, after having assisted the celebrant to put on his vestments.

5. In any convenient place, the censer with the incense-boat, and a chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.

Article II.

Of the Blessing and Distribution of the Ashes.

1. The deacon and sub-deacon, having put on, as usual, all their vestments (the maniples and folded chasubles excepted), help to vest the celebrant with the amice, alb, cincture, stole, and cope; then they put on their folded chasubles. The signal being given by the master of ceremonies, they all bow to the cross, put on their caps, go out of the sacristy, having the celebrant in the middle, and raising his cope on each side.

2. Having arrived at the altar, they give their caps to the master of ceremonies, kneel, go up to the platform, the celebrant kisses the altar in the middle, and the ministers make a genuflection; then they go to the Epistle side, the celebrant having the sub-deacon at his left, and the deacon at his right; the master of ceremonies uncovers the ashes.

3. There the celebrant, with his hands joined, reads the anthem, *Exaudi*, while it is sung by the choir.

4. After the anthem has been repeated by the singers, the celebrant in the same place, without turning to the people, sings, in a ferial tone, with his hands joined, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Oremus*, bowing as usual to the cross, and then the four following prayers; when he blesses the ashes, he places his left hand on the altar, and the deacon raises his cope, which is also to be observed whenever the celebrant uses the sprinkle or the censer.

5. At the beginning of these prayers the censer-bearer prepares the censer, and at the end of them he goes to the Epistle side, having on his right the first acolyte, who carries the holy-water vase and the sprinkle; they

both kneel, and the censer-bearer goes up to the highest step, that the incense may be put into the censer, and blessed; he then descends, and gives his place to the acolyte, who presents to the deacon the sprinkle, which is presented by him to the celebrant, whose hand, as well as the sprinkle, is kissed by the deacon. The celebrant sprinkles the ashes thrice, first in the middle, then on the right, and lastly on the left, saying with a low voice, *Asperges me*, &c., but not the Psalm, *Miserere*. The deacon returns the brush, and having received the censer from the censer-bearer, gives it to the celebrant, who incenses the ashes thrice.

6. The censer-bearer, having received the censer, makes a genuflection to the altar with the acolyte, and they carry the censer and the holy-water vase to their proper places.

7. The celebrant and the ministers proceed to the middle of the altar without their caps; the deacon, on the left, holds the vessels with the blessed ashes, and the sub-deacon, turned towards the people, stands at the celebrant's right.

8. The signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the clergyman who is first in dignity amongst those that are present, goes, without stole, to the highest step, when, forming as usual the sign of the cross, and saying, *Memento homo*, &c., he places the ashes on the forehead of the celebrant, who stands with his hands joined.

9. The celebrant then forming the sign of the cross, and saying, *Memento homo*, places the ashes on the head of the same clergyman, who kneels to receive them, and after having made the usual bows and genuflection, returns to his place, accompanied by the master

of ceremonies, who directs the clergy in what order they are to proceed to the altar.

If there be no priest present dressed in surplice, the celebrant kneeling on the platform of the altar makes the sign of the cross on his head, with the ashes, without saying any thing; which must be observed even if the ministers be priests.

10. At the beginning of the distribution of the ashes, the singers chant the anthem, *Immutemur habitu*, &c., which they repeat, if necessary, during the distribution.

11. The priest who is first in dignity having retired, the deacon gives the vessel containing the ashes to the master of ceremonies, or lays it on the altar. He then kneels on the highest step at the right of the sub-deacon, where they both receive the ashes; then the deacon goes to the right side of the celebrant, where he holds the vessel with the ashes, and the sub-deacon proceeds to the left. The celebrant puts the ashes on the foreheads of the clergymen, who go to the altar, two by two, according to their respective dignity and order.

12. After the distribution of the ashes, the deacon returns the vessel in which they are contained to the master of ceremonies, who places it on the table; the celebrant, attended by the ministers, goes to the Epistle side, where he washes his hands, rubbing them also with bread prepared for that purpose, one of the acolytes pouring the water, and a minister holding the towel.

Where it is customary, the celebrant may distribute the ashes to the people at the railing.

13. Then, the ministers standing at the side of the celebrant, he sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, *Concede nobis*, in a ferial tone. The prayer being ended, and the singers having answered, Amen, they

bow to the cross, and go by the shortest way to their seats, where the celebrant, assisted by the ministers, takes off the cope, and puts on the maniple and the chasuble. The ministers also put on their maniples. They then go to the altar to sing Mass, which must be sung by the same priest who has blessed the ashes. (*Decr. S. C. R.*, 12 Jun., 1627.)

Article III.

Of the Mass.

1. The ministers having left their seats, bow, as usual, to the clergy, and on arriving at the steps of the altar, kneel before the cross. Mass is celebrated as usual, with the following exceptions: at the *Confession*, and at the prayers, the clergy, as well as the acolytes, who serve at the altar, remain kneeling; the same is to be observed from the *Sanctus* to the *Agnus Dei*.

2. Whilst the celebrant sings the prayer before the last previously to his reading the Epistle, the second acolyte takes off the sub-deacon his chasuble, and lays it on the bench, and assists him in putting it on again after he has sung the Epistle, and kissed the hand of the celebrant. Whilst the celebrant is reading the Gospel, the same acolyte helps the deacon to take off the chasuble and put on the large stole; taking care to assist him again in taking off the large stole and resuming the chasuble, after he has removed the Missal from the Gospel side to the Epistle side, after the communion.

3. The celebrant should not kneel whilst he reads the *Adjuva nos*, &c., but after having read the Gospel, he goes as usual to the middle of the altar, where he remains till the *Adjuva nos*, &c., then he and the minis-

ters kneel on the platform; when the *Adjuva nos*, &c., is ended, they all arise, incense is then put into the censer, and the rest proceeds as usual.

4. The acolytes holding their candles, remain kneeling from the *Sanctus* to the communion of the celebrant.

5. At the prayer, *Super populum*, the celebrant having sung *Oremus*, the deacon at his right side, turned towards the people, sings, *Humiliate capita.*

CHAPTER III.

Sundays LÆTARE *and* GAUDETE.

On these Sundays three things are particularly to be observed:

1. The organ, which is silent during Lent, is played at High Mass and Vespers.

2. The sacred vestments should be of rose color.

3. The deacon and subdeacon, instead of folded chasubles, make use of the dalmatic and tunic.

CHAPTER IV.

PALM-SUNDAY.

ARTICLE I.

Preparations.

1. In the sacristy, for the celebrant, the violet cope and stole, the cincture, alb, and amice; for the deacon, the folded chasuble, stole and maniple of violet color,

the cincture, alb, and amice; for the sub-deacon, the violet folded chasuble and maniple, the cincture, alb, and amice. Also, three amices, albs, and cinctures, and three violet maniples and stoles; besides three books for the three deacons who sing the Passion.

2. On the altar, the cross and six candlesticks, without any ornaments; where the custom prevails, branches of olive or palm trees may be placed between the candlesticks.

3. Near the altar, on the Epistle side, a small table covered with a linen cloth; on the Gospel side, in any convenient place, three book-stands for the Passion.

4. On the table, the holy-water pot with the sprinkle, the chalice in the middle, covered as usual with the veil, the cruets, bell, the Missal for the Epistle and Gospel, the large stole for the deacon, a basin with a pitcher of water, and a towel.

5. In any convenient place, the processional cross, covered with a violet veil, a chafing-dish, with fire and tongs.

6. On the minister's bench, the violet chasuble and maniple, for the celebrant.

Article II.

From the beginning of the Ceremony to the Distribution of the Palms.

1. The ministers dressed as usual, with amice, alb, and cincture, and the deacon having put on his stole, assists the celebrant in putting on the amice, alb, cincture, stole, and cope; they then put on their folded chasubles and maniples. The master of ceremonies having given the signal, they bow to the cross; and proceed to the

altar, having their heads covered, walking at each side of the celebrant, and raising the border of his cope.

2. Having arrived at the altar, and given their caps to the master of ceremonies, they kneel before the cross, and go up to the platform, where the celebrant kisses the middle of the altar, and the sacred ministers make a genuflection; they immediately go to the Epistle side, where they remain; the sub-deacon standing at the left hand of the celebrant, and the deacon on the highest step at his right. The palms are then uncovered by the master of ceremonies.

3. The celebrant, with his hands joined, and without making the sign of the cross, reads from the Missal the anthem, *Hosanna*, which is sung by the chanters.

4. The anthem being sung, the celebrant remaining turned towards the Missal, and with his hands joined, sings in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer that follows; during this, the ministers at each side raise the celebrant's cope. At the beginning of the prayer, the sub-deacon bowing to the cross, descends to the floor, and standing below the steps, behind the celebrant, with his face turned towards the altar, with the assistance of the second acolyte he takes off the chasuble, and receives the Missal from the second master of ceremonies.

5. At the end of the prayer, having made the usual bows to the clergy, he sings the lesson that follows it in the tone of the Epistle; then bowing as before the lesson, he goes to the celebrant, and kneeling kisses his hand, and receives his blessing. Having put on the chasuble, he goes by the shortest way to the left of the celebrant, and remains there.

6. After the lesson, the singers chant one of the two

responses with its verses, and in the mean time the deacon having bowed to the cross, goes down, and taking off his chasuble, puts on the large stole, receives from the second master of ceremonies the Missal, which he places on the middle of the altar; then making a genuflection, he returns by the shortest way to the right of the celebrant, to hold the incense-boat whilst he puts the incense into the censer; in the same time the sub-deacon raises the border of the celebrant's cope.

7. The incense being blessed, the sub-deacon goes down the steps, and the deacon goes by the shortest way to the middle of the altar; there, kneeling on both knees, he says, *Munda cor meum;* then takes the Missal, and saying, *Jube Domne*, &c., asks the blessing of the celebrant, who turning himself to the Gospel side, gives it in the usual words, *Dominus sit*, &c. The Gospel is sung, as usual in High Masses; at the end of which the sub-deacon carries the book to the celebrant, who kisses it, and the deacon incenses him as customary; he then takes off the large stole, puts on the folded chasuble, and returns to the right of the celebrant, the sub-deacon being on his left.

8. After the celebrant has been incensed, he turns towards the altar, and sings in a ferial tone the prayer that follows; after which he sings the *Præfatio.* After this, standing at the Epistle side with the ministers, and bowing at the same time, he says in a low voice the *Sanctus*, which is sung by the choir.

9. The celebrant, with his hands joined, sings in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayers for the blessing; when he makes the sign of the cross on the palms, he lays his left hand on the altar, and the deacon

raises the border of his cope; the same is to be observed when he makes use of the sprinkle or the censer.

10. At the beginning of the prayers, the censer-bearer prepares the censer, and when they are ended, he goes to the Epistle side, having at his right the first acolyte, who carries the vessel with holy water. Both bow at the lowest step, and the censer-bearer goes up to the highest step; and after the celebrant has put the incense into the censer, and blessed it, he retires; the acolyte then takes his place, gives the sprinkle to the deacon, who, holding it in the middle of its handle, kisses it and presents it to the celebrant, whose hand he also kisses. The celebrant sprinkles the palms three times, first in the middle, afterwards at the right, and lastly at the left, saying, at the same time, *Asperges me;* the deacon returns the sprinkle to the acolyte, and receives the censer from the censer-bearer, kisses and gives it to the celebrant, whose hand he also kisses; the celebrant incenses the palms also three times, in the same manner as has been said for the sprinkling, but without saying any words.

11. The censer-bearer receives the censer from the deacon, makes a genuflection with the acolyte, and both retire to place the censer and the vessel in their proper places.

12. After incensing the palms, the celebrant sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer that follows.

Article III.

Of the Distribution of the Palms.

1. After the prayer, the ministers and the celebrant proceed to the middle of the altar, bow to the cross, and

turn towards the people; the first acolyte, at the Epistle side, holds the palms, which he gives to the deacon.

2. The clergyman who is first in dignity amongst those who are present at the ceremony, when invited by the second master of ceremonies, goes in his usual choir-dress, without stole, to the highest step of the altar; there, standing, he receives from the deacon the palm, which he kisses and gives to the celebrant, without kissing his hand; the celebrant also kisses the palm only, and gives it to the sub-deacon, who, having kissed the celebrant's hand and the palm, lays it on the altar. The celebrant having received from the deacon another palm, gives it to the clergyman who is first in dignity. He kneels on the platform to receive it, and kisses both the celebrant's hand and the palm. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 14 Feb., 1703.) After which, bowing and making a genuflection, he returns to his place, attended by the second master of ceremonies, who invites the clergy to go to the altar in proper order.

3. When the distribution of the palms commences, the anthem *Pueri Hebræorum* is sung by the chanters, and repeated, if necessary, during the distribution.

4. The deacon and sub-deacon then go to the highest step, and, kneeling on the platform, receive the palm from the celebrant, and kiss his hand and the palm; afterwards they arise, and make a genuflection; the sub-deacon returns to the right, and the deacon to the left of the celebrant, to give him the palms that are to be distributed, having previously placed their own on the altar, or given them to the acolytes. The celebrant distributes the palms to the clergy, beginning by the priests and ending with the inferior clergy, who must

come, two by two, and kiss first the palm, then the hand of the celebrant.

5. After the distribution, the celebrant and the ministers turn towards the altar, bow to the cross, and go in the same order as before to the Epistle side, where the celebrant washes his hands, and sings the prayer, *Omnipotens sempiterne Deus*, &c.

The celebrant, where it is customary, may go to the railing to distribute the palms to the people; the men kiss the palm and the celebrant's hand, but the women kiss only the palm. After the distribution, the ministers return to the altar, make a genuflection on the lowest step, but the celebrant merely bows, if the Blessed Sacrament is not present, after which they all go to the Epistle side, as in the preceding number.

Should the congregation be large, another priest, dressed in surplice, and having on a violet stole, may assist the celebrant in distributing the palms; the same is to be observed with respect to the distribution of the candles and of the ashes.

Article IV.

Of the Procession.

1. When the ministers go to the Epistle side, the censer-bearer prepares the censer; after the prayer, he goes to the Epistle side, where the incense is put into the censer, and blessed by the celebrant. Then the subdeacon kneels to the cross, and by the shortest way goes to the side-table, where, taking off his maniple, he takes the processional cross, and, preceded by the censer-bearer, walks between the acolytes to the middle of the

sanctuary, where he remains with his face turned towards the altar.

2. In the mean time, the deacon having taken off his maniple, gives the palm to the celebrant, at the same time kissing it and also the hand of the priest; then he takes his own palm, and withdraws to the highest step behind the celebrant; and at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, he turns towards the people, and sings, *Procedamus in pace*, to which the clergy answer, *In nomine Christi. Amen.*

3. They then walk in procession out of the door of the church, in the following order: the censer-bearer, having made a genuflection, proceeds first; then come the acolytes, on each side of the cross-bearer, who make no genuflection; after them the chanters and the rest of the clergy, two by two, who all make a genuflection in the middle of the sanctuary, and carry their palms in their right or left hand, according to their position; if they are on the left, they must carry them in their left hand; but if on the right, they must bear them in their right. Last of all, the deacon and the celebrant, who, at the signal given by the master of ceremonies, go down the steps, the celebrant bows, and the deacon kneels before the cross; he then gives the cap to the celebrant, kissing it and the celebrant's hand; and having received his cap from the master of ceremonies, he goes to the left of the celebrant, whose cope he raises with his right hand, holding in his left his own palm. They follow the procession with their caps on.

4. As the procession goes out of the door of the church, all the clergy except the cross-bearer, the acolytes, the censer-bearer, and the master of ceremonies, put on their caps. The procession is made through the

usual places round the church, and the chanters sing either all or only a part of the anthems that are in the Missal, according to the length of the way.

5. On their return to the door of the church, some of the singers enter the church, and shut the door; the censer-bearer goes to the right of the first acolyte, the cross-bearer stops between the acolytes near the door, and turns the crucifix towards the people. The clergy, as they arrive, keep their respective rows, but draw near the acolytes, and form a circle, which is completed by the celebrant, with the ministers at his side, who remain turned towards the door; all may wear their caps.

6. The singers within the church, turned towards the door, sing *Gloria, laus*, which is repeated by the clergy, who are without; then the other strophes are sung by those within, the clergy alternately repeating *Gloria, laus.*

7. When all the verses have been sung, the sub-deacon, turning the crucifix, knocks at the door with the foot of the cross; the door is immediately opened, the procession enters the church, and the anthem *Ingrediente Domino* is sung.

If the procession cannot be made out of the church, it should be made within; and should stop at the door of the sanctuary.

8. As the clergy enter the church, all, with the exception of the celebrant and ministers, uncover their heads, and proceed to the sanctuary. The censer-bearer arriving at the middle of it, makes a genuflection, and carries the censer to its place. The cross-bearer and acolytes, without making a genuflection, go to the side-table, the acolytes place their candlesticks on it, the sub-deacon leaves the cross near it and goes to the bench, waiting

there for the celebrant and deacon. The clergy having made a genuflection in the middle of the sanctuary, go to their respective places, carrying the palms in their hands.

9. The celebrant and deacon, as they enter the sanctuary, uncover their heads, go to the middle, make a genuflection, and go to the bench of the ministers; there the deacon receives from the celebrant his palm, kissing it and the celebrant's hand, and gives it with his own to the master of ceremonies; then, having turned towards the altar, the ministers take off the cope from the celebrant, and put on his maniple and chasuble; after which, they put on their own maniples, and having bowed to the clergy as usual, go to the altar, and begin Mass, which ought to be celebrated by the same priest who blessed the palms, unless they were blessed by the bishop.

Article V.

Of the Mass and Passion.

1. Mass is celebrated as on other Sundays during Lent, with the following exceptions: the Psalm *Judica* is not said at the *Confiteor*, nor the *Gloria Patri* at the *Introit* and *Lavabo*.

2. Only one prayer is said. Whilst the sub-deacon sings the Epistle, the clergy, deacon, and celebrant, unless the latter should actually be reading the *Gradual* or *Tract*, kneel at the words, *In nomine Jesu omne genuflectatur*, till the words *Et inferorum* are sung.

3. After the Epistle, the sub-deacon waits till the celebrant has read the *Tract*, he then receives his blessing, descends the steps, puts on his chasuble, and goes to the

right of the deacon, as observed for the *Introit*. The celebrant and ministers sit at their seats, whilst the *Tract* is sung.

4. During the Passion and Gospel, the celebrant and all the others, except the deacons who sing the Passion, the acolytes and the master of ceremonies, hold palms in their hands; the same is to be observed by all, except the sacred ministers, when they return to the sacristy.

5. The Gospel of St. John is read at the end of the High Mass.

6. Whilst the Epistle is sung, the deacons, who are to sing the Passion, put on the amice, alb, cincture, violet maniple, and stole. The acolytes place in a straight line, at a little distance from each other, the three book-stands, in the place where the Gospel is usually sung.

7. Towards the end of the *Tract*, the three deacons appointed for the Passion, each holding in both hands his book, which he lays against his breast, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies, bow to the cross, put on their caps, and go out of the sacristy in the following order: first, the master of ceremonies, with his hands joined; next, the deacon, who sings the words of the Evangelist; then he who sings the words of the multitude; and, lastly, the one who sings the words of our Saviour.

8. When they enter the sanctuary, they uncover their heads, and give their caps to the master of ceremonies; then the deacon, who sings the words of our Saviour, is placed in the middle; he who sings the part of the Evangelist, at the right; and he who sings the words of the multitude, at the left; they make a genuflection before the altar, bow to the celebrant, and the clergy go

to the book-stands, place their books upon them, so that he who personates the Evangelist, be in the middle; he who sings the words of our Saviour at the right; and the one who represents the multitude at the left. Then the Evangelist begins, *Passio Domini*, &c.; during the Passion, they stand with their hands joined, and near them the second master of ceremonies.

9. When he who is in the middle begins the Passion, the clergy take off their caps, rise, and stand during it; the celebrant and the ministers rise, and go by the shortest way to the Epistle side, place themselves as for the *Introit;* the deacon gives, as usual, the palm to the celebrant; the ministers receive it from the master of ceremonies, and all hold them in their hands; then the celebrant, turning a little towards the singers, reads the Passion at the Epistle side (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 4 Aug., 1663), turning a little, as far as that part which is sung like the Gospel, exclusively; but when he arrives at the words *Emisit Spiritum*, he makes no genuflection.

10. When the celebrant has read the Passion, the ministers place themselves behind each other, and, with the celebrant, turn towards the singers. In their right hands they hold their palms, and place their left on their breast; at the name of Jesus they bow to the cross; at the words *Emisit Spiritum* they all kneel, where they are, but turned towards the altar; the deacons, however, who sing the Passion, kneel towards their books; they all rise at the signal given by the master of ceremonies.

11. At the end of the Passion, the clergy sit down, the deacons, by whom it was sung, go to the middle of the altar in the same order in which they came, kneel to the cross, bow to the clergy, receive their caps from the

second master of ceremonies, and leaving the sanctuary, they cover their heads, go to the sacristy as they came out, and the acolytes remove the book-stands from the place where the Passion was sung.

12. In the mean time, the sub-deacon gives his palm to the first master of ceremonies, and carries the Missal to the Gospel side. The celebrant gives his palm to the deacon, who gives it and his own to the master of ceremonies, goes to the middle of the altar, and says, *Munda cor meum, Jube Domne benedicere*, as usual; he then reads the Gospel, as in the Missal, without saying *Dominus vobiscum*, or making the sign of the cross either on himself or on the book; at the end, the sub-deacon answers, *Laus tibi Christe.* In the mean time, the deacon having taken off his chasuble, puts on the large stole, and carries the book to the altar.

13. The celebrant having read the Gospel, every thing is performed as usual, except that the acolytes do not carry the candlesticks, but they go, either with their hands joined, or, if it be customary, holding the palm in their hands; the deacon does not say, *Dominus vobiscum*, neither does he make the sign of the cross on himself or on the book, but having incensed it, he begins by singing, *Altera autem*, &c., in the usual tone of the Gospel. In the mean time, the celebrant holds the palm in his right hand; and at the end of the Gospel he kisses the Missal, which the sub-deacon presents at these words, *Altera die*, and Mass is continued as usual.

CHAPTER V.

OFFICE OF THE TENEBRÆ,

ON WEDNESDAY, THURSDAY, AND FRIDAY, IN HOLY-WEEK.

Article I.

Preparations.

1. At the altar, the carpet, violet altar-veil, six candlesticks with brown wax candles; the blessed sacrament is to be removed to another altar, in case it is usually kept at the principal altar. The altar-cards also should be removed.

2. In the place where the Epistle is sung, a triangular candlestick, with fifteen candles of brown wax, and a rod with the proper instrument to extinguish them.

3. In the middle of the sanctuary, a book-stand, for the lessons that are to be sung.

Article II.

From the Commencement to the End of the Office.

1. At the stated hour, the candles of the altar and those of the triangular candlesticks being lighted, at the signal given by the master of ceremonies, the clergy leave the sacristy. When they are arrived at their places in the sanctuary, they all kneel down for a while, to say in secret the *Aperi Domine;* then they arise, and say in secret, *Pater*, *Ave*, and *Credo*.

2. At the signal from the presiding clergyman, the chanters sing the anthem, *Zelus domus;* after which they begin the Psalm, and all sit down.

At the end of every Psalm, *Gloria Patri* is not said, but the anthem is immediately repeated.

3. At the end of the first Psalm, the acolyte appointed to put out the candles, puts out the last candle of the triangle at the Gospel side; at the end of the second, he extinguishes that on the Epistle side, and so on at the end of each Psalm alternately, leaving lighted only the candle at the top of the triangle.

4. After the verses at the end of the third Psalm and anthem of each nocturn, the clergy rise, and say, *Pater noster;* at the end of which, they sit down, and put on their caps.

5. In the mean while, the second master of ceremonies invites the clergyman who is to sing the first lamentation, by bowing to him; he then places himself at his left, accompanies him to the book-stand, where both make a genuflection, and bow to the clergy. Then the lamentation is sung, without asking the blessing, and ended without saying *Tu autem Domine.* Afterwards they make a genuflection, bow to the clergy, and the master of ceremonies accompanies the singer back to his place, and bows to him. The same is to be done for each lesson.

6. Whilst the singers begin the *Benedictus*, all rise, and stand till they begin to sing *Christus*, &c., at the verse *Ut sine timore;* the same acolyte extinguishes the last candle of the altar at the Gospel side; at the verse *In sanctitate*, that at the Epistle side, and so at each of the following verses alternately.

Whilst the *Benedictus* is sung, all the lights in the church are put out, except the lamps before the Blessed Sacrament.

7. When the anthem of the *Benedictus* is repeated,

the top candle is taken from the triangular candlestick by the acolyte, who carries it to the Epistle side, and holds it lighted at the corner of the altar. When they begin *Christus factus est*, he hides it behind the altar.

8. At the beginning of *Christus*, &c., all kneel and say in secret, *Pater noster;* then the Psalm *Miserere* is either said or sung, at the end of which the presiding clergyman recites, without *Oremus*, the prayer, *Respice quæsumus*, but says, in a low and inaudible voice, *Qui tecum vivit*, &c.

9. At the end of the prayer, the celebrant taps his book with his hand, as the others also do; then the lighted candle is brought from under the altar, and all rise and depart in silence, after the usual genuflection.

10. The same is to be observed on the two following days, except that the altar is without a cloth, altar-veil, or carpet; having only the cross and six candlesticks on it.

CHAPTER VI.

MAUNDY-THURSDAY.

Article I.

Preparations.

1. In the sacristy, white vestments for High Mass; besides two violet stoles to be used when the priest strips the altars; also a third white tunic, with amice, alb, and cincture, but without maniple for the cross-bearer. The candlesticks for the acolytes, two censers,

with their incense-boat, and a sufficient number of candles for the procession; also torches for the elevation.

2. The principal altar is to be decorated with the most precious ornaments, with a white altar-veil, and if it has a tabernacle with the Blessed Sacrament, it is to be covered with a canopy of the same color; the cross on the altar is to be covered with a white veil. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 20 Dec., 1783.)

3. On the table, besides every thing necessary for High Mass, a chalice for the repository, with pall, paten, and a white veil and ribbon; on the paten used for the Mass, two Hosts, one of which should be of such a size that it may be put in the chalice prepared for the repository; as many white stoles as will be sufficient for the priests who are to go to communion; a pyx with small Hosts; the communion-cloth, and a white cope for the celebrant; near the table, a clapper, used instead of a bell.

4. In any convenient place, the canopy and the processional cross, covered with a violet veil.

5. A proper place, or repository, should be prepared in some chapel, or on some altar of the church, and decently adorned with hangings, flowers, and lights. Above the altar, in the most conspicuous and elevated part, should be placed an urn, or tabernacle, that may be locked, with a pall in it, that the Blessed Sacrament may be kept in for the following day. On the altar, an unfolded corporal, with the burse and the key of the urn. Near the altar, steps, or a stool, that the deacon may reach the door of the tabernacle.

Article II.

Of the Mass.

1. This day, at Mass, the Psalm *Judica me* is not said; nor the *Gloria Patri* at the *Introit* and *Lavabo*.

2. The celebrant having sung the words, *Gloria in excelsis Deo*, one of the acolytes rings the small bell till the celebrant has finished it; all the large bells of the church are rung, and the organ is played till the singers have chanted the whole of the *Gloria in excelsis*.

3. At the *Sanctus*, and at the elevation, instead of bells, a clapper is used.

4. The *Pax* is not given; consequently, after the *Agnus Dei* the sacred ministers change places, the deacon goes to the left of the celebrant, near the Missal, and the sub-deacon to the right, to uncover and cover the chalice at the proper time, making the usual genuflections.

5. Whilst the celebrant says the last of the three prayers that precede the communion, the master of ceremonies carries from the table to the altar the chalice, in which the consecrated Host is to be kept; also the paten, pall, veil, and ribbon, prepared for that purpose.

6. After the celebrant has received the sacred blood of our Lord, the ministers make a genuflection, change places, make another genuflection together with the celebrant; who, rising, takes the Host with reverence on the paten, and places it horizontally in the chalice, which is presented to him by the deacon, who covers it with the pall, over which he places the paten, with the inside part turned down, and covers it with the

veil, fastening it with the ribbon near the knot of the chalice.

7. Then the deacon places it in the middle of the corporal, and uncovers the pyx; here all make a genuflection; the ministers then retire to the two corners of the altar, bowing, and with their faces turned towards each other; the celebrant turns towards the clergy; the deacon sings the *Confiteor;* after which, the celebrant says, *Misereatur*, &c., and having given the blessing, turns towards the altar, and makes a genuflection, whilst the deacon and sub-deacon kneel on the platform before him.

8. Whilst the deacon sings the *Confiteor*, the second master of ceremonies and the censer-bearer go to each side of the altar, and make a genuflection there; they kneel, turned towards one another, and wait till the ministers have knelt before the celebrant; they then extend the communion-cloth, which the censer-bearer must have carried from the table, and hold it with both their hands.

9. The celebrant, holding in his left hand the pix, and in his right one of the small Hosts, turns towards the people, and having said *Agnus Dei*, &c., gives the communion to the ministers, who, having received it, make a genuflection, go to the side of the celebrant, at the same time changing their places—viz., the deacon goes to the right, and the sub-deacon to the left; the censer-bearer withdraws the communion-cloth, that they may have room to pass. Then the clergy receive the communion as usual; the priests, however, having on their stoles, which must be given them by an acolyte, receive it before the others in inferior orders.

10. After the communion, the celebrant and the min-

isters turn towards the altar, and make a genuflection. Should any Hosts remain, they are received by the celebrant. The acolytes, who held the communion-cloth, make a genuflection, leave the cloth on the table, and retire to their places.

11. The acolytes return to the sacristy with their torches, and distribute the candles to the clergy, who light them immediately. The censer-bearers prepare their censers, and the cross-bearer puts on the amice, alb, cincture, and white tunic. One of the acolytes carries to the chapel of the repository the caps of the celebrant and ministers.

12. The celebrant receives both ablutions without leaving the middle of the altar. The ministers change places, and make a genuflection at each side of the celebrant, both before and after they change places. When they minister to the celebrant, they no longer kiss his hand, nor any thing they present to him, or receive from him. The sub-deacon wipes the chalice, and covers it; leaves room for the celebrant when he says *Dominus vobiscum;* makes a genuflection on the platform, and also on the lowest step, when he passes before the Blessed Sacrament; carries the chalice to the table, and goes behind the deacon.

13. The celebrant, having given the chalice to the sub-deacon, makes a genuflection, and goes to read the communion. He then returns to the middle, kisses the altar, makes a genuflection with the deacon, turns towards the people from the Gospel side, so as not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament, and sings *Dominus vobiscum.* Afterwards the celebrant makes a genuflection with the ministers, goes to sing the prayer, then returns to the middle, kisses the altar, turns towards the people, as before,

and sings *Dominus vobiscum.* In the mean time the deacon makes another genuflection, turns towards the people, as the celebrant also turns; he sings, *Ite, missa est*, after which they all make a genuflection. The celebrant says, *Placeat*, &c., and the ministers go to each side of the platform, and kneel down to receive the benediction.

14. The celebrant, after the *Placeat*, kisses the altar, and having said *Benedicat vos omnipotens Deus*, instead of bowing, makes a genuflection, and turns in the same manner as for the *Dominus vobiscum*, and without turning round, makes another genuflection, and turns from his left to the Gospel side, to read the Gospel of St. John, without making the usual sign of the cross on the altar; however, he makes it upon himself; when he pronounces the words, *Et Verbum caro*, he makes a genuflection to the Blessed Sacrament.

15. The Gospel of St. John being ended, the ministers go up the platform to each side of the celebrant, and having made a genuflection, go to the bench by the shortest way.

Article III.

Of the Procession.

1. When the ministers arrive at the bench, they assist the celebrant in taking off the maniple and chasuble, and putting on the cope; they also take off their own maniples; after which they go to the lowest step before the altar, kneel on both knees on the floor of the sanctuary, rise, and kneel on the lowest step, where they adore the Blessed Sacrament for a short time; at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, they rise In

cense is then put into the censer by the celebrant, but not blessed. The celebrant, whilst the ministers raise his cope, incenses the Blessed Sacrament. Every thing is prepared for the procession, which is to be made in the church, and not out of doors. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 6 Aug., 1591.

2. Whilst the celebrant incenses the Blessed Sacrament, the master of ceremonies brings the veil from the table, which he puts on the shoulders of the celebrant, as soon as he has returned the censer to the deacon. The censer-bearers go to each side of the altar, and the acolytes, appointed for the purpose, give the canopy to the priests dressed in surplices, or to others, according to custom.

3. The celebrant, having put on the veil, goes up to the second step, with the ministers at his side; there the celebrant and the sub-deacon kneel down, and the deacon goes upon the platform to the altar, makes a genuflection, takes the chalice, holding it with his right hand at the knot, and with his left at the foot, gives it to the celebrant, who takes it with his left at the knot, and places his right hand over it; then the deacon covers it with both extremities of the veil; and having made a genuflection, goes to the right of the celebrant, who rises with the ministers, and goes up with them to the platform; there they turn towards the people, the deacon standing at the right, and the sub-deacon at the left of the celebrant, and holding up the border of his cope. The singers begin the *Pange Lingua.*

4. The following order is to be observed in the procession: first, the cross-bearer, a sub-deacon dressed in tunic, between the acolytes. All three should go to the middle of the sanctuary, near the rails, whilst the cele-

brant incenses the Blessed Sacrament, and remain standing with their faces towards the altar. When the *Pange Lingua* is intoned, they turn towards the people, without making any genuflection, and walk with gravity towards the chapel of the repository. Next to them, the rest of the clergy, having made a genuflection on both knees before the Blessed Sacrament, walk two by two, carrying lighted candles in their hands.

5. Lastly, the sacred ministers descend the steps, place themselves under the canopy, and are preceded immediately by the censer-bearers, who keep their censers in continual and regular motion, and walk after the clergy.

6. During the procession, the celebrant recites, alternately with the ministers, psalms and hymns, without saying *Gloria Patri* at the end, whilst the chanters continue to sing the *Pange Lingua.*

7. When the cross-bearer and the acolytes arrive at the door of the chapel, they retire a little aside, in order that the procession may pass, and they remain there standing, with their faces turned towards the procession. Those of the clergy who walked next to the cross-bearer stop, the first on each side of the chapel, and those who follow stop next to them, so that the clergymen who walked the last are the nearest to the altar of the repository; having divided into two lines, the celebrant, with the sacred ministers, passes between them. The censer-bearers, on entering the chapel, keep their censers still.

8. The celebrant and ministers having arrived at the altar, ascend the steps; the deacon, kneeling on the platform, receives the Blessed Sacrament, rises, and after the celebrant has adored it, places it on the altar, makes a genuflection, and kneels at the right of the celebrant;

then the singers begin the *Tantum ergo*. After the two first verses have been sung, incense is put into the censer, as usual; the deacon, or a priest in surplice and stole, places the Blessed Sacrament in the urn, which he shuts at the end of the hymn.

It is prescribed by the Ceremonial of the Bishops (l. 2, c. 23 and 13), that the deacon, on receiving the chalice, as has been said above, should not place it on the altar, but in the urn, which he should leave open till the sacrament is incensed, &c.

Article IV.

Of Vespers, and of the Stripping of the Altars.

1. When the urn or tabernacle is shut, some acolytes take the candles from the clergy, who, having prayed for a short time, at a signal from the master of ceremonies make a genuflection on both knees, and return to the sanctuary, the first in dignity walking first, and so on.

2. When they have come to the sanctuary, they make a genuflection in the middle, and return to their places; where, standing, they say in secret the *Pater* and *Ave;* then the first clergyman in dignity, begins in a moderate tone of voice, the first antiphon of Vespers, and at the proper time, the *Magnificat* and the *Miserere;* after which, he recites the prayer, *Respice*, &c.

3. The clergy having left the chapel of the repository, the ministers and the censer-bearers make a genuflection on both knees on the floor of the chapel, and having received their caps, go to the sacristy, preceded by the censer-bearers and the cross-bearer, with the acolytes carrying the candlesticks with lighted candles. The

ministers on each side of the celebrant raise his cope. After they have entered the sacristy, they make a profound bow to the cross, take off their white vestments, and the celebrant and deacon put on violet stoles.

4. Towards the end of the Psalm, *Miserere*, the celebrant with the ministers walking after each other, and having their caps on, go out of the sacristy, preceded by the acolytes, and attended by the master of ceremonies. On entering the sanctuary, the ministers walk on each side of the celebrant, and having given their caps to the master of ceremonies, bow to the clergy, make a genuflection to the cross, with the exception of the celebrant, who merely bows; they then go up the platform, and the prayer, *Respice*, being ended, the celebrant begins in a moderate tone, *Diviserunt sibi*, which is continued by the clergy, together with the Psalm, *Deus*, *Deus meus*, &c., which they should recite so slow as to finish them when the celebrant comes back to the sanctuary, after having stripped all the altars.

5. The celebrant alternately with the ministers recites in a low voice the same Psalm, whilst they strip the altars. They first take off the upper cloth, then the others; and the acolytes remove the front veil, the altar-cards, the carpet, and all the other ornaments, leaving only the cross and six candlesticks. Afterwards, the ministers descend the steps, and having made a genuflection with the acolytes, the celebrant only bowing, they bow to the clergy, put on their caps, and walk one after the other, preceded by the acolytes, and proceed to strip the other altars; when they pass before the chapel of the repository, they make a genuflection on both knees.

In churches that have many altars, whilst the cele-

brant strips the grand altar, other priests in surplice and stole may strip the others, reciting the same Psalm.

6. After the stripping of the altars, the celebrant having returned to the grand altar, waits there till the antiphon, *Diviserunt*, is repeated by the clergy; then, after the usual genuflection, they go to the sacristy.

CHAPTER VII.

GOOD FRIDAY.

ARTICLE I.

Preparations.

1. IN the sacristy, the black vestments, viz.: two folded chasubles for the deacon and sub-deacon; a chasuble for the celebrant, two stoles, three maniples, albs, cinctures, and amices.

2. Also three albs, with cinctures and amices, as many black maniples and stoles, and three Missals for the deacons, who sing the Passion. Besides, two censers and incense-boat, a chafing-dish, with fire and tongs; the torches and candles for the procession.

3. The altar must be undressed, having, however, six candlesticks, and candles of brown wax, and the cross covered with a black veil, fastened in such a manner as to be easily and gradually taken off.

4. On the edge of the platform of the altar, three violet cushions, one on each side, and one in the middle, at a proper distance.

5. On the side-table, a plain linen cloth, projecting only a little on each side; and on it the cruets in their plate; an altar-card; a *Lavabo;* a book-stand with the Missal for the celebrant; another Missal for the ministers; a folded altar-cloth, and a large black stole for the deacon; a small vessel with water, covered with a purifier, for the ablution of the fingers in case the priest should touch the Blessed Sacrament; a black burse, containing a corporal, and a purifier on it; a black veil for the chalice, two candlesticks with brown wax candles for the acolytes. The candles should not be lighted.

6. In any convenient place, the processional cross, covered with a violet veil, and the wooden clapper.

7. At the Epistle side, in the sanctuary, a violet carpet with a long white veil, and a violet cushion, on which the cross may be placed for the adoration. Also three book-stands for the Passion. The minister's bench must be without ornaments.

8. At the chapel of the repository, besides the canopy, the white veil on the side-table. On the altar, the key of the urn, or tabernacle; and near the altar, the steps, &c.

Article II.

From the Vesting of the Ministers to the Uncovering of the Cross.

1. After the ministers are dressed, they proceed with the clergy to the sanctuary, as usual, except that the acolytes without candlesticks, and with their hands joined, walk before the clergy. When they arrive at the altar, they make a genuflection and retire to their usual places. The ministers at the foot of the altar

give their caps to the master of ceremonies, and make a genuflection with the celebrant, without bowing to the clergy; they prostrate themselves, and lay their hands and faces on the cushions.

2. At the same time the clergy kneel down, and bow their heads; the acolytes having knelt and made a short prayer, rise, and with the assistance of the second master of ceremonies, extend on the altar a cloth, which should hang down only very little on each side; then the acolytes go to their places; and the master of ceremonies places on the Epistle side of the altar the book-stand, with the Missal open.

3. After a few minutes, the signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the sacred ministers and all the clergy rise. Immediately, the acolytes remove the cushions; and the celebrant, with the deacon and sub-deacon, goes up to the altar; the celebrant kisses it; the deacon and sub-deacon make a genuflection, and they all go to the Epistle side, as for the *Introit.*

4. At the same time, one of the acolytes receives the Missal from the second master of ceremonies, goes, accompanied by him, to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection, bows to the clergy, goes to the place where the Epistle is usually sung, and there sings the lesson in the tone of the prophecies. At the beginning of it the clergy sit down, and the celebrant reads it with a low voice; the ministers do not answer, *Deo gratias*, at the end, but the celebrant immediately reads the *Tract.*

5. The acolyte having sung the prophecy, makes a genuflection before the altar, bows to the clergy, and returns to his place. The singers chant the *Tract*, during which the celebrant and ministers may sit down.

6. When the choir sing the words, *Operuit cœlos*, the

deacon and sub-deacon go, one after the other, behind the celebrant. In case they be sitting, they should first return to the altar by the shortest way.

7. After the *Tract*, the celebrant sings *Oremus*, and the deacon immediately subjoins, *Flectamus genua*, kneeling, with all the clergy, the celebrant excepted; then the sub-deacon answers, *Levate*, and all rise.

8. Whilst the celebrant sings the prayer, with his hands extended, the second acolyte helps the sub-deacon to take off his chasuble. The latter, having received the Missal from the second master of ceremonies, kneels before the altar, bows to the clergy, and sings the lesson, without the title, in the usual tone of the Epistle.

9. The lesson being ended, the sub-deacon kneels to the altar, bows to the clergy, and without asking the blessing from the celebrant, returns the Missal to the second master of ceremonies, puts on his chasuble, and returns to his place, as at the *Introit*. The celebrant having read the lesson with the *Tract*, goes with the ministers to sit down.

10. Whilst the *Tract* is sung, three book-stands are prepared for the Passion, and every thing is done as directed in the fourth chapter, with the following exceptions: the celebrant reads all the Passion at the Epistle side, even that part which is sung in the tone of the Gospel; saying before it, *Munda cor meum*, in the same place, but profoundly inclined, and omitting *Jube Domne*, &c.

11. After the Passion, those who sang it having returned to the sacristy, the sub-deacon goes down the step before the altar, and the deacon to the Epistle side; the latter takes off his chasuble, puts on the large stole,

and carries the Missal to the altar, making the usual bows and genuflection. Then kneeling on the platform, he says, *Munda cor meum*, without asking the blessing; he rises, takes the Missal, goes down the steps at the right of the sub-deacon, and after the usual genuflection and bows, goes to sing the Gospel, at which neither the censer nor the candlesticks are used.

12. The Gospel being sung, the sub-deacon does not carry the Missal to the celebrant, but shuts it, and gives it to the second master of ceremonies; and all having made a genuflection in the middle, the acolytes go to their place; the master of ceremonies lays the Missal on the table, and the ministers go, one after the other, behind the celebrant at the Epistle side.

13. Then the celebrant begins to sing the first preamble, with his hands joined; at the end of it, he extends and joins them, bowing to the cross, and sings, *Oremus;* then the deacon adds, *Flectamus genua*, and the sub-deacon, *Levate*, as in n. 7.

The celebrant immediately sings the prayer in the ferial tone, with his hands extended. All the following preambles and prayers are sung in the same manner.

14. At the prayer which begins with the words, *Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, qui salvas, omnes*, &c., the acolytes go to spread the violet carpet, covering the lowest step of the altar with one end of it, aud extending the other on the floor of the sanctuary; they also lay the cushion on the lowest step, and cover the whole with the white veil.

15. All the prayers being ended, the ministers go by the shortest way to the bench, where the celebrant and the sub-deacon take off their chasubles, go to the Epistle

side and stop before the lowest step, turned towards the people.

16. Then the master of ceremonies and the deacon go up to the altar, having first made a genuflection on the lowest step. The master of ceremonies takes the cross, and gives it to the deacon, who, having received it, reverently carries it by the shortest way to the celebrant, having the image of the crucifix turned towards himself; the celebrant receives it with great respect, holding the crucifix turned towards the people.

Article III.

From the Uncovering of the Cross to the Procession.

1. The celebrant, standing on the lowest step at the Epistle side, having the sub-deacon at his left, and the deacon at his right, turned towards the people, holds the cross in his left hand, and with the right uncovers the top of it, as far as the cross-piece, assisted, if necessary, by the ministers, raises it to the height of his eyes, and, with a grave and moderate voice, sings, *Ecce lignum Crucis*, from the book, which one of the acolytes holds open before him.

2. At these words, the clergy, having uncovered their heads, rise; the celebrant, with the ministers and the acolytes, continues to sing the whole anthem. At the end of it, the choir and the clergy, kneeling on both knees, and bowing, answer, *Venite adoremus.* The ministers also and all the others, the celebrant excepted, kneel at the same time, and bow to the cross.

3. The words *Venite adoremus* being sung, the celebrant and the ministers ascend in the same order as before to the platform, and stop at the Epistle side.

The celebrant uncovers the right arm and the head of the crucifix, and raising his voice one tone higher than the first time, sings, *Ecce Lignum*, and every thing is done as before.

4. Then the celebrant and the ministers go to the middle of the altar, in the same order; there he uncovers the whole cross, giving the veil to the sub-deacon, who gives it to one of the acolytes, by whom it is placed on the side-table; afterwards, raising his voice one tone higher, he sings, *Ecce Lignum*, and the rest is done as above.

5. The clergy having risen, the celebrant, accompanied by the master of ceremonies, who raises his vestments as he goes up or down, carries the cross, without making any bow, to the place prepared for it, and kneeling, puts it on the cushion and veil; then rises, makes a genuflection, and goes to the bench.

6. Whilst the celebrant kneels, the clergy rise, and the ministers, making a genuflection on the platform towards the cross, go by the shortest way to the bench. The second acolyte uncovers the processional cross, and another acolyte uncovers the other crosses that are in the church and in the sacristy, but not the images.

7. When the celebrant and ministers arrive at the bench, they take off their maniples and their shoes. The ministers remain at the bench, and the celebrant, attended by the master of ceremonies, goes to venerate* the cross.

8. Towards the extremity of the sanctuary, the celebrant kneels before the cross, and makes a short prayer; then rises, and about the middle of the sanctuary kneels

* The technical term is adoration: but to prevent misconception, we use the one less likely to be misinterpreted.

again, and prays in the same manner; he does the same for the third time at the foot of the cross, which he humbly kisses. Lastly, he rises, makes a genuflection to the cross, returns by the shortest way to the bench, puts on his shoes, with the assistance of the acolytes, and, assisted by the ministers, puts on his chasuble and maniple; then he sits down, and puts on his cap.

9. The ministers bow to the celebrant, and, attended by the second master of ceremonies, go to venerate the cross, observing what has been said in regard to the celebrant, n. 8. The deacon kisses the cross before the sub-deacon.

10. After the ministers, the clergy go, two by two, first the priests, then those in inferior orders; and lastly, the laymen, if custom allows them to enter the sanctuary.

Otherwise, a priest, with a surplice and a black stole, carries another crucifix to some other place for the veneration of the people, laying it on the cushion, as above, and the same priest removes it, if it be in the way of the procession.

Another method might be followed where the congregation is very numerous, viz., that one or two clergymen, in surplice and stole, should present the crucifix to be kissed at the railing.

11. During the whole time of the veneration of the cross, the choir sings the *Improperia*. It is not necessary to continue them after it, nor to sing them all.

12. The ministers having returned to the bench, put on their shoes and maniples; the sub-deacon resumes also his chasuble, and both sit down at the side of the celebrant. Then one of the acolytes brings the Missal from the table, bows to the celebrant, opens it at the

place where the *Improperia* are found, and holds it so that the celebrant and the ministers may read them alternately.

13. When the acolytes have venerated the cross, the first of them lights the candles on the table and on the altar, and the second goes to hold the Missal before the ministers in the place of the censer-bearer, till they have finished the *Improperia;* then he shuts it, bows to the celebrant, puts it on the table, and returns to his place. The censer-bearers having venerated the cross, the second of them goes to assist the cross-bearer to put on the amice, alb, cincture, and chasuble, and the first prepares the censers.

If there be no sub-deacon besides the one that ministers to the celebrant, any acolyte dressed in surplice may carry the cross.

14. Towards the end of the veneration, the deacon rises, bows to the celebrant, and carries to the altar the burse with the corporal and purifier. When he has reached the platform he kneels to the cross, unfolds the corporal as usual, and places the purifier near it, at the Epistle side. At the same time the master of ceremonies carries the Missal with its stand to the Gospel side, kneeling to the cross. The deacon having unfolded the corporal, makes again a genuflection to the cross, and returns by the shortest way to the right of the celebrant, sits down and covers his head.

15. After the veneration, the deacon, invited by the master of ceremonies, takes off his cap, rises, bows to the celebrant, and attended by the master of ceremonies, goes to the place in which the cross was laid, makes a genuflection, takes it up with both his hands, and assisted by the master of ceremonies, carries it to the

altar, and places it between the candlesticks, makes a genuflection, and returns to the side of the celebrant. At the same time the celebrant, the sub-deacon, and all the clergy kneel down at their places.

16. Then the celebrant, ministers, and clergy rise, and sit down. In the mean while an acolyte removes the veil, cushion, and carpet.

Article IV.

Of the Procession.

1. The cross being placed on the altar by the deacon, the censer-bearers go to the middle of the sanctuary, followed by the cross-bearer, who walks between the acolytes with the candlesticks; only the censer-bearers make a genuflection; then they all proceed to the repository by the shortest way; the clergy follow them, first those in inferior orders, then the priests, lastly the ministers, one after the other, with their hands joined and their caps on, all, the celebrant not excepted, making a genuflection before the cross.

2. On arriving at the repository, the censer-bearers make a genuflection in the middle on both knees, and retire to the Epistle side; the cross-bearer and the acolytes stop at the entrance of the chapel on the Epistle side, as yesterday; all the others, after making a genuflection on both knees, place themselves as yesterday.

3. The sacred ministers, at the entrance of the repository, give their caps to the master of ceremonies, who gives them to an acolyte to carry to the sanctuary, and place them on the bench of the ministers. Then the deacon passes to the right, and the sub-deacon to the left of the celebrant. When they arrive before the

altar, they make a genuflection on both knees, rise, kneel on the lowest step of the altar, and pray for a few moments; in the mean time candles are distributed to the clergy, who light them.

4. The signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the deacon rises, makes a genuflection, and goes to open the urn, or tabernacle, and having made another genuflection, returns to the right of the celebrant, who puts incense in both censers without blessing, and kneeling with the ministers, incenses the Blessed Sacrament. The canopy is given to be carried either to priests dressed in surplice, or to other persons, according to custom.

5. After the incensing of the Blessed Sacrament, the master of ceremonies puts the veil on the shoulders of the celebrant; the deacon takes the Blessed Sacrament from the urn, and gives it to the celebrant, as on yester day, who, having covered it with the lower parts of the veil, turns towards the people, having the deacon on his right and the sub-deacon on his left hand. The singers, still kneeling, intone *Vexilla Regis*, &c. The procession moves off; first, the cross-bearer with the acolytes, without making any genuflection; then the others, who make a genuflection as yesterday. When they are arrived at the sanctuary, the cross-bearer leaves the cross at the Epistle side, makes a genuflection, and goes to the sacristy to take off the sacred vestments. The clergy, on arriving at the sanctuary, go to their place, and remain there kneeling.

6. The sacred ministers, being arrived at the high altar, the deacon receives the Blessed Sacrament from the celebrant, and having placed it on the corporal, unties the ribbon, and extends the veil, as at the beginning

of Mass; then he makes a genuflection, and returns to the right of the celebrant, from whose shoulders the veil should have been removed in the mean time by the sub-deacon. Incense is put into the censer, and the Blessed Sacrament should be incensed as usual.

7. The clergymen who carried the canopy leave it aside, take candles, and kneel down before the altar, forming a semicircle till after the communion. If the canopy is carried by laymen, they remain kneeling at the rails, holding lighted candles in their hands.

8. The censer-bearers, after the incensing, make a genuflection on both knees in the middle, and the second of them goes to the sacristy; the first remains at the Epistle side.

Article V.

Of the remaining part of the Office.

1. When the celebrant has incensed the Blessed Sacrament, he goes up to the altar with the ministers. They make a genuflection, bending one knee; the deacon takes the veil from the chalice, and gives it to the master of ceremonies; he removes also the paten and the pall from the chalice. Then he takes the paten with his right hand, raises it a little from the corporal, and the celebrant, taking the chalice, lets the consecrated Host fall gently on the paten, taking care not to touch it; but should he happen to do so, he washes his fingers in the small vase prepared for this purpose, and the deacon presents to him the purifier. Then the celebrant receives with both his hands the paten from the deacon, who kisses neither it nor the celebrant's hand; and without making any cross, or saying any thing, the cele-

brant places the Host on the corporal, laying the paten also on the corporal at the Epistle side.

2. The Host being placed on the corporal, the sub-deacon makes a genuflection, goes to the right of the deacon, makes another genuflection, and receiving the cruets from an acolyte, takes that which contains wine, and gives it to the deacon, who puts some of the wine into the chalice, taking care not to place it on the altar, nor to wipe it with the purifier. Then the sub-deacon puts a little water into the chalice, without asking the blessing of the celebrant, who does not give it, nor say the prayer, *Deus qui humanæ*, &c. This done, the acolyte carries back the cruets to the side-table; the sub-deacon goes to the left of the celebrant, making the usual genuflections, and the deacon presents the chalice, without kissing it, to the celebrant, who, without making any cross, or saying any prayer, places it on the corporal, and it is covered with the pall by the deacon.

3. Then the censer-bearer, having made a genuflection below the steps, goes to the platform, and the incense is put into the censer as usual, but without blessing or kissing the censer, or the hand of the celebrant. The sacred oblations are incensed as usual, with the words, *Incensum istud;* likewise, the cross and the altar, with the customary genuflections, and with the words, *Dirigatur Domine*, &c., *Accendat*, &c. At the Epistle corner the deacon receives the censer from the celebrant, and gives it to the censer-bearer, who carries it to the sacristy, as it is not used again.

4. The celebrant, having given the censer to the deacon, descends one step on the Epistle side, turned towards the people, and washes his hands, the sub-deacon pouring the water, and the deacon presenting him

the towel; the psalm, *Lavabo*, is not said; the celebrant and the ministers go to the middle of the altar, and the acolytes carry every thing back to the side-table.

5. The celebrant and ministers arriving at the middle, make a genuflection; the deacon goes to the left of the celebrant, near the Missal, and the celebrant, placing his hands joined on the altar, and bowing, says with a low but audible voice the prayer, *In spiritu humilitatis*, &c. He then kisses the altar, makes a genuflection, and turning his face towards the people, and his back to the Gospel side, says, *Orate fratres;* he continues what follows in a low voice, and without going round, returns to the middle. The ministers do not answer, *Suscipiat*, &c.

6. The celebrant having said the *Orate fratres*, &c., sings, in a ferial tone, *Oremus: Præceptis salutaribus moniti*, with his hands joined, and the *Pater noster* with his hands extended. At the beginning of the *Pater*, the deacon makes a genuflection, and goes behind the celebrant. The master of ceremonies takes his place by the Missal.

7. At the end of the *Pater noster* the choir answers, *Sed libera nos a malo*, and the celebrant says, in a low voice, *Amen*, continuing to hold his hands extended, and not signing himself with the paten. Then he subjoins in the same tone of voice, *Libera nos quæsumus Domine*, &c. After which, the choir answers, *Amen*.

8. The celebrant makes a genuflection, places the paten under the Host, and holding with his left hand the paten on the altar, with his right raises the Host, so that it may be seen by all; without, however, taking it out of the limits of the corporal. In the mean while the ministers kneel on the platform; they do not raise the lower part of the celebrant's chasuble; the Blessed

Sacrament is not incensed. One of the acolytes sounds the clapper.

9. Whilst the celebrant lays the Host on the paten, the ministers rise, go to his side, and with him make a genuflection. Then the deacon uncovers the chalice, the celebrant takes the Host, divides it as usual into three parts, without making the sign of the cross, or saying any thing, and places the smallest part in the chalice.

10. The deacon having covered the chalice, the celebrant, with the ministers, make a genuflection. The ministers change places, and make another genuflection. Then the celebrant, omitting the *Agnus Dei* and the two first prayers before the communion, says only the third, which begins, *Perceptio corporis*, &c., holding his hands joined on the altar; when he has finished the prayer, he makes a genuflection with the ministers, and rising says, *Panem cœlestem*, then takes the paten and Host, and communicates, having previously said, as usual, *Domine non sum dignus.*

11. After the communion of the sacred body, the sub-deacon uncovers the chalice, the celebrant and the ministers make a genuflection, the fragments are collected and put into the chalice by the celebrant, who, without saying any thing, or making the sign of the cross, consumes the wine with the consecrated particle, the ministers in the mean time bowing profoundly.

12. One of the acolytes carries the cruets to the altar; the sub-deacon gives the wine and water to the celebrant, who takes the usual ablutions without saying any thing. In the mean time the clergy sit down, and put out their candles.

13. After the ablution, the ministers change places, making a genuflection as they pass by the middle; the

sub-deacon goes to the Missal, and the deacon to the side-table; where, having taken off the large stole, and put on the folded chasuble, he returns to the platform at the right of the celebrant; who, having taken the last ablution, says in the middle, with a low voice, with his head inclined, and with his hands joined before his breast, the prayer, *Quod ore sumpsimus.* The sub-deacon, as usual, wipes the chalice, and covers it with the veil, which one of the acolytes must have brought to the altar, and carries it to the side-table, making a genuflection to the cross as he passes by the middle; then he returns to the left of the celebrant, and closes the Missal.

14. The signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the celebrant and the ministers bow to the cross, go down to the foot of the altar, make a genuflection, together with the master of ceremonies, and the acolytes who do not carry the candlesticks; and having bowed to the clergy, put on their caps and go to the sacristy, where they take off the sacred vestments.

15. The sacred ministers having left the sanctuary, Vespers are recited as yesterday. In the mean time, the censer-bearers remove from the altar the book-stand with the Missal, and the towel, so that it be left quite bare, with no other ornament than the cross and the six candlesticks. They carry every thing to the sacristy.

16. After Vespers, the clergy make a genuflection to the cross, and return to the sacristy. Then the candles on the altar are extinguished.

CHAPTER VIII.

HOLY SATURDAY.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. AT a convenient and proper time, the church is adorned with white and precious ornaments. The high altar is prepared as on the greatest solemnities. The relic-cases may be placed between the candlesticks, when the ministers put on white vestments. A white altar-veil should be under another of violet color, which is to be removed only before the beginning of Mass; at that time, also, the carpet should be placed on the platform and steps of the altar, which, during the first part of the sacred office, should be left bare.

2. The lamps of the church should be so fixed as to be easily lighted at the proper time. The images of the church should be kept covered till the beginning of the litany. The tabernacle should have a white canopy under another of violet color, which latter ought to be removed, when the violet veil is taken away from the front of the altar.

3. In the sacristy, the sacred vestments of violet color for the ministers, viz., a cope, stole, cincture, alb, and amice for the celebrant; two folded chasubles, with two maniples, a stole, two cinctures, albs, and amices for the ministers. Under the same, or in any other place, the usual white vestments for the celebrant and the ministers. The censer with the incense-boat, the vase for the

holy water with the sprinkle, a plate with five large grains of incense, the processional cross, the candlesticks with white candles for the acolytes.

4. At the baptismal font, every thing should be cleaned; any water remaining there ought to be put into the piscina. A table is to be placed near it, and covered with a linen cloth; on it the vessels containing the oil of catechumens, and the sacred chrism in a plate; a vessel with water, and a basin; a towel on a plate; some slices of bread and lemon, likewise on a plate; some cotton on another plate; an empty vessel for holy water, with the sprinkle.

If it is customary to distribute among the people the water blessed on this day, a large vessel might be prepared and adorned before the baptismal font, and filled with water, which is, in that case, blessed; before the oils are mixed with the water, the baptismal fonts are filled with part of the water blessed in the large vessel, and then the oils are put into the water contained in the baptismal fonts, not into that contained in the large vessel. Some small vessels ought to be prepared to take the water from the large vessel, to put it into the fonts.

5. The bench of the ministers must be adorned as on the greatest solemnities, and covered with a violet cloth, which is removed when the ministers change their vestments. On this second cloth is to be placed the violet chasuble and maniple for the celebrant, also another violet maniple for the deacon, and a cap for the subdeacon.

6. At the Gospel side, if there is a pulpit, the *Exultet* should be sung there; if not, a book-stand must be prepared; and either the pulpit or book-stand must be

covered with a white veil, and a cushion placed on it for the *Exultet.* On the same side should be a stand for the paschal candle, and there also near the altar the paschal candle itself; also a stand for the triple candle, and on the Epistle side a book-stand uncovered for the prophecies.

7. On the side-table, every thing necessary for High Mass; the burse and veil of the chalice, and over them the white veil, which must be covered with another violet veil. Near the table, three violet cushions for the ministers during the litany.

8. In the porch, or if the church have none, in any other convenient place, a table covered with a white linen cloth, and on it a white dalmatic, stole, and maniple for the deacon, a violet maniple for the sub-deacon, a Missal, a plate containing a small candle, and matches to light it.

9. A large chafing-pan, with pieces of dry wood so arranged that fire may be easily lighted, which must be done before the ceremony, and be struck from a flint; near it, tongs to put the new fire into the censer.

10. Near the table, the triple candle on its rod, adorned with flowers, at the place the stock of the candle is connected with the rod. The candle is to be made so as to have one common stock, out of which proceed three branches, disposed in a triangular form, at the same distance from each other.

Article II.

From the Benediction of the New Fire to the Exultet.

1. The sacred ministers being vested as in chap. iv., with this difference only, that they do not wear their

maniples, and the signal being given by the master of ceremonies, the sub-deacon takes the processional cross, and the procession for the benediction of the new fire is arranged in the following order: first, three acolytes; the one who is in the middle carries the vessel with holy water, and the sprinkle; the one at the right carries the plate with the five grains of incense, and the one at the left carries the censer without fire, and the boat with incense, and the small spoon within. The sub-deacon follows, carrying the cross; after him the clergy, two by two; lastly, the celebrant, with the deacon at his left. The latter, with all the clergy, must have their heads uncovered. As they pass before the cross of the high altar, they all make a genuflection, with the exception of the cross-bearer and the celebrant; the latter only bows to the cross.

2. When the procession arrives at the porch, the sub-deacon places himself by the table, turning his back to the door, or to the walls of the church, holding the cross, with the image of the crucifix turned towards the celebrant. The clergy divide into two lines, on each side of the sub-deacon, so that the highest in dignity amongst them may be nearest to the celebrant, who places himself opposite the cross, with the deacon at his right. The deacon receives the cap from the celebrant, kissing his hand and the cap, and assists him in raising the border of his cope when he makes the sign of the cross, or uses the sprinkle or the censer, and turning the leaves of the book.

3. The first acolyte having laid on the table the vase with holy water, takes the Missal, and holds it open before the celebrant. The two other acolytes stand at the right of the deacon, but a little behind him,

and the master of ceremonies at the left of the celebrant.

4. All being so arranged, the celebrant, with his hands joined, says, in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the three prayers that follow, for the benediction of the new fire, which is to be made before any other. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 12th April, 1755.) At the end of each prayer the clergy answer, *Amen*.

5. Then the acolyte who holds the plate with the grains of incense comes before the celebrant, who says the fourth prayer for the blessing of the five grains of incense; and in the mean while the censer-bearer puts some of the new fire into the censer, and returns to his place.

6. After the fourth prayer, the first acolyte shuts the book, and having placed it on the table, takes the vase with holy water, and joins the other acolytes. The celebrant puts incense as usual into the censer, and blesses it, saying, *Ab illo benedicaris*, &c. Then the deacon, having received from the first acolyte the sprinkle, kisses it, and gives it to the celebrant, kissing his hand; the celebrant thrice sprinkles, first the five grains of incense, then the fire, saying, *Asperges me*, without the Psalm and *Gloria Patri*, and having received the censer, incenses likewise, first the five grains, then the fire.

7. After the incensing, the first acolyte leaves the holy-water vase on the table, and with one of the matches prepared for that purpose lights the small candle from the new fire; the second acolyte laying the plate with the five grains of incense on the table, together with the second master of ceremonies, assists the deacon to take off his violet vestments, and put on the

white, and carries the maniple to the sub-deacon, who puts it on. Then he takes again the plate with the five grains, and returns to the right of the censer-bearer.

8. The deacon having put on the white vestments, goes to the right of the celebrant, to assist at the blessing of the incense for the procession and the *Exultet*, which is performed as usual. Then he takes the triple candle with both his hands, and at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, the procession advances in the following order:

9. First the censer-bearer, slowly moving his censer, and at his right the second acolyte, who carries the five grains of incense; the sub-deacon follows with the cross; then the clergy, two by two; after them the deacon, carrying the triple candle, having at his left the first acolyte, with the lighted candle; last of all, the celebrant, with his hands joined, and near him the master of ceremonies; all walk with their heads uncovered, the celebrant alone excepted.

10. During the procession, an acolyte carries the cap and the violet vestments of the deacon to the bench of the ministers, and the other things to the sacristy.

11. As the celebrant enters the church, the second master of ceremonies gives a signal to the clergy to stop; and the deacon bends the rod of the triple candle towards the first acolyte, who lights one of the three candles; then the deacon raises the rod, and bends one knee, and all the clergy do the same, the cross-bearer excepted; the celebrant uncovers his head before he makes the genuflection. The deacon sings *Lumen Christi*, in such a tone of voice that it may be raised a tone higher twice, and the clergy answer, *Deo gratias*. Then they all rise, and the procession continues to ad-

vance. When they reach the middle of the church, the same ceremony is again performed; and it is repeated the third time before the steps of the altar.

12. After the *Deo gratias* has been answered for the third time by the clergy, they all go to their places. On arriving before the altar, the censer-bearer stops at the Gospel side, the acolyte, with the grains of incense, at the Epistle side, and the cross-bearer at the right of the censer-bearer. The first acolyte having extinguished the small candle, receives the triple candle from the deacon, and places himself at the left of the second acolyte; and the deacon, retiring a little towards the Gospel side, and turning from his right side, makes room for the celebrant, who goes up to the platform, and stands at the Epistle corner.

Article III.

From the Exultet to the Prophecies.

1. The celebrant, on arriving at the Epistle side, turns towards the altar; the second master of ceremonies gives the Missal to the deacon, who, kneeling on the platform, without saying *Munda cor meum*, asks as usual the blessing of the celebrant, who gives it, saying as usual, *Domine sit in corde tuo*, &c., but instead of saying *Evangelium suum*, says, *Suum paschale præconium*, making the usual sign of the cross, but without giving his hand to be kissed.

2. The deacon having received the blessing, goes down to the foot of the altar, between the cross-bearer and the acolyte who carries the triple candle, where, having made a genuflection with the acolytes (the cross-bearer should not make it), and bowed to the clergy,

they go, one after the other, to the place prepared at the Gospel side, and place themselves in the following order: the deacon in the middle, having at his right the sub-deacon, who turns the image of the crucifix towards the celebrant and the censer-bearer; and at his left hand having the acolyte with the triple candle, and the acolyte with the grains of incense. The master of ceremonies places himself behind the deacon, who, with all the others, are turned towards the book.

3. When they have arrived at the book-stand, and placed themselves in the order already mentioned, the deacon lays the book upon it, and opens it; then, without making the sign of the cross on himself, and without saying *Dominus vobiscum*, he incenses it as for the Gospel, and, with his hands joined, he sings the *Exultet;* during which the clergy remain standing, as also the celebrant, who turns towards the deacon.

4. The deacon having said the words, *Curvat imperia;* stops, the clergy sit down, but not the celebrant, and the acolyte who holds the plate with the five grains approaches the deacon, who, assisted by the master of ceremonies, goes with them to place the five grains in the paschal candle (which one of the acolytes holds), in the form of a cross, in this order, 1 which being done, they return to their place, 4 2 5 and the clergy rise. The acolyte places the 3 plate in which were the five grains on the side-table, and takes a small candle not lighted.

5. The deacon having returned to the Missal, continues the *Exultet*, and having sung the words *Rutilans ignis accendit*, the clergy sit down; he goes with the acolyte that carries the triple candle, to light the paschal

candle with one of them, and returns to continue the *Exultet*. The clergy rise.

6. The acolyte places the triple candle on the stand prepared for it near the altar, and the paschal candle is fixed in its candlestick, so that the cross be turned towards the celebrant.

7. The deacon having sung the words, *Apis mater eduxit*, stops a while, and the first acolyte lights his small candle, either from the paschal candle or from the triple candle, and lights the lamps of the sanctuary; the deacon continues the *Exultet*, and bows at the name of the Pope.

8. After the *Exultet*, the clergy sit down; the sub-deacon leaves the cross at its place, the deacon immediately shuts the Missal, and leaves it on the stand, and both, with their hands joined, make a genuflection in the middle, and go to the bench—the celebrant also going thither at the same time; the latter, assisted by the sub-deacon, takes off his cope, and puts on the violet maniple and chasuble.

9. The deacon, assisted by the first acolyte, takes off his white vestments, and puts on violet; then the celebrant and the ministers go by the shortest way to the Epistle side, as for the *Introit*. The second master of ceremonies prepares, in the middle of the sanctuary, a book-stand without any covering, and a Missal on it for the prophecies.

Article IV.

From the Prophecies to the Benediction of the Baptismal Font.

1. When the ministers have arrived at the Epistle side, the second master of ceremonies invites ths clergy-

man who is to sing the first prophecy, as in chapter V., except that before he leaves the book-stand with the clergyman, he waits till the deacon has said, *Flectamus genua* (when there is no *Tract*), then they make a genuflection with all the clergy, and rise at the word *Levate.* Whilst the celebrant sings the prayer, the second master of ceremonies invites him who is to sing the second prophecy, doing as has been already said; and so likewise for all the other prophecies.

2. The clergy sit down whilst the prophecies are sung, rise at the prayers; the celebrant reads the prophecies in a low voice, and sings the prayers in a ferial tone, with his hands extended, the ministers standing behind him, one after the other; and the deacon, immediately after the celebrant has said, *Oremus*, sings, *Flectamus genua*, and the sub-deacon, *Levate.* After the prayers, the ministers go up near the celebrant, as for the *Introit.*

3. After the last prophecy and prayer, the second master of ceremonies removes from the middle of the sanctuary the book-stand with the Missal, and the celebrant, with the ministers, go by the shortest way to the bench, where the celebrant, assisted by the ministers, takes off his maniple and chasuble, and puts on the cope; and the ministers take off their maniples.

Article V.

*From the beginning of the Benediction of the Baptismal Font, to the beginning of Mass.**

1. The first acolyte, soon after the celebrant has put on his cope, takes the paschal candle from its candlestick,

* This article has been added by the translator.

and goes with it to the middle of the sanctuary; likewise the sub-deacon takes the cross, and places himself immediately before the first acolyte; the celebrant, with the deacon on his left, goes before the steps of the altar, in the middle. At a signal given by the master of ceremonies, the first acolyte makes a genuflection, turns towards the people, and walks slowly to the baptismal fonts, the sub-deacon carrying the cross, without making the genuflection, follows him; then the singers; and after them the rest of the clergy make a genuflection in the middle, and follow them; last of all, the celebrant, with his head covered, and the deacon at his left, accompanied by the master of ceremonies. On the way, the tract, *Sicut cervus*, is sung by the choir. Arrived at the font, the cross-bearer stops at one side, near the door or entry, the first acolyte at his left; the clergy divide into two lines, those in inferior orders remaining near the door, and those in higher dignity near the font. Before the celebrant enters, he stops, takes off his cap, and the second acolyte bringing, and holding before him the Missal, he says, in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, &c., and the following prayer. Then he goes, with the deacon at his left, to the font, and places himself so as to be turned towards the cross, and the clergy. The second acolyte follows him with the Missal, and having opened it, the celebrant begins the blessing of the font, saying, in a ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, with the following prayers; in concluding it, he sings, *Per omnia sæcula*, in the tone of the ferial preface, with what follows; after the words, *Gratiam de Spiritu Sancto*, the celebrant divides the water in form of a cross, the deacon holding up the side of his cope, and offering him

the towel to wipe his hands, which one of the acolytes should have brought on a plate.

2. After the words, *Inficiendo corrumpat*, the celebrant touches the water with his right hand, which he afterwards wipes, as before. At the words, *Per Deum ✠ vivum*, *Per Deum ✠ verum*, *Per Deum ✠ sanctum*, he makes the sign of the cross three times on the water. After the words *Super te ferebatur*, he divides the water with his hand, and throws some of it out, towards the four parts of the world, in this form, 1 after the words *Benignus adspira*, he breathes thrice 3 4 upon the water, in the form of a cross. At the 2 words *Mentibus efficaces*, the first acolyte carries the paschal candle to the deacon, that he may give it to the celebrant, who dips it into the water at three different times, but each successive time he dips it deeper, and sings, one tone higher, the words *Descendat in hanc.* Then breathing thrice upon the water in this form ✠ he goes on with the Preface. After the words *Fœcundet effectu*, the paschal candle is taken out of the water, wiped, and given back to the first acolyte, who goes to his place near the cross-bearer. The celebrant continues what follows in the tone of the Preface, as far as the words *Per Dominum*, exclusively, which, with the following words, he only recites; the minister answers, *Amen.* Then the people are sprinkled with water taken out of the font by a priest in surplice and stole. If the water is blessed in another vessel, the font is filled with it; but if it is blessed in the font, some of it is taken out to satisfy the devotion of the people, and to bless the houses and other places.

3. After this, the celebrant receives from the deacon the oil of the catechumens, and pours some of it into

the baptismal font, in form of a cross, saying, *Sanctificetur*, &c. The ministers answer, *Amen*. Then he pours the chrism into it, in the same manner, saying, *Infusio*, &c.; the ministers answering also, *Amen*. Lastly, he pours the oil and chrism both together into the water, in the form of a cross, saying, *Commixtio*, &c.; and the ministers answer, *Amen*. Then he mingles the oil with the water, and with his hand spreads it all over the font. This done, two acolytes bring every thing necessary to wash the hands, also the slices of bread and lemon prepared on a plate; the celebrant, assisted by the deacon, washes and wipes his hands.

4. If any are to be baptized, they are solemnly baptized by the celebrant, as in the ritual. After the blessing of the font, they return to the high altar in the same order in which they came. Arrived there, the first acolyte makes a genuflection, replaces the paschal candle on its candlestick, and goes to the side-table, near which the cross-bearer leaves the cross, and goes to the bench. The clergy having made a genuflection in the middle, go to their places and sit down. The celebrant having bowed, and the deacon having made a genuflection, go to the bench, where the celebrant, assisted by the ministers, takes off his cope, who also take off their chasubles, and having bowed to the clergy, go to the altar. In the mean while, the acolytes should place on the border of the platform three violet cushions at equal distance; the celebrant and the ministers, having made the usual reverence to the cross, prostrate themselves, laying their hands and their heads on them. The clergy kneel down. The acolytes carry the chasubles to the sacristy.

5. Two chanters, kneeling before two stools, behind

the ministers, in the middle of the choir, begin to sing the Litany of the Saints, and the clergy repeat the same words sung by the chanters. The master of ceremonies and acolytes kneel by the steps of the altar.

6. Whilst the chanters sing *Peccatores*, which, with the rest of the Litany, ought to be sung very slow, to give time to prepare what is necessary, the celebrant, the ministers, and the acolytes, at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, rise; the ministers receive their caps from him, and having made a genuflection (the celebrant bowing) to the cross, and bowed to the clergy, go to the sacristy; the acolytes walking first, then the ministers, and lastly the celebrant, one after another, with their heads covered; there they take off their violet stoles, and put on the white vestments.

7. After the ministers have left the sanctuary, the acolytes appointed for it remove the cushions and the violet altar-veil and canopy from the altar, the violet veil from the side-table, and the violet cloth from the bench of the ministers; they also spread the carpet on the platform and steps of the altar, light the candles on the altar, and uncover the images in the church. In the sacristy, the acolytes light their candles, and the censer-bearer puts fire into the censer.

Article VI.

The Mass.

1. When the chanters have come to the *Agnus Dei*, or thereabouts, according to the greater or less distance of the sacristy from the altar, the ministers, preceded by the acolytes with their candles lighted, walk towards the altar, so as to be in the sanctuary at the end of

Exaudi nos; which, being repeated by the choir, the clergy rise, the chanters go to the desk, to sing the *Kyrie* in a slow and solemn manner, as the ministers enter the sanctuary (because to-day the *Kyrie* takes the place of the *Introit*, which the singers should not begin to sing before the ministers have arrived at the sanctuary). (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 14 Apr., 1753.) The ministers bow, as usual, to the clergy, make a genuflection (the celebrant profoundly bowing) to the cross, and Mass is begun.

2. Mass to-day goes on as usual, till the end of the celebrant's communion inclusively, with the following exceptions: the psalm, *Judica me*, with the *Gloria Patri*, is resumed. After the incensing there is no *Introit*, but the sacred ministers say, as usual, *Kyrie eleison.*

3. The celebrant having sung the words, *Gloria in excelsis Deo*, the first acolyte rings the bell by the side-table, the second rings another in the sacristy, and the large bells of the church are also rung, whilst the sacred ministers continue the *Gloria* to its end. At the same time the organ is played, as usual.

4. The celebrant having given the blessing to the sub-deacon after the Epistle, sings thrice, *Alleluia*, raising every time his voice one tone higher; and the choir repeats it after each time in the same tone, the ministers standing by the celebrant, as for the *Introit*, who, having read the *Tract*, goes to read the Gospel, as usual.

5. The acolytes, at the Gospel, go as usual with the ministers, but they do not carry their candlesticks. The *Credo* is not said, neither the *Offertory*, nor the *Agnus Dei;* the *Pax* is not given.

6. The deacon, having covered the chalice after the

celebrant has put into it the small particle of the consecrated Host, immediately changes place with the sub-deacon.

7. According to the decree of the S. Con. of Rites, 22 Mar., 1806, communion may be given to the faithful at this Mass, by which in parochial churches they fulfil the paschal precept. If it be given, the deacon and sub-deacon do not exchange places, and every thing for the communion should be done as on Holy Thursday.

8. After the communion of the celebrant, the censer-bearer goes to prepare the censer, puts fire into it, and the choir, instead of the *Communio*, sing *Alleluia*, and the psalm, *Laudate Dominum*, &c.

9. The celebrant, having taken the last ablution, goes to the Epistle side, where he recites in a low voice the *Alleluia*, and the psalm, *Laudate Dominum*, alternately with the ministers who are near him, placed in the same position as at the *Introit*. The choir having repeated the anthem *Alleluia*, the celebrant intones *Vespere autem Sabbati*, and, with the ministers, continues it to the end, in a low voice, whilst the choir sing it.

10. Whilst the chanters begin the *Magnificat*, the celebrant and the ministers make the sign of the cross, and go to the middle of the altar, the sub-deacon at the left and the deacon at the right of the celebrant, where he presents the incense. Then the altar is incensed, as usual at Vespers.

11. The deacon having incensed the celebrant, goes to incense the clergy, as usual. In the mean time, the celebrant and the sub-deacon remain at the Epistle side, as at the *Introit*. After the clergy, the sub-deacon is incensed by the deacon, for which purpose the sub-deacon turns towards him, without, however, turning his

back to the celebrant. Then the deacon goes to the place where he usually stands at the *Introit*, and turns to the censer-bearer, who incenses him; he also incenses the acolytes and the people. Afterwards he takes the censer to the sacristy, and returns to the altar.

12. The antiphon, *Vespere autem*, &c., being repeated by the choir, the celebrant goes to the middle, the ministers following him behind, one after the other, kisses the altar, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and finishes the Mass as usual. The deacon sings *Benedicamus Domino*, *Alleluia*, *Alleluia*.

PART V.

Ceremonies for Mass and Vespers.

SOLEMNLY CELEBRATED BY THE BISHOP,

OR IN HIS PRESENCE.

CHAPTER I.

SOLEMN PONTIFICAL VESPERS.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. THE altar is to be covered with a long veil, which should not hang down before it, but only on the two sides. In the middle of the altar are placed the sacred vestments for the Bishop—viz., the amice, alb, cincture, stole, and cope; on the Epistle side, the ornamented mitre; on that of the Gospel, the golden mitre; on the highest step near the Epistle corner, the crosier, and near the vestments, on the Gospel side, on a small plate, the pectoral cross and the ring.

2. On the side-table, the two candlesticks for the acolytes, the Missal for the prayers to be sung by the Bishop, and the hand-candlestick.

3. In the middle of the sanctuary, two or four stools for the cope-bearers, according to their number.

4. In the sacristy, a cope for the assistant priest; two

dalmatics, stoles, albs, cinctures, and amices for the assistant deacons; two or four copes for the chanters, according to their number; and a sufficient number of copes, chasubles, and dalmatics, with amices, albs, cinctures, &c., for the clergy who assist at Vespers, dressed according to their order.

5. In a convenient place, the censer with the incense-boat, a chafing-dish with fire and tongs.

Article II.

From the entrance of the Bishop and Clergy into the Church, to the Beginning of Vespers.

1. The Bishop, preceded by the clergy, two by two, goes from the sacristy to the church, the assistant priest walking immediately before him, and the two deacons at his side; having adored the Blessed Sacrament, he goes up to his seat. There he sits for a short time; then rising, he takes off his cape,* and puts on the amice, alb, cincture, pectoral cross, stole, and cope; he sits down, the first deacon puts the mitre on his head, and the assistant priest the ring on his finger.

2. Being thus vested, and having sat for a while, his mitre is taken off by the second deacon. The Bishop then rises, and with him all the clergy; he turns towards the altar, and says, secretly, *Pater* and *Ave;* then, making the sign of the cross on himself, he sings, *Deus in adjutorium meum intende.* Whilst the choir sings *Gloria Patri*, the Bishop and all the clergy bow towards the altar.

* The technical name is *mozetta.* It is regarded as a mark of jurisdiction, and is therefore only to be worn by the diocesan, unless in Councils.

Article III.

From the Beginning to the End of Vespers.

1. In the mean while, two or four chanters in copes, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies, make the usual genuflection and bows, go to the Bishop's seat, and the first among them gives the tone of the first antiphon to the Bishop, who repeats the same words aloud; then having made the accustomed bows and genuflection, they all return to their places. At the beginning of the first psalm, the Bishop and the clergy sit down, and the first deacon puts the lighter mitre on the Bishop.

2. At the *Gloria Patri*, the bishop, with his mitre on, bows towards the altar, and the clergy do the same, taking off their caps.

3. Two of the singers, in copes, attended by the master of ceremonies, go to give the tone of the antiphons as follows: the second antiphon to the first assistant deacon, the third to the assistant priest, the fourth to the clergyman who occupies the first place in the sanctuary, and the fifth to the second assistant deacon. Those to whom the tone is given, stand, and with them, if they be assistants at the bishop's seat, all the other assistants; but if not, all the clergy who are in the sanctuary.

4. All the psalms and antiphons being ended, the first chanter, in cope, or the sub-deacon, attended by the master of ceremonies, goes to the place where the epistle is usually sung, and, turning towards the bishop, sings the chapter; the bishop, with his mitre on, and all the clergy, with their heads uncovered, stand whilst it is sung. The choir having answered *Deo gratias*, the same one who intoned the antiphon, accompanied by the

master of ceremonies, goes to the bishop, who is still standing with his mitre on, to intone the hymn; immediately after, the mitre is taken from the bishop, who repeats the same words of the hymn, and the hymn is continued by the choir.

At the hymns, *Veni Creator*, or *Ave Maris Stella*, all the clergy kneel whilst the bishop intones them; and the bishop himself, after the intonation, kneels either at the faldstool before the middle of the altar, or on a cushion near his seat. All rise after the first strophe.

5. After the hymn, the verses having been sung by the four singers in copes, and answered by the choir, the antiphon of the *Magnificat* is intoned in the same manner as the hymn, to the bishop, who is still standing; having repeated the first words, he sits down, receives the precious mitre, attended by the assistant priest, puts the incense into the censer, and blesses it. In the mean while, two acolytes go to each side of the altar, and fold in the middle the veil that covers it, so as to leave the half of it near the front uncovered.

6. As the choir begins the *Magnificat*, the bishop rises, with his mitre on; all the assistants likewise rise; the bishop makes the sign of the cross, receives in his left hand the crosier from the assistant priest, and walks to the altar between the deacons, who raise his cope on each side; when arrived before the lowest step, he gives the crosier to the assistant priest; the second deacon takes off his mitre, he bows to the cross (the others making a genuflection), and all go up to the altar, where the bishop, having received the censer from the assistant priest, incenses the cross and the altar; the deacons who are at his side, raising the border of his cope, and reciting the *Magnificat* alternately with him.

7. The bishop, having incensed the altar, goes to the middle, says the *Gloria Patri*, bowing to the cross, goes below the lowest step, makes a reverence to the altar, receives the mitre and crosier, and returns to his seat, where he is incensed by the assistant priest; then the deacon takes off his mitre, and the bishop, holding the crosier with both his hands, remains standing till the end of *Sicut erat in principio*, after the *Magnificat*.

8. As soon as the bishop leaves the altar, the acolytes spread the veil over the altar.

9. After the bishop has been incensed by the assistant priest, the clergy are incensed by the first of the four singers in copes, and the singer, the master of ceremonies, the acolytes, and the people, by the censer-bearer, as it has been said elsewhere.

The *Magnificat* is to be sung, so as to give time for the incensing.

10. Whilst the choir repeats the antiphon of the *Magnificat*, the bishop gives up his crosier, sits down and receives the mitre. In the mean time, the master of ceremonies accompanies the acolytes, carrying the candlesticks with lighted candles, and the four chanters in copes, to the bishop's seat. After the antiphon, the bishop leaves off the mitre, rises, and the assistant priest holding the book before him, he sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, with his hands joined, during which all the clergy stand. While the bishop says *Dominus vobiscum*, after the prayer, the four chanters in copes, the acolytes, and master of ceremonies bow to him, and go to the middle of the sanctuary; where, having made a genuflection, the acolytes go to the side-table, and the chanters sing the *Benedicamus Domino*.

11. Whilst the choir answer, *Deo gratias*, the bishop

sits down, receives the mitre, rises, sings *Sit nomen Domini*, &c., and gives the benediction, as usual, from his seat, if he can be seen thence by the people; otherwise he gives it from the altar.

If the celebrant be an archbishop, the cross is brought before him, he bows profoundly to it, and gives the benediction without mitre.

Indulgences are never published at Vespers.

12. After Vespers, the bishop puts off the sacred robes as usual.

13. The pontifical Vespers are sung in the manner heretofore described, when the bishop is to celebrate a pontifical Mass the next day, or on the great solemnities of the year, such, at least, as Easter, Christmas, the Feast of the Patron Saint of the Diocese, the Titular of the Church, &c.

14. On other occasions, Vespers are celebrated with less solemnity; then all the clergy do not put on the sacred vestments; four of them only are dressed in copes; the antiphons are intoned, first to the bishop, then to the other clergymen in the sanctuary, according to their dignity and order.

CHAPTER II.

Solemn Vespers in presence of the Bishop.

1. When the bishop does not officiate at Vespers, he is dressed as usual, with his rochet and cope: he sits at his seat, having two clergymen in surplices at his side;

he puts incense into the censer and blesses it; he is incensed immediately after the celebrant, by the assistant priest; and after the *Benedicamus Domino* and *Deo gratias*, the bishop gives the solemn blessing from his seat, if he can be seen thence by the people, otherwise from the altar.

1. The officiating priest is dressed in cope, and sits in the usual place on the epistle side. Before he begins *Deus in adjutorium*, he asks the bishop's leave by bowing to him; every time he goes from the altar to his seat, or from it to the altar, he bows to the bishop; he does not bless the incense, or put it into the censer; he is incensed only with two swings, and not at his seat, but at the epistle corner near the altar.

3. There may be four, or two chanters, in copes, who sit on their stools as usual, in the middle of the sanctuary; two give the tone of the first antiphon, and that of the *Magnificat*, to the officiating priest; the others to the other clergymen, according to their dignity and order; and sing the verses, *Benedicamus Domino*, &c. The two first amongst them accompany the celebrant to the altar for the incensing of it, raising his cope on each side; and the first of them incenses the celebrant and the clergy, including the three other singers.

4. The acolytes carry their candlesticks as usual in other Vespers.

5. The officiating priest, with the two or four chanters in cope, the acolytes, and master of ceremonies, must go to the sanctuary before the bishop, sit at their places till he enters it; as he enters, preceded by the rest of the clergy, they rise, and whilst he kneels, they kneel also.

CHAPTER III.

COMPLINS, WHEN THE BISHOP OFFICIATES.

1. For Complin, the bishop is dressed in rochet, cope, and stole; he sits in his usual place.

2. When the chanter says, *Jube Domne*, &c., he answers, *Noctem quietam;* after the Lesson, he says, *Adjutorium nostrum;* then the *Pater*, the confession, and absolution, &c., *Deus in adjutorium;* all of which are to be said standing. At the beginning of the psalms, he takes his seat.

3. All the rest is said by the choir and by the priest who should have officiated if the bishop were not present, with the exception of the prayer and of the *Benedicat et custodiat nos*, &c., which are to be sung by the bishop.

4. When the bishop, although present at Complins, does not officiate, nothing is to be observed in particular, except that the officiating priest, at the words, *Indulgentiam et absolutionem*, and at the *Benedicat et custodiat*, bows profoundly to the bishop.

CHAPTER IV.

MATINS, WHEN THE BISHOP OFFICIATES.

1. The bishop is dressed in rochet and cope. He is seated at his usual place; no clergymen sit by him. He is attended by the master of ceremonies.

2. Whilst the *Pater*, *Ave*, and *Credo* are said, all stand; the *Credo* being ended, the bishop making with his thumb the sign of the cross on his lips, sings, *Domine labia*, and making the sign of the cross on himself as usual, he sings, *Deus in adjutorium*. He remains standing during the *Invitatorium*, and the Psalm, *Venite exultemus;* at the words, *Venite adoremus et procidamus*, he kneels, then rises, and remains standing during the hymn, which he intones only in case he is to celebrate Mass, one of the chanters having intoned it. As the first psalm begins, the bishop and all the clergy take their seats.

3. The antiphons are intoned by the chanters in surplices to the clergy, beginning with those who are first in dignity and order. At the *Gloria Patri*, all take off their caps and bow.

4. At the versicles, which are sung by two of the chanters, after the third antiphon of each nocturn, all rise. The bishop says, in a loud voice, the words, *Pater noster;* the rest of the Lord's Prayer is said secretly, as far as the words *et ne nos*, which are sung by the bishop, who also sings the absolution, and the words of the blessing, after the *Jube Domne benedicere*. The bishop does not rise to give the second and third blessing at each nocturn, but remains sitting.

5. After the verses of each nocturn, the second master of ceremonies goes to invite, with a bow, the clergyman who is to sing the Lesson, beginning by those who are inferior in order or dignity. He accompanies him to the middle of the sanctuary before the desk prepared for the purpose; there they make a genuflection to the altar, bow first to the bishop, then to the clergy on each side of the sanctuary; after the absolution for the first

Lesson of each nocturn, or the response for the two others, the clergyman who is to sing the Lesson bows profoundly towards the bishop, and sings, *Jube Domne benedicere.* After the words of the blessing, he sings the Lesson, at the end of which he kneels to the altar, on one knee, saying, *Tu autem Domine*, then bows profoundly to the bishop, who makes the sign of the cross towards him, and after having bowed to the clergy as before, he returns to his place. The same is done for all the other Lessons. The seventh and eighth Lessons are sung by those who are to officiate at Mass as assistant deacons, at the side of the bishop. Whilst the text of the Gospel is sung, at the seventh Lesson, the bishop and all the clergy should stand.

6. The ninth Lesson is sung by the bishop at his seat, standing, with his face turned towards the altar. Before he begins it, the two assistant deacons, and one of the acolytes with the hand-candlestick, and another with the book, go to him; the two former place themselves at his side, and the latter before him. The bishop, bowing profoundly towards the altar, sings, *Jube Domine*, not *Jube Domne;* all the clergy rise, and answer, *Amen.* Then the bishop sings the Lesson, during which the clergy remain standing. At the end of it, the bishop, bowing profoundly towards the altar, says, *Tu autem Domine*, &c. The choir having answered, *Deo gratias*, the tone of *Te Deum* is given to the bishop, who repeats the same words, and the choir continue the hymn. At the words, *Te ergo quæsumus*, the bishop and all the clergy kneel down.

CHAPTER V.

LAUDS, WHEN THE BISHOP OFFICIATES.

1. When the bishop has officiated at Matins, it is proper that he should officiate at Lauds also. Every thing is to be done as directed for Vespers, when the bishop is not to celebrate Mass the next day. Soon after the *Te Deum*, the bishop, at his seat, puts on all the sacred vestments, as for Vespers, and four or six clergymen put on copes.

2. The bishop begins, *Deus in adjutorium*, making the sign of the cross on himself. The antiphons are intoned as for Vespers, and every thing else is done as directed for the same.

3. At the *Benedictus*, every thing is done as at the *Magnificat;* and after the *Benedicamus* and *Deo gratias*, the solemn blessing is likewise given by the bishop.

CHAPTER VI.

SOLEMN PONTIFICAL MASS.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

There should be in Cathedral churches a place or chapel to answer the purpose of that which was formerly called the *Secretarium*. It should have an altar, the bishop's seat, seats for all the clergy, and a side-table.

On the altar of this chapel, all the pontifical vestments should be prepared; and the copes, chasubles, dalmatics, and tunics for the clergy, at their own seats. On the side-table, the bishop's sandals and stockings, the candlesticks for the acolytes, the incense-boat and censer, the book, and hand-candlestick, &c., should be placed; to this chapel the bishop and all the clergy ought to go immediately after having adored the Blessed Sacrament. There, the bishop having begun Tierce, should make his preparation for Mass; the clergy should put on the vestments suitable to their order and dignity; the bishop should put on his sacred vestments, finish Tierce, and, after having taken off the cope, put on the dalmatic and chasuble; and lastly, being preceded by the clergy, he should go in procession from this place to the high altar.

Wherever there is not such a convenient place, every thing is to be done in the sanctuary; we shall, therefore, in the present chapter, adapt the instructions to the ordinary construction of our churches.

1. The altar is to be prepared with the best and richest ornaments; three large candlesticks, with candles on each side of the cross, and a seventh one behind it. This seventh candlestick and candle is to be placed behind the cross, only when the bishop of the diocese celebrates a solemn Pontifical Mass. Between the candlesticks, relic-cases of a suitable size may be placed.

2. On the altar, the pontifical vestments, of suitable color, should be placed, one over the other—viz., immediately on the altar-cloth in the middle, the chasuble, then the dalmatic, tunic, cope, stole, cincture, alb, and over all the others the amice. On the Epistle side, near the vestments, the pectoral cross and the ring should be

on a plate; on the Gospel side, the gloves on another plate. On the Gospel side the precious mitre, and the golden mitre on the Epistle side, standing against the candlesticks, and the crosier at the same corner, against the angle formed by the altar and the pilaster near it.

3. The Bishop's seat is to be on the Gospel side, against the side-walls of the sanctuary; it should be on a platform, raised by three steps above the floor of the sanctuary; the platform should be large enough to admit two wooden stools without backs, decently painted, for the two assistant deacons, on each side of the Bishop's chair, which should have a high back and convenient arms, and be covered with silk cloth; there should be a third stool of the same form with the others, near that of the second assistant deacon, but projecting more towards the front of the platform, for the assistant priest. Over the Bishop's chair there should be a canopy, with hangings all around; the walls behind the chair, and the assistants' stools, should likewise be covered with hangings, which ought to be of a color suitable to the festival.

4. The side-table ought to be placed on the Epistle side of the altar, and covered all around and on the top with white linen cloth. It should be sufficiently large.

On this table there should be two candlesticks with candles for the acolytes, the chalice with its purifier, paten, host, pall, and burse, containing the corporal; the Missal, for the Epistle and Gospel; behind the chalice, standing against the wall, the cruets on a plate, the basin and ewer for washing the Bishop's hands, two or three fine towels on a plate, the book containing the canon, the Missal for the Bishop, with his maniple in it, the hand-candlestick, the Bishop's sandals and stockings

on a plate, covered with a veil. Over the chalice, the long veil, the two extremities of which ought to hang down on each side of the table.

5. The bench of the ministers should be on the Epistle side, below the table, and against the side-walls of the sanctuary. It should be covered with a silk cloth. On it the maniples of the deacon and sub-deacon should be placed.

6. A sufficient number of seats for the clergy should be placed on each side of the sanctuary; they ought not to be the usual chairs, but benches with a back, covered with drapery.

7. There should be a number of acolytes in surplices, no fewer than eight. The first of them carries the book, and holds it when the Bishop reads out of it; but when he sings, the book must be held by the assistant priest. The second holds the hand-candlestick whenever the Bishop reads or sings any thing, either at his seat or at the altar. The third acolyte, who, besides the surplice, wears a cope, is to carry the crosier. The fourth, if he is not dressed in cope, wears on his surplice a long veil, hanging from his neck before him, in order to cover his hands with it when he holds the mitre. The fifth is the censer-bearer. The sixth and the seventh are to carry the candlesticks. The eighth carries the apron, which is a rich cloth that is spread on the lap of the Bishop when seated.

8. The faldstool is a kind of folding seat, sufficiently large, the four corners of which project about a foot above the cushion, when laid on it; these corners are connected together only on the two sides, six inches above the cushion, with two cross-pieces, which, as well as the projecting corners, should be of gilt metal. Thus

it remains open behind and before. It is covered with a silk cloth of the color of the vestments, which hangs down to the ground on the four sides. It is used as a praying desk for the Bishop, and as a chair, when, for ordinations or other ceremonies, he is to sit at the altar. Two cushions covered with the same cloth are to be prepared—one on the seat and another before it, to kneel or stand on. It is to be placed in the middle of the sanctuary, whenever the Bishop is to kneel.

9. We suppose in the following instructions that the Cathedral church has no *Secretarium* or chapel, as mentioned in the beginning of this chapter; but in case it should have one, the Bishop and clergy dress and sing Tierce in it.

10. In the sacristy the following things are to be prepared: a cope for the assistant priest, who puts it on over his surplice, without stole; two amices, albs, cinctures, and dalmatics for the two assistant deacons. They wear neither stoles nor maniples. Also two amices, albs, and cinctures for the deacon and sub-deacon; also a stole for the deacon. Their maniples are to be placed on their seats in the sanctuary. The clergy are to be dressed in sacred vestments. Some of them, the first in dignity, wear copes over their surplices; some, chasubles over their albs; no maniples or stoles are to be used by them. The clergymen who are not priests are to be dressed in dalmatics over their albs, but without stoles and maniples. A sufficient number of these vestments ought to be prepared in the sacristy. In order to have a sufficient number of clergymen in towns and cities, where there are several congregations besides that of the Cathedral, the service ought to be performed in those earlier than usual, so that all the clergy may go

to the Cathedral. This custom is observed in other countries, and it is conformable to what was practised in the remotest antiquity. The Bishops can and ought to introduce it into this country.

Article II.

Of the Vesting of the Clergy and of the Bishop.

1. The clergy put on their vestments in the sacristy, before the Bishop arrives. Those who are to officiate as assistant priest and assistant deacons, preceded by the inferior clergy, who wear no sacred vestments, all in surplices, accompany the Bishop from his house to the sacristy, if there be no street between it and the church; otherwise, from the room where he has put on the rochet and cope, and, two by two, walk before him; lastly, the deacon and sub-deacon; the assistant priest walks alone immediately before the Bishop, and the two assistant deacons at each side of him.

2. The Bishop having arrived at the sacristy, and bowed to the cross, the clergy go to the sanctuary, first those in surplices, then those in dalmatics, chasubles, and copes. The assistant priest goes immediately before the Bishop, and the two assistant deacons on each side of him. As the clergy arrive at the middle of the sanctuary, they make a genuflection, bow to one another, and go to their places on each side of the sanctuary; the inferior clergy towards the railing, and those in superior grades towards the altar. The deacon and sub-deacon go to their bench. The Bishop bows to the cross, and kneels for a while at the faldstool. All the clergy kneel and rise with him. After a short prayer he goes to his seat, having at his side the assistant deacons in surplices.

3. The Bishop, standing with his head uncovered, turning towards the altar, says secretly, *Pater* and *Ave*. Then making the sign of the cross on himself, he sings, *Deus in adjutorium*, &c.; then he intones the hymn, *Nunc Sancte*, &c.; one of the singers intones the antiphon, then the psalm, *Legem pone*. Which having been begun, the Bishop and the clergy sit down and put on their caps; the assistant priest and deacons alone remaining standing by the Bishop.

4. The acolytes bring the book and the hand-candlestick to the Bishop; the book-bearer kneels down. The Bishop reads the anthem *Ne reminiscaris*, and the Psalms for the preparation of Mass. The sub-deacon, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies, brings from the table the plate with the sandals and stockings covered with the veil; six acolytes follow him and surround the Bishop's seat; the sub-deacon, assisted by the second master of ceremonies, takes off the Bishop's shoes and puts on him the stockings and sandals; afterwards the sub-deacon and acolytes retire to their places.

5. The Psalms having been read, and the anthem, *Ne reminiscaris*, repeated by the Bishop, he rises, with his head uncovered, and turning towards the altar, says, *Kyrie eleison*, with the verse and prayers that follow. Then he takes off the cope, saying the appropriate prayer. The acolytes bring the basin, ewer, and towels, and the Bishop washes his hands, saying the prayer, *Da, Domine*. The assistant priest takes off the Bishop's ring before he washes his hands, and puts it on after he has washed them, and presents him the towel to wipe them.

6. When the Bishop rises, after having read the Psalms, the second master of ceremonies goes up to the altar,

followed by the acolytes, who, one after another, make first a genuflection before the lower step, go up, receive severally one of the vestments, make another genuflection on the platform, go down and place themselves in a line, beginning at the Gospel side. When all have received the vestments, that is, the amice, alb, cincture, pectoral cross, stole, cope, and mitre, at a signal given by the master of ceremonies, they make a genuflection, and walk one after another in a line to the Bishop's seat. When the first who carries the amice is arrived before the last step of the Bishop's seat, he and all the others stop one behind another. The second master of ceremonies stops at the left hand of the first acolyte, who, having given the amice, gives his place to the next, goes to his right hand; they both bow to the Bishop, and the first acolyte returns to his place; the others do in like manner.

7. Whilst the Bishop is washing his hands, the deacon and sub-deacon go to the throne, and as soon as he has washed his hands, the assistant deacon and priest go down, where, having with the deacon and sub-deacon bowed to the Bishop, the assistant priest and deacons go to put on their vestments in the sacristy; the deacon goes to the Bishop's right, and the sub-deacon to the left. The deacon receives from the acolytes all the vestments, with the assistance of the sub-deacon, that is, the amice, alb, cincture, pectoral cross, stole, cope, and mitre. After which the Bishop takes his seat. The deacon and sub-deacon go down, and having made a bow to the Bishop, together with the assistant priest and deacons, retire to their bench; the assistant priest and deacons go up to their usual places, and seat themselves.

8. When all the Psalms, with the anthem, have been sung, which ought to be done slowly, to give sufficient time for the vesting of the Bishop, the second master of ceremonies accompanies the sub-deacon to the place where the Epistle is sung, and the latter turning towards the Bishop, sings the chapter. The bishop, before the sub-deacon begins it, rises with his mitre on; the clergy likewise rise with their heads uncovered. The sub-deacon having sung the chapter, returns to his place. The chanters chant the responses and verses; which, being ended, the acolytes with the candlestick, and those with the book and hand-candlestick, go to the Bishop's seat; the second assistant deacon takes off the mitre, and the Bishop sings the *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer from the book, which the assistant priest holds before him.

9. The singers having sung *Benedicamus Domino*, and the choir answered *Deo gratias*, the deacon and sub-deacon return to the Bishop's side, exchanging places with the two assistant deacons; they take off the cope from the Bishop, and give it to an acolyte, who carries it to the sacristy. In the mean while, the second master of ceremonies gives to the acolytes, in the same manner as in n. 6, the tunic, dalmatic, the plate with the gloves, the chasuble, and the crosier, and the plate with the ring. The acolytes, with the book and the candle, go to the Bishop's seat, and the acolytes with the vestments also go at a signal given by the master of ceremonies.

10. The deacon and sub-deacon vest the Bishop, who reads the prayers appointed for each vestment.

If he be an Archbishop, after he has put on the chasuble, a sub-deacon brings from the altar the pallium,

gives it to the deacon, who, assisted by the sub-deacon, puts it on him.

Then the Bishop sits, and the deacon puts on him the mitre, and the assistant priest the ring on his finger.

11. The Bishop having thus put on all the sacred vestments, the deacon and sub-deacon retire to their bench, and give their places to the two assistant deacons.

If Tierce has been sung in the chapel, or *Secretarium*, the censer-bearer comes to the Bishop with the censer and boat, gives it to the assistant priest, and the Bishop puts the incense into the censer and blesses it. Then they go to the high altar in procession, in the following order: the censer-bearer first, the cross-bearer in sub-deacon's dress, between the acolytes carrying the candlesticks, the clergy in surplices, those in dalmatics, the priests in chasuble, those in cope, all two by two. Then the sub-deacon, who is to officiate at Mass, carrying before his breast the Missal closed, with the Bishop's maniple in it; after him the deacon at the left of the assistant priest, in cope; last, the Bishop between the two assistant deacons, with the crosier in his left, and blessing the people with his right hand. After the Bishop follow the acolytes, who carry the cross, mitre, book, hand-candlestick, &c., two by two.

As the clergy arrive in the sanctuary, they make a genuflection in the middle, bow to one another, and go to their places. The Bishop goes to the altar and begins Mass, as will be said hereafter.

If the pontiff be an Archbishop, the archiepiscopal cross is carried by the cross-bearer in sub-deacon's dress, immediately before the clergy in sacred vestments.

Article III.

The Pontifical Mass.

1. The Bishop rises, takes the crosier in his left hand, and with his right blesses the clergy (who arise and bow to him) and the people as he goes to the altar between the two assistant deacons. The deacon and sub-deacon put on their maniples. The second master of ceremonies gives the Missal with the Bishop's maniple in it to the sub-deacon, and all go to the altar.

2. The Bishop having arrived before the lower step, in the middle, the two assistant deacons give place to the assistant priest, who goes to the Bishop's right, and to the deacon, who goes to the left, and place themselves at a little distance behind them, the sub-deacon goes to the left of the deacon, and remains a little behind him, giving the book to the master of ceremonies. The acolytes who carry the crosier and the mitre, place themselves a little behind the two assistant deacons. The Bishop, after his mitre has been taken off by the deacon, makes a profound bow to the cross, and all the others make a genuflection. Then the Bishop begins the Confession, &c., *In nomine Patris*, &c.; at the words *Et vos fratres*, he turns himself towards the ministers, and they, at the words *Tibi, pater*, &c., bow to the Bishop.

After the prayer, *Absolutionem et remissionem*, the sub-deacon taking the maniple out of the Missal, gives it to the bishop to kiss, and puts it on his arm.

4. Whilst the Bishop makes the confession, all the clergy in sacred vestments standing, make it alternately, two by two. The inferior clergy kneel down during the confession. After it, the Bishop goes up to the

altar as usual, but the assistant priest passes to his left, and the deacon to his right hand. The sub-deacon at the Gospel side goes up with the Missal, which he with the assistant priest present open to the Bishop, who, after having kissed the altar, touching it with both his hands, kisses it at the beginning of the Gospel to be read on that day.

5. The incense is then put into the censer and blessed, the deacon offering the boat, and presenting the censer to the Bishop, who incenses the altar, as usual; and after it, standing with his mitre on, by the corner of the altar, at the Gospel side, he is incensed by the deacon; then, having received the crosier, and made from the same place a reverence to the cross, he goes, between the two assistant deacons, to his seat. The deacon and sub-deacon go to their bench on the Epistle side. The Bishop, standing, without mitre, making the sign of the cross on himself, reads the *Introit*, from the book which the acolyte holds open before him; another acolyte holding near him the hand-candlestick, and the assistant deacons and priests turning the leaves of the book when necessary. Then he says, alternately with them, *Kyrie eleison*. The same is said likewise by the deacon and sub-deacon, and by all the clergy, two by two, alternately. Afterwards the Bishop sits down, and the first deacon puts on him the lighter mitre and the apron. All the clergy also sit at their places.

6. After the *Kyrie* is sung by the choir, all rise, and the Bishop, without mitre, turned towards the altar, sings, *Gloria in excelsis Deo*, the assistant priest holding the book before him, whilst he sings those words; but whilst he reads the rest, the book is held by the acolyte. The same is to be observed on all other occa-

sions, viz.: when the Bishop sings, the assistant priest holds the book; but when he reads, the acolyte holds it, and the assistant deacons point out what is to be read, and turn the leaves of the book. The assistants say with the Bishop, in a low voice, the rest of the Angelical Hymn, likewise the deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy.

The hymn having been recited, the Bishop and the clergy sit down, and the deacon puts the lighter mitre on the Bishop, and the apron on his lap. The choir having sung the *Gloria*, the deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre and the apron; all rise; and the Bishop, turned towards the people, sings, *Pax vobis*, and the prayer; after which all sit down, and the deacon puts on the Bishop the mitre, and the apron on his lap.

7. The sub-deacon having received, from the second master of ceremonies, the Missal, and holding it on his breast, goes, attended by the same, to the middle, makes a genuflection to the altar, bows to the Bishop and to the clergy, goes to the Epistle side, and, turned towards the Bishop, sings the Epistle; after it, he makes the usual genuflection and bow, goes to the Bishop, kneels before him, lays the book on his knees, and kisses the Bishop's hand, placed on the book, and having received his blessing, returns to his place, where he gives the book to the master of ceremonies.

8. After the sub-deacon has kissed the Bishop's hand, the acolytes, with the book and the hand-candlestick, go before him; and the Bishop sitting, with his mitre on, reads the Epistle, Tract, and says the *Munda cor meum*, &c., and reads the Gospel, with his hands joined, the assistant deacons remaining standing, and answering, *Et cum spiritu tuo*, and *Laus tibi Christe.*

9. Towards the end of this, the deacon having received the Missal from the second master of ceremonies, carries it raised before him to the altar, bowing to the Bishop and to the clergy, and making a genuflection before the lower step, places it in the middle of the altar, goes down, makes a genuflection, goes to the Bishop, kisses his hand, returns to the altar, kneels on the lower step, says, in a low voice, *Munda cor meum*, rises, goes up to take the Missal, comes down, and places himself below the lower step a little towards the Epistle side, with the sub-deacon, who, at the same time, goes to his left, they being exactly in the middle, where they wait. In the mean time, the censer-bearer having gone to the Bishop's seat, with the censer and boat, the incense is put in and blessed, as usual. The censer-bearer, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies, goes behind the deacon; the master of ceremonies behind the sub-deacon; and the two acolytes, with their candlesticks and lighted candles, behind them. At a signal given by the master of ceremonies, they all make a genuflection, bow to the Bishop and to the clergy, and go to the Bishop's seat, walking in the order in which they are, the deacon and sub-deacon first. Having arrived before the Bishop's seat, they all kneel and remain so; the deacon saying, *Jube Domne, benedicere*, receives the blessing, *Dominus sit*, &c., and kisses the Bishop's hand. Then they all rise, and go to the place where the Gospel is to be sung.

10. The master of ceremonies walks first, after him the censer-bearer, then the two acolytes with the candlesticks, the sub-deacon, and last the deacon. The sub-deacon places himself with his face towards the Epistle side, between the two acolytes, and holds the book rest-

ing on his head. The deacon turns towards the book, and the master of ceremonies and censer-bearer are at his side. The deacon sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Sequentia*, &c., making the sign of the cross on the book and himself, &c., incenses the book thrice, towards the middle, the right and the left of the same. The Bishop, at the beginning of the Gospel, rises, without mitre, receives the crosier, which he keeps between both his hands, makes the sign of the cross on himself, bows at the names of Jesus and Mary, kisses the book, which, after the Gospel, is brought to him by the sub-deacon, and says, *Per evangelica dicta*, &c.; and lastly is incensed by the assistant priest. The deacon and all the others return to their places, making the usual genuflections and bows.

11. If the Bishop preach, he should do it from his seat. But should this be so placed as to prevent the people from seeing or hearing him, the faldstool should be placed on the platform of the altar in the middle, and five other seats, viz., three at the right, and two at the left of the faldstool. The assistant priest sits at his right; near the assistant priest, the deacon of the Gospel; and near him, the first assistant deacon. At the left of the Bishop, the sub-deacon, and near him the second assistant deacon. If the Bishop should not preach, a priest may do it from the pulpit; but first he should go to kiss the Bishop's hand, ask the blessing, saying, *Jube Domne, benedicere*, and ask the Indulgences. After the sermon, the deacon of the Gospel sings the *Confiteor*, near the Bishop, if the Bishop has preached at the altar, otherwise before the lowest step of the Bishop's seat; the assistant priest publishes the Indulgences, and the Bishop, standing without mitre,

says, *Precibus et meritis*, then puts on his mitre, and gives the benediction. In case the sermon has been delivered by a priest, the preacher publishes the Indulgences in place of the assistant priest.

12. After the benediction, the Bishop returns to his seat; or if there has been no sermon, after having been incensed, he intones, *Credo in unum Deum*, the assistant priest holding the book till these words are sung; then he gives it to the acolyte, who remains there with the other, holding the hand-candlestick till the Bishop and the assistants have finished the *Credo*, which is also recited by the deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy, two by two, at their respective places. At the words *Et incarnatus*, they all kneel. The Creed being said, they all sit down, and the first assistant deacon puts the lighter mitre on the Bishop. When the choir sings the words *Et incarnatus*, the Bishop, with his mitre on, and all the clergy in sacred vestments, uncovering their heads, bow profoundly towards the altar; the rest of the clergy kneel. However, on Christmas day, and on the festival of the Annunciation, the Bishop and all the clergy kneel.

13. After the *Incarnatus* has been sung, the deacon and the sub-deacon rise; the deacon, attended by the second master of ceremonies, goes to the side-table, receives the burse from the master of ceremonies, and, having made the usual bows and genuflections, carries it to the altar, extends the corporal in the middle of it, places the burse on the Epistle side, makes a genuflection, and returns to his place. Then he and the sub-deacon sit down.

14. Towards the end of the Creed all the ministers rise; the Bishop rises when it is ended, the mitre and

the apron having been previously taken from him. Then standing, he sings *Dominus vobiscum* and *Oremus*, and reads the *Offertory* out of the book, which is held before him by one of the acolytes, attended by the other, who holds the hand-candlestick. Afterwards he sits down, the deacon puts on him the precious mitre, the assistant priest takes off his ring, and the deacons his gloves. The two acolytes bring him the basin and ewer to wash his hands, and the towel to wipe them; the assistant priest presents one of them, after he has washed his hands, and having wiped them, puts the ring on his finger. Then the assistant priest having received from the master of ceremonies the Missal with its cushion or stand, attended by the same, carries it to the altar, and puts it, opened at the proper place, near the corporal, on the Gospel side, and waits for the Bishop, retiring to the further corner of the same side of the altar.

15. The Bishop having put on the ring, rises, takes the crosier in his left hand, and between the two assistant deacons, followed by the acolytes of the mitre and of the crosier, goes to the altar, blessing on his way the people and the clergy; when he has arrived before the lower step, he lays aside the crosier and puts off the mitre, makes a profound bow to the cross, goes up to the altar, assisted by the deacon of the Gospel at his right, and the assistant priest at his left, kisses the altar in the middle, placing his hands on each side. The clergy sit down. The assistant deacons stand on the second step on each side. The crosier and mitre-bearers stand at a certain distance from the lowest step, behind the two assistant deacons.

16. The sub-deacon, after the Bishop has washed his

hands, goes to the side-table, attended by the second master of ceremonies and acolytes, who put on his shoulders the long veil, with which the chalice and other things on the table were covered, leaving it to hang lower on his right side. The sub-deacon takes, with his left hand, the chalice with the paten, Host, and pall, extends the longest part of the veil over it, places his right hand on the veil and chalice, lest any thing should fall, and thus goes to the altar, followed by the acolyte who carries the cruets with wine and water; when arrived there, at the same time with the Bishop, he places the chalice on the altar at the Epistle side, and removes the veil from it.

17. The deacon receives from the sub-deacon the paten with the Host, kisses it, and gives it to the Bishop, kissing his hand; the Bishop, as usual, raises it before his breast, says, *Suscipe Sancte Pater*, &c., places the Host on the corporal, and the paten under it at his right. In the mean while, the deacon wipes the chalice with the purifier, receives the cruet with the wine from the sub-deacon, who had received it from the acolyte, puts some wine into the chalice, and the sub-deacon, raising the cruet with water a little towards the Bishop, says, *Benedicite, Pater Reverendissime*, and the Bishop having made towards it the sign of the cross, whilst the sub-deacon puts some drops of water into the chalice, says the prayer, *Deus qui humanæ*. Then the deacon gives the chalice to the Bishop, kissing it first, then the Bishop's hand; the Bishop receives it at the knob, with his right hand, and at the foot with his left, and offers it together with the deacon, who, with his left hand, supports the Bishop's elbow, and with his right the foot of the chalice, saying with the Bishop the prayer, *Offerimus tibi*, &c.; after-

wards, the sub-deacon having extended the lower part of the veil hanging on his right on the altar, and put his right hand on it, the deacon gives him the paten, which he covers with a veil, goes down below the steps, and holding the paten raised, remains behind the Bishop till the *Pater* is said.

18. Mass is continued as usual, and after the Bishop has said the words *Benedic hoc sacrificium tuo sancto nomini præparatum*, the censer-bearer goes to the altar; incense is put into the censer, the deacon holding the censer, and saying *Benedicite, Pater Reverendissime;* the Bishop blesses it, saying, *Per intercessionem*, &c.; then having received the censer from the deacon, he incenses the *Oblata*, saying, *Incensum istud*—the cross, saying, *Dirigatur, Domine*—the relics, saying nothing; and continues the other prayers as he incenses the altar; which being done, he gives back the censer to the deacon, saying, *Accendat;* then having received the precious mitre from the first assistant deacon he is incensed, standing at the Epistle corner by the deacon of the Gospel, who incenses the assistant priest, the two assistant deacons, the clergy in the sanctuary, according to their rank and order, lastly the sub-deacon; afterwards he gives back the censer to the censer-bearer, who incenses the deacon, then the master of ceremonies, the acolytes, and the people.

19. After the Bishop is incensed, the first assistant deacon takes off his mitre; he continues Mass as usual, the assistant priest and the acolyte with the hand-candlestick remaining by the Missal. The deacon standing on the second step behind the Bishop, being incensed, remains there till the *Sanctus*, then he goes up to the right of the Bishop, and says it with him and the assistant

priest. Likewise, all the clergy in the sanctuary, two by two, say the *Sanctus* at the same time. After the *Sanctus*, the deacon goes down to the second step behind the Bishop.

20. At the *Sanctus*, four or six acolytes, accompanied by the second master of ceremonies, go from the sacristy to the sanctuary, holding in their hand large candles lighted; when they reach the middle of the sanctuary, they make a genuflection, bow to the clergy at each side of the sanctuary, kneel in a line at a convenient distance from one another; those who are at the Epistle side hold their candle in their right, and those at the Gospel side in their left hand, keeping their arm extended, and the end of the candle resting on the floor. They remain there till after the elevation, unless the Bishop give the communion; in which case they remain kneeling during the communion of the clergy, which is given at the altar, and accompany the Bishop to the railing, where he gives the communion to the people. After the communion, they go back to the sacristy.

21. After the *Sanctus* has been recited by the Bishop and the clergy, all in the sanctuary and in the church kneel down, except the ministers assisting at the altar. When the Bishop says *Quam oblationem*, the deacon goes up to his right during the consecration and elevation, kneels down, raises with his left hand the Bishop's chasuble on his side; after the elevation of the consecrated Host, he rises, uncovers the chalice, kneels again, raises the Bishop's chasuble as before, and after the elevation of the chalice, rises, covers the chalice, and makes a genuflection with the Bishop. The two assistant deacons, the sub-deacon, and the assistant priest remain kneeling at their places during the elevation. The assist-

ant priest with his right hand raises the chasuble of the Bishop on his side during the elevation. The master of ceremonies rings the bell at the elevation, and the censer-bearer incenses thrice the Blessed Sacrament at each elevation.

22. During the elevation, nothing should be sung; but some devout and harmonious tunes may be played on the organ. After the elevation, the choir sings *Benedictus qui venit*, and all rise, and stand until the communion. The celebrant continues Mass as usual; the deacon makes a genuflection and goes to his place behind the Bishop. At the words *Benedicis et præstas nobis*, the deacon goes to the right of the Bishop, makes with him a genuflection and uncovers the chalice; at the words *Per ipsum*, he places two fingers on the foot of the chalice, and after the words *Omnis honor et gloria*, he covers the chalice, makes a genuflection with the Bishop, and goes to his place behind him.

23. At the *Pater Noster*, when the Bishop says *Et dimitte nobis*, the deacon and sub-deacon, having made a genuflection, go up to the altar, the deacon to the right of the Bishop, and the sub-deacon to the right of the deacon; there, the sub-deacon, placing his hand on the altar, the deacon uncovers the paten, receives it from the sub-deacon, cleans it with the purifier, kisses it, and puts it into the Bishop's hand, which he also kisses, whilst the Bishop says, *Libera nos quæsumus*, &c. As the Bishop places the paten under the Host, the deacon uncovers the chalice, makes a genuflection, and rises with the Bishop, who puts the particle of the Host in the chalice; the deacon then covers it, and again makes a genuflection. The sub-deacon having given the paten to the deacon, takes off his veil, gives it to the second

master of ceremonies, and having made a genuflection, returns to his place at the foot of the altar; he does not go up to say the *Agnus Dei*, but he goes to the right of the Bishop, whilst the deacon remains at his left, in place of the assistant priest.

24. The assistant priest and the officiating deacon say the *Agnus Dei*, with the Bishop; the rest of the clergy say it at the same time, at their places. After the *Agnus Dei*, the assistant priest and the deacon make a genuflection, exchange places, and again make a genuflection; the deacon remains near the Missal, and the assistant priest kneels down whilst the celebrant says the prayer, *Domine Jesu Christe qui dixisti;* after which, he rises, kisses the altar at the same time with the Bishop, receives from him the *Pax*, approaching his left cheek to the left cheek of the celebrant, placing his two hands under the celebrant's elbows and answering, *Et cum spiritu tuo.* Then rising, he carries the *Pax* to the clergy, giving it to the first of them on each side of the sanctuary; on returning to the foot of the altar, he gives it to the master of ceremonies, by whom he was accompanied, and goes up to the left of the Bishop. The first assistant deacon, after the assistant priest has received the *Pax*, goes to the Bishop's right, and receives it in the same manner; then the second assistant deacon, the officiating deacon, and lastly the sub-deacon.

When the Bishop is to give communion, after he has received the precious blood, the deacon and sub-deacon at his left, kneel on the platform before the Bishop, who, holding the Sacrament in his hand, gives to each of them the *Pax* immediately before communion, and the communion before the *Confiteor*, which the officiating

deacon sings, having returned to the right of the celebrant.

25. The deacon, after the communion, goes to the right of the Bishop, receives the cruets from the acolyte, serves the wine for the first ablution, and the wine and water for the second, after which he places the purifier on the Bishop's fingers. After the Bishop has taken the first ablution, the assistant priest carries the Missal, on its cushion or stand, from the Gospel to the Epistle side, followed by the acolyte with the candlestick. The deacon puts the mitre on the head of the Bishop, who washes his hands, two acolytes having brought the basin and ewer with water and the towel. The assistant priest takes off his ring, presents him the towel to wipe his hands, and replaces the ring on his finger. Then the officiating deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre. In the mean time, the sub-deacon, having folded the corporal, and put it in the burse, and placed the purifier, paten, pall, and burse on the chalice, carries it to the side-table, and places himself below the lower step behind the deacon, who stands on the middle step, behind the Bishop, who, attended by the assistant priest, and remaining near the Missal, on the Epistle side, reads the communion, goes to the middle, followed by the deacon and sub-deacon, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and finishes Mass as usual. After the last prayer and *Dominus vobiscum*, the Bishop remains turned towards the people, towards whom the deacon also turns, and sings, *Ite, Missa est.* Then both turn to the altar towards the Epistle side. The Bishop having said, *Placeat tibi*, &c., gives the solemn blessing, as usual.

If the celebrant is an archbishop, he gives the blessing without mitre, bowing first to the cross which is held

before him. Then he lays his pallium on the altar, and says, *Initium Sancti Evangelii.*

When the Indulgence has not been already published, in consequence of no sermon having been preached, the assistant priest publishes it as usual, from the Epistle side.

26. The Bishop then takes off his mitre, begins the Gospel of St. John, at the Gospel side, puts on the mitre, takes the crosier in his left hand, and continues the Gospel while going to his seat, where he finishes it.

27. The Gospel being ended, the two assistant deacons give their places to the deacon and sub-deacon, and retire to the minister's bench. The Bishop, having disrobed, washes his hands, and puts on the cape and pectoral cross; then two acolytes bring the book and candle, and the master of ceremonies brings the Bishop's shoes to his seat, who reads the thanksgiving, whilst the acolytes take off his sandals and put on his shoes. Which being done and the thanksgiving being ended, the clergy and Bishop return to the sacristy, and thence the Bishop is accompanied to his house, or to his room, where he puts on his rochet and cape.

CHAPTER VII.

SOLEMN MASS CELEBRATED IN PRESENCE OF THE BISHOP DRESSED IN COPE.

1. On solemn festivals, when the Bishop does not celebrate a Pontifical Mass, it is proper that he should

assist at the divine service in mitre and cope. On such occasions, what follows is to be observed:

2. The Bishop's vestments should be placed on the altar, viz.: amice, alb, cincture, pectoral cross on a plate, stole and cope; two mitres, one on each side, and the crosier.

On the side-table, besides every thing necessary for High Mass, a Missal for the Bishop, the hand-candlestick with a candle, the basin and ewer, and a towel on a plate.

3. The celebrant and ministers go to the church before the Bishop, and seat themselves at the bench, waiting for him.

4. The Bishop, accompanied by the clergy, goes to the church, and having arrived at the middle of the sanctuary, kneels before the faldstool, rises, after having said a short prayer, and with him all the clergy rise. Then, between the two assistant deacons, preceded by the assistant priest, who are all dressed in surplices, he goes to his seat, where he puts on all the vestments before mentioned. Thus vested, with his mitre on, and the crosier in his left hand, he goes to the altar, whither the celebrant and ministers have gone before him.

5. On arriving before the altar, the Bishop takes off his mitre, bows to the cross, the others making a genuflection, and, having the celebrant on his right, the deacon on the right of the celebrant, the assistant priest on his left, and the sub-deacon at the left of the assistant priest, and the two assistant deacons behind the celebrant and the assistant priest, and the acolytes, with the mitre and crosier, behind the assistant deacon, he makes the Confession, saying, as usual, *In nomine Patris*, &c.,

the celebrant and the ministers answering. After the prayer, *Indulgentiam absolutionem*, the Bishop makes a profound bow, receives the mitre and the crosier from the first assistant deacon, and returns to his seat; the celebrant having bowed to the Bishop, goes to the middle and continues Mass.

6. The Bishop, on arriving at his seat, gives the crosier into the hands of the assistant priest, sits with his mitre on, and the censer-bearer, presenting the censer and giving the boat to the assistant priest, the Bishop puts incense into the censer, and blesses it, as usual. The celebrant incenses the cross and altar, as usual; then he is incensed with two swings only, by the deacon, who gives the censer to the censer-bearer, by whom it is carried to the Bishop's seat, and given to the assistant priest, who is below the lowest step, where he incenses the Bishop with three swings. Afterwards, the Bishop's mitre is taken off by the second assistant deacon, and the Missal and candlestick are brought by the acolytes before the Bishop, who commences the *Introit*, when the celebrant begins to read it at the altar. After the *Introit*, the Bishop says the *Kyrie* alternately with the assistants and the priests who are present at Mass in the sanctuary dressed in surplices. They go before the Bishop's seat, placing themselves in a semicircle; after having bowed to him, they say the *Kyrie* and *Gloria* with the Bishop; at the end of the *Kyrie*, they bow and return to their places. The Bishop, as they bow, gives them his blessing. If the choir has not finished singing the *Kyrie*, the Bishop sits, receives the mitre, and the assistants also sit and cover their heads; otherwise, he remains standing. At the *Gloria*, he rises without his mitre; the book is not held before him dur-

ing the *Gloria*, but he says it by heart with his assistants, standing. He sits, with his mitre on, after the *Gloria*. During the *Dominus vobiscum* and the Collects, the Bishop stands with his head uncovered. After the Collects, he sits with his mitre on. The sub-deacon, turned towards the Bishop, sings the Epistle, and, having sung it, goes to kiss the Bishop's hand, and to receive his blessing. Then the acolytes come to him with the Missal and candlestick, and the Bishop reads the Epistle and Tract, says, *Munda cor meum*, and reads the Gospel.

7. A little before the Bishop finishes reading the Gospel, the deacon, having placed the Missal on the middle of the altar, goes to kiss the Bishop's hand; he then returns to the altar, and says, kneeling, *Munda cor meum*. In the mean time, the censer-bearer carries the censer to the Bishop's seat, and the incense is put in, and blessed by the Bishop, as usual. Afterwards, the deacon and sub-deacon, with the master of ceremonies, censer-bearer, and acolytes, go to the Bishop's seat, as has been said elsewhere, and kneel down; the deacon asks and receives the blessing, and sings the Gospel, as usual. After it, the sub-deacon carries the book to the Bishop to be kissed; and the assistant priest incenses the Bishop. The celebrant is not incensed.

If there is a sermon, the preacher asks the Bishop's blessing.

8. At the *Credo*, the Bishop rises, the priests go before his seat, as at the *Kyrie* and *Gloria*, say it with him, and kneel also with him, at the words *Incarnatus est*. The book is not carried to the Bishop, who says the *Credo* by heart. At the Offertory, the Bishop, standing, with his head uncovered, reads it out of the

Missal, which the acolyte holds open before him; and then sits, with the mitre on. The sub-deacon carries the cruet with water to the Bishop, and says, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater;* the Bishop then blesses the water. Afterwards he puts incense into the censer and blesses it. The celebrant incenses the oblation, the cross, and the altar, as usual, then he is incensed twice only by the deacon, who carries the censer to the Bishop's seat; and the assistant priest, coming down to the foot of the altar, receives the censer, incenses the Bishop thrice, returns the censer to the deacon, who incenses the assistant priest, the first and second assistant deacons, and afterwards the clergy in the sanctuary, and the sub-deacon.

9. At the Preface, the Bishop stands with his head uncovered; he recites the *Sanctus* by heart, with the assistants and the priests, who go before his seat at the *Kyrie* and *Gloria*. After the *Sanctus*, the Bishop goes to the middle of the sanctuary, between the two assistant deacons, and followed by the acolytes carrying the crosier and mitre, and there kneels at the faldstool, till after the elevation; he then returns to his seat, and stands till after the communion of the priest.

10. At the *Agnus Dei*, the priests go to the Bishop's seat, and say it with him; then they return to their places. The assistant priest goes to the right of the celebrant, and, with the usual ceremonies, receives from him the *Pax*, and goes to give it to the Bishop, who gives it to the first and second assistant deacons. The celebrant gives it also to the deacon. But the sub-deacon receives it from the assistant priest, and then gives it to the first clergyman on each side of the sanctuary, as in other High Masses. If the celebrant gives

communion, the Bishop kneels as at the elevation, after communion; the Bishop reads the communion in the Missal, and sits with his mitre on.

11. At the *Dominus vobiscum*, the Bishop and the clergy rise, and stand during the Collects. The celebrant does not give the blessing, but the Bishop gives it solemnly, as usual; after which the celebrant publishes the Indulgence, and finishes Mass, as usual.

12. After Mass, the celebrant, with the deacon and sub-deacon, and the acolytes with their candlesticks, having made a genuflection to the cross, and bowed to the Bishop and clergy, go to the sacristy. The Bishop takes off the sacred vestments, puts on the cape and pectoral cross, and having prayed a short time before the altar, retires, accompanied by the clergy.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF SOLEMN MASS

CELEBRATED IN PRESENCE OF THE BISHOP NOT DRESSED IN COPE AND MITRE, BUT ONLY IN ROCHET AND CAPE.

1. Every thing is to be observed as in the preceding chapter, with the following exceptions:

2. The Bishop is incensed only at the Offertory.

3. The celebrant is incensed, as usual, at the beginning of Mass, after the Gospel, and at the Offertory, twice only on each occasion.

4. The Bishop may go from the sacristy to the sanc-

tuary, at the same time with the celebrant, but behind him, immediately preceded by the assistant priest, and having at his side the two assistant deacons; he may likewise return to the sacristy behind the celebrant in the same manner.

CHAPTER IX.

VESPERS FOR THE DEAD,

CELEBRATED BY THE BISHOP.

1. The Bishop at these Vespers wears the cape, or the pontifical mantle,* over his rochet. He sits in his stall in the choir, or on his seat, but without assistant priests and deacons.

2. Vespers are begun with the antiphon, *Placebo Domino*, sung by the choir, during which the Bishop and the clergy stand with their heads uncovered. When they begin the Psalm, *Dilexi*, they all sit and put on their caps. When the *Magnificat* is begun, they all take them off, and rise. They sit down again, whilst the choir repeats the antiphon after the *Magnificat;* after which the Bishop says, in an audible voice, *Pater noster*, which is secretly continued and finished by all, kneeling.

3. At the same time, two acolytes, with their candlesticks and lighted candles, and a third one with the book, come before the Bishop, who says, still kneeling,

* The *cappa magna* is a full robe with a train.

Et ne nos inducas, &c., with the other verses, as in the Breviary. When he says *Dominus vobiscum*, he rises, and says the prayer, *Requiem æternam.* Then the chanters sing *Requiescant in pace.*

4. Should the Bishop sit on the usual place, at the *Pater Noster*, &c., he kneels before the faldstool, and there finishes the prayers. The same thing is to be observed of Matins.

CHAPTER X.

MATINS AND LAUDS FOR THE DEAD,

CELEBRATED BY THE BISHOP.

1. The Bishop at these Matins is dressed, and sits as at Vespers.

2. Having sat for a short time, the Bishop rises, and with him all the clergy. The choir begins the *Invitatorium: Regem cui omnia vivunt*, &c., during which, and the Psalm, *Venite exultemus*, all stand. When the Psalm of the first nocturn is begun, they all sit and put on their caps. After the verses of the first nocturn, they all rise, with their heads uncovered, and say in silence the *Pater Noster;* after which, the Bishop and the clergy sit down. The Lessons are sung by the clergy in the middle of the sanctuary at the desk. The same is done in the other nocturns.

3. After the ninth response, Lauds are said, the Bishop and the clergy sitting. When the *Benedictus* is begun, they all rise, with their heads uncovered. Whilst the

antiphon is repeated after it, they sit and cover their heads.

4. After the antiphon, they rise, the acolytes go with the candlesticks and the book before the Bishop, and every thing is done as at Vespers.

CHAPTER XI.

SOLEMN PONTIFICAL MASS FOR THE DEAD.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. THE altar should be dressed in the plainest manner, having on it the cross and six candlesticks with candles of brown wax; before it a black antipendium. The canopy on the tabernacle, if there is the Blessed Sacrament, should be of purple color.

It is contrary to the Rubrics to put about the altar vestments, stools, or books, any representation of death, or white crosses.*

2. On the side-table, two candlesticks with candles of brown wax; the basin and ewer, and a plate with some towels; the Missal, a vase with holy water and a sprinkle, the chalice with every thing necessary for Mass.

3. On the bench of the ministers, the maniples for the deacon and sub-deacon.

---

* Cæremoniale Episc., chap. ii., lib. ii.

4. On the altar, the Bishop's vestments, viz., a black chasuble, dalmatic, tunic, stole, and maniple, cincture, alb, and amice. The pectoral cross and ring on a plate; and a plain white mitre.

The Bishop does not use sandals, gloves, or crosier at this Mass.

The tabernacle may be covered with purple, or not covered.

5. In the sacristy, a black cope for the assistant priest; two black dalmatics, two cinctures, albs, and amices for the two assistant deacons; also a black dalmatic and stole, with a cincture, alb, and amice for the officiating deacon; and a tunic, cincture, alb, and amice for the sub-deacon. Moreover, as many black copes, chasubles, dalmatics, and tunics, with amices, albs, and cinctures, as may be required for the clergy, who assist in sacred vestments at the Pontifical Mass. Lastly, a cope for the Bishop, to be taken to him by an acolyte after Mass.

6. A black carpet and four candlesticks must be kept ready, in a convenient place, to be extended before the Bishop's seat after Mass, for the absolution, unless a cenotaph or monument be erected in the middle of the church; in this case, the processional cross is to be prepared at the Epistle side.

Article II.

From the Beginning to the End of Mass.

1. The Bishop goes to the sacristy as usual.

2. The clergy should put on their respective vestments before the Bishop arrives at the sacristy.

3. They all go from the sacristy to the sanctuary.

4. The Bishop having arrived at his seat, attended by the deacon and sub-deacon, and the assistant priest (the assistant deacon remaining at the minister's bench whilst the Bishop is dressing), does not say the anthem, *Ne reminiscaris*, nor the Psalms which follow; but he takes off his cape, reading, from the book which is held open before him by an acolyte, the prayer, *Exue*, &c.; he then washes his hands, puts on the vestments prepared on the altar, as in Art. 1, n. 4, saying the respective prayers, and having received the mitre, sits for a short time; the assistant deacons go to his side, and the deacon and sub-deacon go to put on their maniples.

At this Mass, whenever the ministers give any thing to the celebrant, or receive it from him, they do not kiss it, nor the celebrant's hand.

During the Collects, the clergy in the sanctuary, with the exception of the Bishop's assistants, kneel down, as also from the *Sanctus* till the *Pater Noster*.

5. The Bishop being vested, he and the assistants and ministers go to the altar, and take their places as directed above. The Psalm, *Judica*, is not said. After the Confession, he says the usual prayers, goes up to the altar with the assistant priest, deacon, and sub-deacon; he then kisses the altar, but not the Missal; neither does he incense the cross or the altar; having kissed the altar, he returns to his seat between the assistant deacons; and the deacon and sub-deacon go to their seat.

6. The Bishop having returned to his seat, takes off the mitre; the acolyte holding the book before him, he reads the *Introit*, and says the *Kyrie*, alternately with his assistants, which last is said likewise by the deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy in the sanctuary.

7. After the choir has finished singing the *Kyrie*, the

Bishop rising, his head being uncovered, sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the Collect. He then sits with his mitre on. The sub-deacon sings the Epistle as usual; but after it, he does not go to the Bishop to receive his blessing. The Bishop, after the sub-deacon has sung the Epistle, reads it, with the Tract and *Sequentia;* says, *Munda cor meum*, &c., but not *Jube Domne*, &c., and reads the Gospel. The deacon and sub-deacon sit at their bench. About the end of the *Sequentia*, the deacon carries the book to the altar, and without going to kiss the Bishop's hand, kneeling on the highest step, says, *Munda cor meum*, &c. The sub-deacon, at the same time, places himself before the lowest step, so as to be at the left of the deacon when he goes down; two acolytes place themselves behind them, without candlesticks. At a signal given by the master of ceremonies, they go to sing the Gospel. The book is not incensed before the Gospel is sung, nor the celebrant after it; nor does the sub-deacon carry the book to the Bishop; who, immediately after the Gospel, sings *Dominus vobiscum* and *Oremus*, reads the *Offertory*, and washes his hands.

8. The Bishop having washed his hands, goes to the altar, and every thing is done as before, except, 1st, the sub-deacon, before he puts water into the chalice, does not say *Benedicite*, &c., and the Bishop does not bless it; 2dly, the sub-deacon does not put on the veil, nor hold the paten; 3dly, after having incensed the altar, the Bishop alone is incensed by the deacon.

9. At the *Sanctus*, four acolytes go from the sacristy into the sanctuary with four torches, as directed above; and remain kneeling till after the communion.

10. The sub-deacon, at the elevation, kneels on the

lowest step of the altar at the Epistle side, and incenses the Blessed Sacrament.

11. The *Pax* is not given.

12. At the end of Mass, the blessing is not given. The deacon, turned towards the altar, sings, *Requiescant in pace.* The Bishop, having said, *Placeat tibi*, begins, at the Gospel side, the Gospel of St. John, receives the mitre, and continues the Gospel in going to his seat.

Article III.

The Absolution after Mass.

1. The Bishop, having finished the Gospel at his seat, takes off the mitre, maniple, chasuble, dalmatic and tunic, and puts on the cope previously brought by one of the acolytes from the sacristy, then receives the mitre, and sits down. The deacon and sub-deacon take off their maniples before they help the Bishop to disrobe. If a funeral oration is to be delivered, the preacher, dressed in his cassock, without surplice, after a short prayer before the altar, without asking the Bishop's blessing, but having made a profound reverence to him, goes into the pulpit, which is to be dressed with black hangings; and having there made again a profound bow to the Bishop, he makes the sign of the cross, and begins his discourse.

2. After the funeral oration, or if there be none, after Mass, a large black cloth is spread before the Bishop's seat, and four candlesticks placed at its corners. In the mean time, the Bishop sits down, and the choir sings *Libera me*, &c.; whilst this response is repeated, two acolytes, one with the censer and boat, the other with the holy-water vase, go to the Bishop, who, whilst the

assistant priest holds the boat, puts incense into the censer and blesses it; then he rises, his head being uncovered, and after the last *Kyrie* has been sung, he says the words *Pater noster*, in an audible voice; continues the prayer in silence, and having received the sprinkle from the assistant priest, sprinkles the black cloth three times; he then gives him back the sprinkle and receives the censer, and incenses the cloth thrice also; the assistant deacons holding, during all this time, the extremities of his cope on each side. Two acolytes, with candlesticks and lighted candles, now come to the foot of the Bishop's seat, and another, with the book immediately before him, and the Bishop sings, *Et ne nos*, &c., with the other verses, and the prayer; after which he repeats, *Requiem æternam*, and the chanters sing, *Requiescant in pace*, &c.; the Bishop makes, at the same time, the sign of the cross towards the cloth.

If there be a monument, or cenotaph, in the middle of the church, the absolution should be made there. All go thither in procession in the following order: two acolytes, one with the censer and boat, and the other with the holy-water vase; the sub-deacon carrying the cross between two acolytes with candlesticks and lighted candles; then the clergy, two by two, according to their order; the deacon at the left of the assistant priest; the Bishop between the two assistant deacons, followed by the acolytes, who wait on him with the mitre, book, &c., &c.; when they reach the place, the two acolytes, with the censer and holy-water vase, stop at the head of it on the right side, and the sub-deacon, with the acolytes at his side, goes to the foot of the same place; the clergy divide into two lines, one on each side of the monument, and the Bishop sits on the faldstool in the

middle, at the head of the same, where he performs what has been directed above.

On particular occasions, for instance at a funeral service for the Pope, &c., besides the Bishop, there are four other prelates or priests, who, after Mass, put on copes, and perform four absolutions before that performed by the Bishop; they walk two by two, immediately before the assistant priest, and when they come to the monument, sit on seats placed at each corner of it. Then all rise, and the assistant priest holds the book before the Bishop, who reads, *Non intres;* the choir afterwards sings the response, *Subvenite*, and the prelate first in dignity, who is placed at the right corner at the head of the monument, attended by the deacon, puts incense into the censer, blesses it, says, at the proper time, *Pater noster*, sprinkles the monument thrice at each corner, going round it, beginning on his right side, incenses it in the same manner, says, *Et ne nos*, and the verses and prayer as in the Roman Pontifical. Then the prelate, second in dignity, who is placed at the left corner, at the foot of the monument, does the same; so also the prelate, third in dignity, placed at the left corner at the head of the monument. The same is done by the prelate, fourth in dignity, who is placed at the right corner, at the foot of the monument. Last of all, the Bishop performs the same, after the *Libera* has been sung, as is to be found in the Roman Pontifical. But if there are no other prelates present, the Bishop alone is to bless the incense.

CHAPTER XII.

SOLEMN MASS FOR THE DEAD, CELEBRATED IN PRESENCE OF THE BISHOP.

1. The Bishop may assist at solemn Mass for the dead, either with cap and cape, or with black cope and mitre.

2. Should he assist in cope and mitre, his vestments are placed on the altar, and he puts them on, as mentioned above; but he does not use the crosier.

3. He makes the Confession at the beginning of Mass; but he does not say the Psalm, *Judica*.

4. He puts incense into the censer; but he is incensed by the assistant priest at the *Offertory* only, after the deacon has incensed the celebrant twice.

5. At the Collects, he goes to the middle of the sanctuary, and kneels during them at the faldstool between his assistant deacons.

6. After the *Sanctus*, he goes likewise to the middle, and kneels till the *Agnus Dei*, which he says at his seat; but the priests in the sanctuary do not go before his seat.

7. At the *Post Communion*, he goes again to the middle, and kneels as before; he then returns to his seat, but he does not give the blessing.

8. After Mass, he performs the absolution, observing what has been said in the foregoing chapter.

CHAPTER XIII.

PARTICULAR INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE DIFFERENT OFFICERS WHO ATTEND THE BISHOP.

ARTICLE I.

INSTRUCTION FOR THE ASSISTANT PRIEST.

SECTION 1.—*His Quality, Dress, and Place.*

1. THE assistant priest, who, in the Pontifical, is sometimes called by the name of archdeacon, is the first amongst all the ministers of the Bishop. Therefore this office should generally be exercised by the most conspicuous clergyman, who holds the first rank in the diocese.

2. His dress, when the Bishop officiates pontifically, is the amice over his surplice (or rochet, if he be entitled to wear it), and the cope.

3. He sits on a stool placed on the platform of the pontifical chair, and at the left of the second assistant deacon; however, should the place not allow this arrangement, he may sit at the right of the first assistant deacon; in either case, his stool must not be on the same line with those of the assistant deacons, but a little forward towards the steps of the platform.

SECTION II.—*His Office in general.*

1. The assistant priest, after the Bishop is dressed, puts the ring on his finger; he also takes it off every time the Bishop is to wash his hands, and puts it on his

finger again, and presents to him the towel; he holds the book on his head before the Bishop, whenever he sings any thing out of it at Vespers or High Mass; but when the Bishop reads, the book is to be held by an acolyte; he holds the incense-boat, and presents the spoon to the Bishop every time the Bishop is to put the incense into the censer, and says, *Benedicite*, *Pater Reverendissime;* but at Mass, only when he is at his pontifical chair, for the deacon is to present it when he is at the altar at Mass. He incenses the Bishop when he is at his chair.

Section III.—*His Office at Pontifical Vespers.*

1. The assistant priest holds the book before the Bishop when he intones the first antiphon.

2. Standing at his place he intones the third antiphon.

3. He holds the book when the Bishop intones the hymn; after the antiphon of the *Magnificat* has been intoned, he presents the spoon to the Bishop, to put in the incense, kissing, as usual, both the spoon and the Bishop's hand, and saying, *Benedicite*, &c. When the *Magnificat* is begun, he walks before the Bishop to the altar; on arriving there, after the Bishop has kissed it, he gives him the censer with the usual kisses; after the incensing, he takes it back, and gives it to the censer-bearer; returns to the Bishop's seat, walking before him, and there standing below the lowest step, he incenses the Bishop with three double swings, goes up to his seat, is incensed with two double swings, holds the book before the Bishop whilst he sings the prayer, then returns to his place, and after Vespers takes off his cope as usual.

Section IV.—*The Office of the Assistant Priest at Pontifical Mass.*

1. As the assistant priest particularly attends the Bishop at the book, it is his duty to prepare, find, and mark, with the usual ribbons in the Missal, the Mass of the day, the commemorations, and whatever is to be read or sung by the Bishop, to whom he is to point out every thing, and suggest what he has to sing or read.

2. The assistant priest puts on the cope over the amice, which he puts over the surplice, or rochet if he be entitled to wear it. Whilst the Bishop reads the Psalms for the preparation of Mass, standing near the first or second assistant deacon, he answers together with them, and alternately with the Bishop; then he offers the towel to the Bishop, when he washes his hands; holds the book before the Bishop at the prayer of Tierce; puts the ring on the Bishop's finger after he is vested, offers the spoon, when the Bishop puts incense into the censer, walks to the high altar at the right of the officiating deacon, places himself near the Bishop, and at his right below the lowest step, makes a genuflection, answers to the confession, making a profound bow to the Bishop, when he says *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater*.

3. When the Bishop has kissed the altar, the assistant priest holds the Missal on his side, whilst the Bishop kisses it, and retires on the Gospel side, below the steps, during the incensing; after it, he walks to the Bishop's chair before him; there he stands at his place, whilst the Bishop reads the Introit and *Kyrie*, to which he answers with the assistant deacons; after it, he sits. He

holds the Missal whilst the Bishop sings *Gloria in excelsis Deo;* gives it to the acolyte after the Bishop has sung those words; holds it again before him whilst he sings the prayers; and incenses the Bishop after the Gospel. During the sermon, if the Bishop preaches at his seat, he sits at his usual place; but if he preaches at the altar, he sits at the right of the Bishop, and the deacon at the left. After the deacon has sung the *Confiteor*, the assistant priest publishes the Indulgences. But if the assistant priest preaches (for he that preaches at the Pontifical Mass ought to perform the office of assistant priest), after the Gospel, having incensed the Bishop, he asks his benediction, saying, *Jube Domne benedicere*, kisses his hand, preaches dressed as he is in cope, and after the *Confiteor*, sung by the deacon from the pulpit, publishes the Indulgences.

4. The Bishop having read the Offertory, the assistant priest attends him with the towel, when he washes his hands, puts the ring on his finger, carries the Missal to the altar, goes to the altar walking before the Bishop; in case, for greater convenience, the Missal was carried thither by an acolyte, the assistant priest attends the Bishop, standing at his left near the book, and turns the leaves, when necessary; when the Bishop incenses the sacred offerings and the altar, the assistant priest takes the Missal with its stand from the altar, and retires with it to the Gospel side, below the steps; after the incensing, he puts it back in the same place, and remains near it to attend the Bishop. He says *Sanctus*, with the Bishop, kneels only at the elevation, and makes a genuflection whenever the Bishop makes it. He says with him, *Agnus Dei;* after it, he exchanges place with the deacon, and when the Bishop says the first prayer, *Do-*

mine Jesu Christe, he kneels at his right; after it, he rises, kisses the altar at the same time with the celebrant, receives from him the *Pax*, approaching his left cheek to the celebrant's left cheek; and when he has said *Pax tecum*, the assistant priest answers, *Et cum spiritu tuo.* Then he makes a genuflection, and, attended by the master of ceremonies, gives the *Pax* to those of the clergy on each side of the sanctuary who occupy the first places or stalls on each row, making no reverence before he gives it, but only after he has given it. Lastly, he gives it to the master of ceremonies, by whom he was accompanied.

5. The assistant priest, after having given the *Pax* to the master of ceremonies, returns to his place, at the left of the Bishop; after the ablution, he carries the Missal from the Gospel side to the Epistle side, attends the Bishop when he washes his hands, presenting to him the towel, goes near the book at the right of the Bishop, and when the Indulgences have not been published, if there has not been any sermon, he publishes them after the Bishop has given the blessing

SECTION V.— *The Office of the Assistant Priest, when the Bishop does not celebrate himself, but only assists at Mass or Vespers celebrated by others.*

1. When the Bishop does not celebrate, but assists either in cope, or in his large mantle, or in cape, the assistant priest attends him in his usual choral dress, viz., in surplice, or in rochet, if he be entitled to use it.

2. The assistant priest presents the incense-boat to the Bishop, incenses him, if he assists in cope and mitre after the Introit, after the Gospel and at the Offertory;

after the *Agnus Dei*, he goes to the altar, kneels, rises, kisses the altar, receives the *Pax* from the celebrant, gives it to the Bishop, who gives it to his assistant deacons, and on returning to his seat he gives it to the subdeacon, by whom it is given to the clergy; but if Mass be celebrated by a prelate, who has his own assistant priest, the latter receives it from the Bishop's assistant priest, and gives it to the others.

Article II.

Instructions for the two assistant deacons.

Section 1.—*Their Quality, Dress, and Place.*

1. Whenever the Bishop officiates pontifically, either for Mass or for Vespers, two clergymen, the highest in dignity next to him that performs the office of assistant priest, ought to attend the Bishop.

2. They ought to be dressed in rochet or surplice, amice and dalmatic; they wear neither maniples nor stoles. Custom permits them to wear albs, instead of rochet or surplice; and this use prevails throughout this country; it may, therefore, be followed.

3. The assistant deacons sit on each side of the Bishop, on two stools placed on the platform, whereon stands the Bishop's chair. They walk at his side, and if he is dressed in cope, they raise it, each on his own side.

4. A bishop officiating out of his diocese is not entitled to have the two assistant deacons.

Section II.—*The Office of the two Assistant Deacons at the Pontifical Vespers.*

1. Whenever the Bishop kneels before the altar at

the faldstool, the assistant deacons adjust the sides of his cope.

2. The second assistant deacon, at the Bishop's left, takes off the mitre, and gives it to the acolyte; the first assistant deacon at his right takes off his cap, and gently presses down his hair, every time the Bishop is to take off his mitre.

3. The first assistant deacon, at the Bishop's right, having first put on him his cap, puts also the mitre on him, and the second assistant priest helps him, and fixes behind him the mitre-bands every time the Bishop is to put on the mitre. Every time the Bishop raises his hand, either to make the sign of the cross on himself, or to bless some person or thing, or to put incense into the censer, or to strike his breast, or to incense the altar, or to do any thing else, the first assistant deacon raises the celebrant's cope on his side; likewise, whenever the Bishop raises both his hands, when he has to read any thing out of the book, or to give the solemn blessing, both assistant deacons, on each side of him, raise his cope. Whenever the Bishop sings, or reads any thing from the book, the two assistant deacons, on each side, put their hands on the book, the first assistant deacon turns the leaves of the book, and the second points out what he has to sing or read.

Section III.—*The Office of the Assistant Deacons at the Pontifical Mass.*

1. The assistant deacons go to the side of the Bishop, as soon as he is dressed for Tierce, and sit there till the chapter is sung. Then they rise, the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre, and they both attend him standing till Tierce is finished; then they give

their places to the deacon and sub-deacon. When the bishop has put on all the vestments for Mass, they return to his side, walk with him to the altar, where, being arrived, the second assistant deacon takes off his mitre, and they make a genuflection; the first assistant deacon gives his place to the assistant priest, the second assistant deacon to the officiating deacon, and retiring each behind him to whom he gave way, remain there answering, and bowing profoundly at the *Confiteor;* during the incensing, they go up to the second step, the first assistant deacon towards the Epistle side, and the second assistant deacon towards the Gospel side, and remain there till it is finished; then the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on the Bishop; after the Bishop has been incensed, they both go at his side to the pontifical chair, the second assistant deacon takes off his mitre, they both attend him standing whilst he reads the *Introit* and *Kyrie*, to which they answer; then the first assistant deacon (if the choir have not done singing the *Kyrie*) puts on him the mitre, and both seat themselves. The *Kyrie* being sung, they rise; the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre; they attend him whilst he reads the *Gloria*, and when he has finished it, and seated himself, the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on him. After the *Gloria* has been sung by the choir, they both rise, the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre, and both attend him whilst he sings the prayer and the Collects; after them, the first assistant deacon puts on him the mitre, and they both sit whilst the Epistle is sung; they rise after it, and, standing, attend the Bishop whilst he reads the Epistle, Tract, &c., and Gospel, and whilst he puts the incense into the censer; then they sit; when the Bishop has

given the blessing to the deacon, and the latter is about to begin the Gospel, they both rise; the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre, and they stand whilst the Gospel is sung; after the Bishop has been incensed, if there is a sermon, the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on him, and they sit during the sermon; after it the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre before he sings the absolution; after it, the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on him; at the blessing, they both bow profoundly and make the sign of the cross on themselves; after the blessing, the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre; they both standing attend him, and with him say the *Credo;* they kneel at the *Incarnatus;* the Creed being ended, the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on the Bishop; whilst the *Incarnatus* is sung, they make a profound bow. The Creed being sung, they rise, the second assistant deacon takes off the Bishop's mitre, and standing they attend him whilst he says the Offertory; after it, the first assistant deacon puts the mitre on him, takes off his glove from his right hand, and the second assistant deacon from his left, and they give them to the master of ceremonies. After he has washed his hands, they go at his side to the altar, but the officiating deacon takes off the mitre, they make a genuflection, go up to the second step, remain there whilst the Bishop is at the altar; the first assistant deacon puts on him the mitre before he is incensed, and takes it off after the incensing; at the elevation they both kneel down at their place, and likewise at the blessing. After the assistant priest has received the *Pax*, they go to the Bishop's right, make a genuflection without kissing the altar, and receive from the Bishop the *Pax*. Mass being ended,

they accompany the Bishop to his seat, where, having made him a profound bow, they give their places to the deacon and sub-deacon, go to the sacristry, disrobe, put on their surplices, and go to accompany the Bishop to his house, or to the sacristy.

Section IV.—*The Office of the Assistant Deacons, when the Bishop does not celebrate.*

1. In this case, they attend the Bishop in their choral dress, viz., in surplice, or rochet if they have the privilege of using it; they do what has been said in the preceding article, with regard to the mitre, the incense, and the place where they must remain. When the Bishop, at Mass, goes to kneel down before the faldstool or desk, in the middle of the sanctuary, they go with him, and kneel at his side.

The two assistant deacons are to attend only the Bishop in his own diocese; not even Legates have the right of their attendance. However, if the Ordinary should be willing to confer this honor on any Bishop, whom he has invited to officiate in his place, he may give him the two assistant deacons.

Article III.

INSTRUCTION FOR THE OFFICIATING DEACON.

1. The officiating deacon puts on all the sacred vestments belonging to his order, except the maniple.

2. During Tierce, he sits at his usual place, at the right of the sub-deacon, until the Bishop has read the Psalms and prayers for the preparation of Mass.

3. After the Bishop has read the prayer above men-

tioned, the officiating deacon goes with the sub-deacon to the Bishop's seat, and having made to him a profound bow, goes to his right, and there standing, after he has washed his hands, receives every one of the Bishop's vestments from the acolytes who carry them, and vests the Bishop, assisted by the sub-deacon.

4. The Bishop being vested, the deacon returns, with the sub-deacon, to the bench, where they remain till after Tierce is over.

5. After Tierce, the officiating deacon goes again with the sub-deacon to the Bishop's seat, and at his right takes off from him the cope, and puts on him the other vestments for Mass; then he returns with the sub-deacon to the bench, and puts on his maniple.

6. The officiating deacon goes to the altar for the beginning of Mass; if Tierce has been sung, and the Bishop has put on the sacred vestments in the chapel, prepared for this purpose, he walks in procession to the high altar, at the left of the assistant priest, immediately before the Bishop; otherwise, from the bench, he goes before the last step of the altar, at the left of the Bishop, and there answers him for the Confession as usual; goes up to the altar, and standing at the Bishop's right, presents the incense-boat and the spoon, with the usual kiss of the latter, and of the Bishop's hand, and says, *Benedicite, Pater Reverendissime*, receives the censer from the censer-bearer, gives it to the Bishop, kissing the upper part of the chain, which he puts into the Bishop's left hand, and the lower part near the cover into his right hand, which he kisses, attends the Bishop, kneels whenever he kneels, and makes a profound bow when the Bishop bows, raises with his left hand the Bishop's chasuble on his side, and supports his arm whenever he

makes a genuflection. After the incensing, he receives with the usual kiss the censer from the Bishop, goes below the last step on the Epistle side of the altar, and after making a profound bow to the Bishop, he incenses him with three double swings, and makes again a profound bow to him.

7. When the Bishop goes to his chair, the officiating deacon returns to the bench, where he stands till the Bishop has said *Kyrie eleison*, which he also says alternately with the sub-deacon. Then he sits, rises when the Bishop says *Gloria in excelsis Deo*, which likewise the officiating deacon continues together with the sub-deacon. Having finished it, he sits. He rises at the *Pax vobis*, or *Dominus vobiscum;* stands during the prayer and collects, and sits again during the Epistle sung by the sub-deacon.

8. Whilst the choir sings the gradual, or *Alleluia*, the officiating deacon receives from the master of ceremonies the Missal, carries it shut before his breast to the altar, saluting the clergy, making a profound bow to the Bishop, and a genuflection on the last step; lays it on the middle of the altar; goes to the Bishop, making the usual reverences, kisses his hand, returns to the altar, kneeling on the lowest step, in the middle, says with a low voice, *Munda cor meum*, rises, takes the book from the altar, returns to the Bishop at the right of the sub-deacon after having made a genuflection, and salutes the clergy, first on the Epistle side, then on the Gospel side, kneels down with the sub-deacon and acolytes, and says *Jube Domne benedicere.* After receiving the blessing, he goes to the place where the Gospel is sung, puts the book open into the hands of the sub-deacon, and turned towards the wall of the sanctuary, on the Gospel

side, with his hands joined before his breast, sings *Dominus vobiscum;* when he says *Sequentia*, or *Initium S. Evangelii*, he makes with his thumb the sign of the cross on his forehead, mouth, and breast. Whilst the choir answers, *Gloria tibi*, &c., he receives the censer from the master of ceremonies or the censer-bearer, incenses the book with three double swings, one in the middle, the second on the right, the third on the left side of the book, gives back the censer, and, with his hands joined, sings the Gospel.

9. The officiating deacon, having sung the Gospel and made a genuflection before the altar, returns to his place. If the Bishop preaches from the altar, immediately after the sermon, the officiating deacon, at the left of the Bishop, bowing a little towards him, sings the *Confiteor*, and at the words *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater*, makes a profound bow. But when any other besides the Bishop preaches, the officiating deacon goes to the Bishop's chair, and standing below the lowest step, sings the *Confiteor*, as before directed.

10. At the *Credo*, the officiating deacon rises, and continues it together with the sub-deacon, reciting it at the same time with the Bishop, and kneeling likewise with him at *Incarnatus est;* and whilst the same verse is sung by the choir, he remains profoundly inclined; then he goes to the side-table, takes the burse with the corporal, which he carries to the altar supported by both his hands, raising it to the height of his eyes, walking slowly, and saluting the clergy, making a bow to the Bishop, and a genuflection to the cross, he goes up, spreads the corporal in the middle, places the burse on the Gospel side, makes a genuflection, returns directly by the side steps to his place, and sits down.

11. After the Creed has been sung, the officiating deacon goes to the altar at the same time with the Bishop, places himself at his right, takes off his mitre, makes a genuflection, goes up to the altar with him, raising a little his vestments in front, goes to the corner of the altar at the Epistle side, takes off one of the Hosts from the paten, gives the paten with the other Host, after having kissed it, to the Bishop, kissing also his hand.

12. Whilst the Bishop says *Suscipe, Sancte Pater*, the officiating deacon takes the chalice, wipes it with the purifier, puts wine into it, and after the sub-deacon has put in some drops of water, he wipes with the purifier all the drops that may be within on the sides of the chalice, kisses the foot of the chalice, holding it with his left hand, and the knot under the cup with his right; gives it to the Bishop, kissing his hand, then supporting the Bishop's arm with his left hand, and touching the chalice with his right, he says with the Bishop, *Offerimus tibi, Domine*, &c., and when the Bishop has placed the chalice on the corporal, the officiating deacon covers it.

13. When the censer-bearer comes to the altar, the officiating deacon receives from him the incense-boat, attends the Bishop whilst he puts in the incense, gives him the censer, assists him at the incensing, as directed above; observing, moreover, at the incensing of the sacred offerings, to hold with his left hand the Bishop's vestments, to prevent their embarrassing him, or touching the offerings, and with his right the foot of the chalice; which he also removes from the middle, at the incensing of the cross, and replaces there, afterwards.

14. After the Bishop has incensed the altar, the dea-

con receives from him the censer, and incenses him as directed in n. 6; then he incenses the assistant priest, the first and second assistant deacons, with two double swings (but in case other Bishops and prelates are present in the sanctuary, they should be incensed with three double swings immediately after the Bishop who celebrates); afterwards he incenses with one double swing, the clergy in the sanctuary. On returning to the altar, he incenses the sub-deacon with two double swings, gives the censer to the censer-bearer, goes to his place on the highest step behind the Bishop, turns towards the censer-bearer, by whom he is incensed.

15. The officiating deacon remains there till after the Preface is sung; then he goes up to the right of the Bishop, and says with him *Sanctus*, &c., after which he returns to his place. At the words *Quam oblationem*, he goes up to the right of the Bishop; if there be a pix with small Hosts to be consecrated, he places it before the Bishop, and uncovers it, kneels on the edge of the platform during the consecration and elevation of the Host, raising the Bishop's chasuble; and when he has placed the Host on the altar, the officiating deacon rises at the same time with him; after he has made the genuflection, he covers the pix, and places it behind the chalice, uncovers the chalice, kneels again, and raises the chasuble during the elevation. When the Bishop lowers the chalice on the altar, the officiating deacon rises, covers it, makes a genuflection with him, and returns to his place behind him. Every time the Bishop makes the sign of the cross, either on the sacred offerings or on himself, the officiating deacon takes care that his vestments should not touch the offerings.

16. When the Bishop says *Benedicis et præstas nobis*, the officiating deacon goes up to his right, uncovers the chalice, making a genuflection every time he uncovers it, with the Bishop, before and after. When the Bishop makes the sign of the cross on the sacred offerings, saying, *Per ipsum et cum ipso*, the officiating deacon puts two fingers of his right hand on the foot of the chalice; and when the Bishop puts the Host on the corporal, he covers the chalice, and returns to his place behind the Bishop.

17. Towards the end of the *Pater*, when the Bishop says *Et dimitte nobis*, the officiating deacon goes up to his right, having previously made a genuflection; receives from the sub-deacon the paten, wipes it with the purifier, kisses it, and when the Bishop says *Libera nos*, puts it into the celebrant's right hand, which he kisses; when the Bishop places the paten under the Host, the officiating deacon uncovers the chalice, and covers it again, after the Bishop has put into it the small part of the Host, making a genuflection, which he always does when at his side.

18. The officiating deacon says the *Agnus Dei*, with the celebrant, then makes a genuflection, exchanges place with the assistant priest, by going to the Bishop's left; there he makes a genuflection, and attends the Bishop at the Missal. If the officiating deacon does not receive the communion, after the second assistant deacon has received the *Pax* from the Bishop, he goes to receive it, making a genuflection first at the Bishop's left, then at his right; but he does not kiss the altar. Having received the *Pax*, he returns to his place, making a genuflection on each side of the Bishop.

19. When the assistant priest returns to the Bishop's

left, after having given the *Pax* to the clergy, the officiating deacon returns to the Bishop's right. There he presents wine for the ablution of the chalice, and wine and water for the ablution of the Bishop's fingers, and puts the purifier on his fingers over the chalice.

20. But if communion is to be given by the Bishop, and if the deacon and sub-deacon are to receive it, immediately after the Bishop has consumed the precious blood, the officiating deacon covers the chalice, makes a genuflection, places the pix with the consecrated Hosts before the chalice, uncovers it, makes a genuflection, kneels at the right of the sub-deacon on the edge of the platform, receives from the Bishop first the *Pax*, and answers, *Et cum spiritu tuo*, then the communion, rises, goes to the Epistle side, bows somewhat, having his face turned to the Gospel side, and sings the *Confiteor*, making a profound bow towards the Bishop at the words *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater*. When he does not receive communion, he says the *Confiteor* before the celebrant takes the first ablution, as directed above; after the celebrant has said *Indulgentiam*, &c., he changes place with the sub-deacon, and going to the Gospel side, he makes a genuflection in the middle; takes the paten, holds it under the sacred Host, and accompanies the hand of the Bishop, as he gives the communion, going with the paten to the railing, if the people are to receive the communion; after it he returns to the altar, goes to the Epistle side, and presents the wine and water for the ablutions.

21. After the ablutions, the officiating deacon puts the mitre on the Bishop, and after he has washed his hands, takes it off, and goes behind him, follows him to the middle, and then back to the Epistle side, returns again

behind him to the middle, and when the Bishop has sung *Dominus vobiscum*, after the last prayer, the officiating deacon, turned to the people, sings, *Ite, Missa est*, or, if the Mass so require, remaining turned to the altar, he sings *Benedicamus Domino.*

22. Before the Bishop gives the solemn blessing, the officiating deacon puts the mitre on him; unless the celebrant be an Archbishop, who does not wear it. In this case, after the Archbishop has given the blessing, and the Indulgences have been published, the officiating deacon takes off the pallium, and lays it on the altar, receives the blessing standing, but bowing profoundly; accompanies the Bishop to the Gospel side, where he begins the Gospel of St. John, or reads it entirely, goes below the steps of the altar, makes a genuflection; accompanies the Bishop to his seat, and assists him in taking off the sacred vestments. When the Bishop has washed his hands, he puts on him the cape, gives his place to the first assistant deacon, or to one of the two other clergymen who come to the side of the Bishop, and returns to the sacristy, where he disrobes, and then retires.

Article IV.

Instruction for the Sub-deacon officiating at Pontifical Mass.

1. The sub-deacon, at a proper time, puts on all the vestments belonging to his order, except the maniple.

2. During Tierce, he sits at the bench as usual, at the left of the deacon, until the master of ceremonies comes to invite him to go to the side-table, he lays his cap on the bench; takes the plate on which are the Bishop's

stockings and sandals, carries them covered with a veil, and raised to the height of his eyes, and, assisted by some acolytes, puts them on the Bishop's right and left foot. Then he returns to the bench, and remains there till the Bishop has read the Psalms and prayers of the preparation for Mass.

3. After the Bishop has read them, the sub-deacon goes with the deacon to the Bishop's seat, and having made to him a profound bow, goes to his left, and there standing, after he has washed his hands, helps the deacon to dress the Bishop.

4. The Bishop being vested, the sub-deacon returns with the deacon to the bench, and remains there till after Tierce is over.

5. After Tierce, the sub-deacon goes again with the deacon to the Bishop's seat, and standing at his left, assists the deacon to take off the Bishop's cope, and to put on him the other vestments for Mass; then he returns with the deacon to the bench, and puts on his maniple.

6. When the Bishop is ready to proceed to the altar, the sub-deacon receives from the master of ceremonies the Missal, with the Bishop's maniple in it, and carrying it shut before his breast, walks to the altar before the deacon, either from the chapel or *Secretarium* in procession, or from his bench goes to the Gospel side, at the left of the deacon, but a little behind him, makes a genuflection, gives the Missal to the master of ceremonies, answers the Bishop at the confession, as usual, making him a profound bow at the words *Et tibi Pater*, and *Et te Pater;* and while the Bishop says *Indulgentiam*, &c., takes the Bishop's maniple from the book, kisses it on one side, and offers it to the Bishop to kiss, puts it on

his left arm, and kisses the Bishop's hand. When the Bishop goes up to the altar, he follows him with the Missal, and on the Gospel side, with the help of the assistant priest, offers the Bishop the Missal open, and pointing out the beginning of the Gospel of that day to be kissed. The sub-deacon gives it to the master of ceremonies, remains at the left of the Bishop, and attends him whilst he puts incense into the censer and incenses the altar, raising with his right hand the Bishop's chasuble on his side, and making a genuflection every time he passes before the middle.

7. After the incensing of the altar, the sub-deacon goes below the steps by the Epistle side, and remains at the left of the deacon whilst he incenses the Bishop, making with him the usual bows; then he goes with him to the bench, stands there at his left, whilst the Bishop reads the Introit, and says the *Kyrie*, which he says alternately with the deacon; sits till the *Kyrie* is finished by the choir; rises at the *Gloria in excelsis*, says the rest of it together with the deacon; afterwards he sits at the same time as the deacon, and all the others, whilst it is sung; makes a bow, and takes off his cap at the words *Adoramus*, *gratias*, *suscipe*, *Jesu Christe;* at the end of it, he rises, and stands during the Collect. When the Bishop says *Per Dominum nostrum*, or the words of the conclusion of the last prayer, the sub-deacon receives the Missal from the master of ceremonies, goes to the middle, holding it with both his hands, and leaning it towards his breast, he makes a genuflection to the altar, a profound bow to the Bishop, and a moderate bow to the clergy, first on the Gospel side, then on the Epistle side; goes to his place below the last step, and turned to the Bishop, without turning his

back to the altar, he sings the Epistle, supporting with both his arms the book open.

8. After the Epistle, the sub-deacon goes again to the middle, makes a genuflection to the altar, a bow to the Bishop, and to the clergy on the Epistle side and the Gospel side, goes to the Bishop, kneels before him, rests the book on his knees, and kisses his hand, as he puts it on the book, rises, returns to the bench, and gives the book to the master of ceremonies: then he goes to the middle, at the left of the deacon, makes a genuflection, salutes the clergy at the Epistle side and at the Gospel side, walks, at the left of the deacon, to the Bishop's seat, and makes a profound bow. On arriving before it, he kneels whilst the deacon says, *Jube Domne*, &c., and during the blessing; then he rises, makes a profound bow to the Bishop, walks to the place where the Gospel is sung, receives the book in his hand, and supports it on his head open before the deacon; and whilst the deacon sings, he remains immovable.

9. When the deacon has done singing the Gospel, the sub-deacon still holding the book open, without making any bow, carries it to the Bishop to kiss the beginning of the Gospel. When the Bishop has kissed it, the sub-deacon shuts the book, bows to the Bishop, and returns to the bench, making a genuflection to the altar as he passes before it.

10. At the *Credo*, the sub-deacon rises, says it together with the deacon, and at the same time with the Bishop, kneels at the *Incarnatus;* and having finished the *Credo*, sits with the rest of the clergy. Whilst the *Incarnatus* is sung, the sub-deacon remains profoundly inclined. After the *Incarnatus*, he rises, standing, waits till the deacon returns from the altar, and sits with him.

11. At the *Offertory*, the sub-deacon rises, goes to the side-table, puts on his shoulder the long veil, and lets it hang lower on his right side, takes hold of the chalice with his left hand, covers it with the longest part of the veil hanging on his right, and places his right hand open over it; then he goes to the altar, whither he should arrive at the same time with the Bishop, uncovers the chalice, gives it to the deacon; then he gives also to the deacon, the wine-cruet which he has received from the acolyte, and having received the water-cruet, he presents it to the Bishop, saying, *Benedicite, Reverendissime Pater*, and puts a few drops of water into the chalice.

12. After the oblation of the chalice, the sub-deacon receives the paten from the deacon in his bare hand, and covers it with the longest part of the veil hanging on his right; then he goes down below the lowest step in the middle, holding the paten against his breast; but when he has arrived there, he keeps it raised to the height of his eyes, supporting his elbow with his left hand. There he remains without moving, except only to kneel in the same place, and on the lowest step, for the elevation. When the celebrant says those words of the *Pater Noster*, *Et dimitte nobis*, &c., the sub-deacon makes a genuflection, goes up to the altar at the Epistle side, gives the paten to the deacon, takes off the long veil, makes a genuflection, returns below the steps in the middle, takes the place of the deacon at the Bishop's right, whilst the same deacon keeps that of the assistant priest at the left, and uncovers the chalice when required, kneeling with the Bishop. The sub-deacon receives the *Pax* after the deacon, at the usual time, if he is not to receive Communion; otherwise, the Bishop gives him

the *Pax* immediately before the Communion, which he gives him before the *Confiteor*. When the deacon sings or recites the *Confiteor*, the sub-deacon goes to the Gospel side, and remains turned to the opposite side, till the Bishop has said, *Indulgentiam*, &c., then he changes places with the deacon, and goes to the Epistle side, remaining by the Bishop, and accompanying him to the railing for the communion of the people. Returning to the altar, the sub-deacon goes to the Epistle side, puts wine and water into the chalice for the ablutions; puts the purifier on the Bishop's fingers, unless the deacon has already returned to that side, and is there ready to minister for the ablutions; then he goes to the Gospel side, wipes the chalice, puts on it the purifier, paten, pall, veil and burse with the corporal; takes hold of it with his left, and places his right hand on it, goes down, makes a genuflection on the last step, and carries it to the side-table, returns to his place, below the last step, behind the Bishop, whom he follows, when he goes to the middle. At the blessing the sub-deacon goes up on the highest step, receives it, profoundly bowing, takes in his hand the book, or the altar card, and presents it to the Bishop, to read the Gospel of St. John. After the Bishop has read this, the sub-deacon goes to his left side and helps the deacon to disrobe him. Which being done, he goes to the sacristy, puts off the sacred vestments and retires.

Article V.

INSTRUCTION FOR THE INFERIOR MINISTERS WHO ATTEND THE BISHOP AT PONTIFICAL MASS AND OTHER FUNCTIONS.

Section I.—*The Master of Ceremonies.*

1. There should be two masters of ceremonies; the first, if possible, should be either a priest, or at least in sacred orders.

2. The office of the first master of ceremonies, is to direct and conduct the whole ceremony; he should, therefore, be perfectly acquainted with what is to be done by the celebrant and all the officers. He ought to be familiar with all the instructions given in the present work, which he ought to read frequently; and especially he ought to refresh his memory, by looking at the particular ceremonies to be performed, the day before.

3. He ought to take especial care of what is to be performed by the Bishop, either at his seat or at the altar, or in any other place, and always be near him.

4. The second master of ceremonies assists the first; he ought to be likewise well conversant with this book; and his particular duty is to attend the ministers, and he should therefore remain near them.

5. During Mass, the masters of ceremonies never sit, except during the sermon. They must stand, with their heads uncovered, whilst the rest of the clergy sit, the first master of ceremonies below the steps of the Bishop's seat, the second near the bench of the ministers; and a little before a reverence is to be made, or a genuflection,

they ought to give a signal to the clergy. At the *Incarnatus*, and at the blessing, they kneel down.

6. At the procession, and when the clergy go from the sacristy to the church, and from the church to the sacristy, the masters of ceremonies never wear their caps, neither do they carry them.

7. At Vespers, they may sit during the Psalms; but they must rise before the *Gloria Patri*, to give the signal to the clergy to bow.

8. The second master of ceremonies, at the altar, gives the Bishop's vestments to the acolytes when he is to be vested, and receives them back likewise at the altar, when he takes them off.

SECTION II.—*Instruction for the Crosier-bearer.*

1. The crosier-bearer, when the Bishop celebrates Mass, or Vespers, pontifically, may be dressed in surplice and cope; at least, he must be in surplice.

2. He holds continually in his hand the Bishop's crosier, whenever the Bishop does not use it. He must watch the time in which he is to give or receive the crosier, and be always ready.

3. The crosier-bearer sits either on the steps of the bishop's chair, or at any other convenient place near it. He must stand whenever the Bishop stands.

4. When the Bishop walks, either from the chair to the altar, or from the sacristy to the sanctuary, the crosier-bearer walks after him, at the right hand of the mitre-bearer; he likewise stands at the right of the mitre-bearer, at a certain distance from the lowest step, when the Bishop is at the altar, and kneels there at the elevation and communion.

5. In processions, when the Bishop uses the crosier,

and carries it, the crosier-bearer walks behind him ; but at the procession of the blessed Sacrament, when the Bishop does not carry the crosier, and on similar occasions, the crosier-bearer walks alone in the middle, immediately before the clergy, dressed in sacred vestments, and carries the crosier, holding it erect with both hands.

Section III.—*Instruction for the Mitre-bearer.*

1. The mitre-bearer may wear the cope over his surplice, when the Bishop celebrates Mass or Vespers pontifically ; at least, he ought to be in surplice, and wear a long silk white veil, hanging from his neck; with the lower part of which he covers his hands, whenever he holds the mitre.

2. He goes to receive it at the altar, from the master of ceremonies, when the Bishop is to be dressed ; goes with the others before him to his seat, and carries it back to the altar, after the Bishop is disrobed.

3. He sits either on the steps near the Bishop's chair, or in any other convenient place ; he holds the mitre whenever the Bishop does not use it ; he must watch the moment in which he is to give or receive it, and be always ready ; he gives it to the deacon that is at the Bishop's right hand, and receives it from the deacon that is at his left.

4. The mitre-bearer must stand whenever the Bishop stands. When the Bishop walks, either from his chair to the altar, or from the sacristy to the sanctuary, the mitre-bearer walks after him, at the left hand of the crosier-bearer ; he likewise stands at his left, at a certain distance from the lowest step of the altar, and kneels there at the elevation and communion.

5. As the Bishop generally uses two mitres, the precious and the lighter mitre, the mitre-bearer must give the precious mitre whenever the Bishop first puts it on, after having dressed; at Vespers, after the first Psalm has been begun, the mitre-bearer then places the precious mitre on the altar, at the Epistle side, and carries the lighter mitre to the deacon. At the beginning of the antiphon, before the *Magnificat*, he carries the lighter mitre to the altar, and the precious mitre to the deacon. At Mass, the mitre-bearer, at the beginning of the *Gloria in excelsis*, carries the precious mitre to the altar, and the lighter mitre to the deacon, which the Bishop uses till the end of the *Credo*. Then the mitre-bearer carries the precious mitre to the deacon, and the lighter mitre to the altar. The Bishop uses the precious mitre till the end of Mass, whenever he has to put it on; therefore, the mitre-bearer holds it in his hand while the Bishop is at the altar, standing or kneeling, as has been said before. When he holds the mitre, the bands must always be outside, and hang down.

6. In processions, the mitre-bearer walks always behind the Bishop.

Section IV.—*Instruction for the Book-bearer.*

1. The book-bearer is dressed in surplice. He should take care that the marks be at the proper place in the Missal, and hold it.

2. He sits in a convenient place by the candle-bearer; watches the moment in which the book is necessary, and at the first token given by the master of ceremonies, he carries it to the Bishop. When the Bishop reads standing, the book-bearer holds it likewise standing; when the Bishop sings any thing out of the book at his chair,

the book-bearer gives it to the assistant priest, who is to hold it only during that time; then he receives it back; when the Bishop reads any thing sitting, the book-bearer holds it kneeling down. Holding the book, he places the upper end of it on his head, and holds the lower on his hands. He never kneels nor bows whilst he is holding the book before the Bishop.

Section V.—*Instruction for the Candle-bearer.*

1. The candle-bearer, who carries and holds the hand-candlestick, which is used whenever the Bishop officiates, is dressed in surplice; he sits, and remains at the right of the book-bearer; accompanies him whenever he carries the book to the Bishop's chair, and remains at his side with the candlestick in his hand, but always standing whilst the Bishop reads or sings any thing out of it.

2. The book-bearer, moreover, goes to the altar, and there, always at the side in which is the Missal, stands by the assistant priest, holding the candle near the book.

PART VI.

Other different Solemnities,

AT WHICH THE BISHOP OFFICIATES

OR IS PRESENT.

CHAPTER I.

COMMEMORATION OF ALL THE FAITHFUL DEPARTED.

1. On All-Saints' Day, for the second Vespers, a black altar veil is to be placed under the white one; the latter is to be removed by the acolytes, soon after the solemn Vespers of the day.

2. After these Vespers, the Bishop and the clergy take off the sacred vestments, the Bishop at his seat, and the clergy (as quickly as possible) in the sacristy; the latter return to the sanctuary, and the Bishop goes to his choir-stall, if there be such, otherwise he remains in his seat, without an assistant priest and deacon.

3. Vespers for the dead are sung as directed in Part V. of this book, chapter ix.

4. After Vespers, in Cathedral churches, Matins and Lauds for the dead are sung, as directed in Part V. chapter x.

5. The next day, a Pontifical Mass is celebrated by the Bishop, as in Part V. chapter xi.

6. After Mass, the absolution is made by the Bishop, either at his seat, or at the cenotaph, as directed in Part V. chapter xi.

CHAPTER II.

SUNDAYS IN ADVENT.

1. If the Bishop officiates on these Sundays, the assistant deacons, the officiating deacon, and sub-deacon, instead of dalmatics, use folded chasubles, which have the same form as the usual chasubles, but that part which hangs before is shorter, and does not hang further than the cincture. Where there are none for this purpose, the others may be used, if folded so as not to hang further than the cincture. The same are used by the ministers for all High Masses celebrated either in the presence or in the absence of the Bishop. However, on the third Sunday in Advent, the ministers use dalmatics and tunics of rose color. If the fourth Sunday falls on Christmas Eve, dalmatics of violet color are also used.

2. The Bishop, instead of *Pax vobis*, says *Dominus vobiscum*.

3. The sub-deacon, whilst the celebrant sings the last Collect, takes off his folded chasuble, sings the Epistle without it, and having received the Bishop's blessing, puts on the folded chasuble again.

4. The deacon also, before the first *Alleluia* is sung, takes off his chasuble, puts on the large stole over the

other, and remains so till after the celebrant's communion; he then takes off the large stole, and puts on the folded chasuble.

5. What has been said above, n. 3 and 4, is to be observed also in other High Masses, celebrated either in the presence or in the absence of the Bishop.

CHAPTER III.

CHRISTMAS.

1. On Christmas Eve, the first Vespers are sung as directed page 340.

2. The following night, Matins are sung as directed page 345.

3. What follows is to be particularly observed for these Matins.

4. The church and sanctuary must be illuminated with a sufficient number of candles.

5. Another table, besides the usual side-table, is to be prepared, and all the sacred vestments for the Pontifical Mass should be placed on it; also a cope to be worn by the Bishop during the *Te Deum*.

6. At the third nocturn, whilst the choir sings the Psalm, *Misericordias Domini*, the Bishop attended, by the two assistants in surplice, reads the antiphon and Psalms for the preparation of Mass, out of the book, which is held open before him by an acolyte, who has at his side another acolyte with a candlestick; and in the mean time the Bishop's stockings and sandals are put on.

The deacon and sub-deacon go also, at the beginning of the third nocturn, to the sacristy, where they put on the sacred vestments. The Bishop ought to finish the preparation in time to be ready to sing, *A vinculis*, &c., before the Lessons. The two assistants, after the preparation, return to their seats; but they go again to the side of the Bishop, when he sings the last Lesson; after which, having intoned the *Te Deum*, the deacon and sub-deacon go to his side, and the two assistants go to put on the sacred vestments; the acolytes, with the book and candlestick, go before the Bishop; the master of ceremonies, having given the Bishop's vestments to the acolytes, goes also with them before the Bishop, who, after having put on the stole, receives the cope, and remains standing till the end of the *Te Deum;* he then sings *Dominus vobiscum* and the prayer; after which he repeats *Dominus vobiscum*, and whilst the singers sing, *Benedicamus Domino*, the Bishop takes off the cope, puts on the other vestments for Mass, which he celebrates as usual. During the *Te Deum*, the clergy put on the sacred vestments.

7. At the *Incarnatus*, the Bishop and all the clergy kneel.

8. The Bishop does not take the ablutions, because he is to sing the third Mass; he washes his fingers in another chalice or vessel.

9. Lauds are sung as directed page 348.

CHAPTER IV.

FESTIVALS BETWEEN CHRISTMAS AND CANDLEMAS.

1. The Bishop may celebrate these festivals with more or less solemnity, as he thinks proper.

2. However, on New Year's day, he ought to assist at Mass in cope, as directed page 371.

3. On the Epiphany, he ought to celebrate pontifically, as directed page 348.

On the same day, after the Gospel has been sung, a clergyman in cope goes to the pulpit, and publishes the movable feasts, singing what is prescribed for this purpose in the Roman Pontifical.

4. On other festivals, the Bishop may assist at Mass in cape or in his long robe, as directed page 371.

CHAPTER V.

CANDLEMAS.

Things to be Prepared.

1. In the sanctuary, between the Bishop's seat and the altar, a table entirely covered with a white linen cloth, and on it a sufficient number of candles for the Bishop and clergy.

2. On the side-table, besides every-thing necessary for High Mass celebrated in presence of the Bishop, the holy-water vase, the basin, ewer, towels on a plate, and

some slices of bread on another plate, for cleansing the Bishop's hands; an apron beautifully embroidered, to be put on the Bishop's knees at the distribution of the candles.

3. Near the side-table, the processional cross; and in a convenient place the censer with the incense-boat, a chafing-dish with fire and tongs.

4. In front of the altar, a violet veil over another of a white color, to be removed after the procession, unless the Mass be not of the Blessed Virgin.

5. On the altar, the Bishop's ornaments, viz., the violet cope and stole, the pectoral cross, the cincture, alb, amice, and mitre, besides the crosier at the angle between the altar and the steps.

6. In the sacristy, a violet cope for the assistant priest, two violet chasubles folded, with two cinctures, albs, and amices for the assistant deacons, and violet vestments for all the clergy, as before directed.

7. The clergy put on their vestments in the sacristy; the Bishop goes thither as before directed.

They go out from the sacristy to the sanctuary, as directed page 353.

The Bishop is vested as prescribed at page 354.

8. The Bishop being vested, takes off the mitre, and rises; the acolytes go before him with the book and the candlestick, and the Bishop, standing turned a little towards the candles, blesses them, singing in the ferial tone what is prescribed in the Missal for this purpose. When he begins the last prayer, the two acolytes go before him with the censer and incense-boat, and the holy-water vase.

9. After the prayers, the Bishop puts incense into the censer and blesses it; then having received the sprinkle

from the assistant priest, he sprinkles the candles three times; afterwards he incenses them also thrice, after which he sits, and puts on the mitre. Then the clergyman first in dignity, having been previously invited by the master of ceremonies, goes before the Bishop, makes a bow to him, and gives him the candle, which he kisses as well as the hand of the Bishop, who gives the candle to the master of ceremonies to be kept by one of the acolytes.

10. Then the apron, prepared for the purpose, is put on the Bishop's knees. One of the acolytes brings the candles to be distributed, gives them, one by one, to the second assistant deacon, who presents them to the Bishop, who distributes them, first to the clergyman from whom he received the candle, then to the assistant priest, the assistant deacons, and all the clergy, who go to receive them, according to their order and rank; all receive them kneeling, and kiss, first the candle, then the Bishop's hand. In the mean time, the candles are distributed to the people by one or two priests; and during the distribution the choir sings, *Lumen ad revelationem.*

11. After the distribution, the Bishop washes his hands. The antiphon, *Exurge*, having been repeated, the Bishop takes off his mitre, rises and sings *Oremus;* the first deacon sings *Flectamus genua*, and the second, *Levate*, only after Septuagesima, but not on Sunday, and the Bishop sings the prayer, *Exaudi quæsumus*, after which he sits, puts on the mitre, puts the incense into the censer and blesses it.

12. In the mean time, the candles are lighted, and every thing is arranged for the procession around the church. The censer-bearer, with his censer, goes to the middle of the sanctuary, behind the sub-deacon, in his

folded chasuble, carrying the cross, and having the acolytes, with their candlesticks and lighted candles, at his side. The first deacon sings *Procedamus in pace*, the choir answers, *In nomine Christi*, Amen. Then the procession moves from the sanctuary in the following order: first the censer-bearer, then the cross-bearer with the acolytes, afterwards the clergy, two by two, according to their order, all carrying their candles; lastly, the Bishop, between the assistant deacons, carrying the candle in his left hand, and blessing the people with his right.

13. During the procession, the priest who is to sing Mass, and the deacon and the sub-deacon, go to the sacristy, and put on their respective vestments,—white, if Mass is of the Blessed Virgin, violet, if of the Sunday. Also the violet altar-veil is removed, if Mass is of the Blessed Virgin.

14. After the procession, the clergy take off their sacred vestments in the sacristy, and extinguish their candles. The Bishop goes to his seat, takes off the violet cope and stole, and puts on the white, which an acolyte should bring thither in time. But if Mass is of the Sunday, the Bishop does not change his vestments.

15. Then the celebrant, preceded by the deacon and sub-deacon, goes to the altar, and Mass is celebrated as directed page 358.

16. The clergy hold in their hands lighted candles, from the beginning to the end of the Gospel, and from the consecration to the communion, except the Mass of Sunday be said.

CHAPTER VI.

ASH-WEDNESDAY.

Article I.

Things to be prepared.

1. On the side-table, besides every thing necessary for High Mass, the following should be prepared: the holy-water vase, the ewer with the basin, a plate with some towels, another with slices of bread to cleanse the Bishop's hands, a towel to be placed on the Bishop's knees during the distribution of the ashes, a Missal for the Bishop, the candlestick and a large stole for the deacon.

2. On the altar, the Bishop's vestments, viz., a violet cope and stole, pectoral cross, cincture, alb, amice, mitre, and crosier; also a vase containing the ashes to be blessed, made of branches blessed on Palm Sunday the year preceding.

3. In the sacristy, the sacred vestments for the celebrant, deacon, and sub-deacon (the two latter make use of folded chasubles), also two folded chasubles for the assistant deacons, a cope for the assistant priest, and a sufficient number of sacred vestments for the clergy, according to their order and dignity, the censer with the incense boat, a chafing-dish with fire and tongs.

Article II.

From the entrance of the Bishop into the sacristy, to the end of the blessing and distribution of the ashes.

1. The Bishop goes to the sacristy, attended as be-

fore directed. The clergy put on their vestments in the sacristy; they go out from the sacristy to the sanctuary, as directed page 353, except that the celebrant, preceded by the deacon and sub-deacon, walks immediately before the assistant priest.

2. On arriving at the sanctuary, the clergy go to their usual places, the celebrant, with the deacon and sub-deacon, to their bench, and the Bishop, with his assistants, to his seat, after having respectively made the usual genuflections and bows. The Bishop is vested as directed page 354.

3. The sub-deacon, attended by the second master of ceremonies, goes up to the altar, and taking, with both hands, the vase containing the ashes, carries it, raised before his face, to the throne, and holds it there, kneeling at the right of the Bishop, till the end of the blessing.

4. The acolytes, with the book and the candlestick, go before the bishop, who, sitting with the mitre on, reads the antiphon, *Exaudi nos;* which being repeated after the Psalm by the choir, the Bishop rises, with his head uncovered, and sings, in the ferial tone, *Dominus vobiscum*, *Oremus*, and the four prayers as in the Missal.

5. After the prayers, the Bishop puts incense into the censer and blesses it, sprinkles and incenses the ashes three times.

6. Then he sits with his head uncovered; the celebrant, accompanied by the master of ceremonies, goes to the Bishop, and having bowed to him, puts ashes on his head, saying, *Memento homo*, &c.

7. The Bishop puts on the mitre, the apron is placed on his knees, and he puts ashes on the head of the cele-

brant, who stands inclined before him; to whom he says, *Memento*, &c.

8. Then the Bishop puts ashes on the heads of the assistant priest, assistant deacons, officiating deacon, and all the clergy, who go for this purpose to receive them, according to their respective rank and order, kneeling whilst the ashes are put on. Last of all he puts ashes on the people at the railing; in doing which, he may be assisted by a priest, if the number of people is great.

9. Afterwards, he returns to his seat and washes his hands as usual; then rises, with his head uncovered, and sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer as in the Missal, during which two acolytes remain before him, with their candlesticks and lighted candles.

10. After the prayer, the clergy go to take off the sacred vestments; the Bishop keeps his on, and assisted and vested as before, does every thing at Mass as directed page 234, observing what follows.

11. At the collects, the Bishop kneels at the faldstool or praying desk, in the middle of the sanctuary, between his assistants. Again, he kneels in the same place, but with his mitre on, during the whole verse, *Adjuva*, sung by the choir. Also the celebrant, with his ministers, kneels before the altar during the same.

12. The deacon and sub-deacon observe what has been said before.

13. The preacher, after the Gospel has been sung, goes to ask the Bishop's blessing, and announces the Indulgences.

14. The Bishop, having said the *Sanctus*, kneels as for the Collects, till the *Per omnia sæcula*, before the *Agnus Dei*. So also all the clergy in the sanctuary. At the Post Communion, the Bishop kneels in the same

manner; after the celebrant has sung the last *Oremus*, the deacon, turned towards the people, sings, *Humiliate capita*, &c. The rest is done as usual. What has been said in particular for this Mass, is to be observed in all ferial Masses during Advent and Lent.

CHAPTER VII.

SUNDAYS IN LENT,

1. For the Sundays in Lent, every thing is to be observed as directed for Sundays in Advent.
2. What has been said for the third Sunday in Advent, is to be observed also for the fourth Sunday in Lent.
3. Before the first Vespers of Passion-Sunday, all the crosses and images on the altar and in the church are to be covered.

CHAPTER VIII.

PALM SUNDAY.

Article I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. On the altar, the Bishop's vestments, as directed page 349.
2. On the side-table, every thing as there directed; also the large stole for the deacon.

3. By the side-table, as there stated. The processional cross is to be covered with a violet veil.

4. Between the Bishop's seat and the altar, a table covered all over with a white linen cloth, and on it the palms to be blessed, and that of the Bishop adorned with flowers.

5. In the sanctuary, on the Gospel side, three stands for the deacons who are to sing the Passion.

6. In the sacristy, the sacred vestments for the celebrant, deacon, and sub-deacon, as directed in chap. vi. Also three violet stoles and maniples, with three cinctures, albs, amices, and Missals, for the three deacons who are to sing the Passion.

Article II.

From the entrance of the Bishop and Clergy into the Church to the beginning of Mass.

1. The Bishop goes to the sacristy, attended as directed page 353.

2. The clergy put on their vestments in the sacristy.

3. All go out from the sacristy to the sanctuary.

4. The Bishop puts on the sacred vestments. All is done as directed page 354.

5. The Bishop being vested, the choir sings Hosanna, which the Bishop reads in the mean time, and then sings, in a ferial tone, *Dominus*, and the prayer as in the Missal. The sub-deacon sings the Epistle with the usual ceremonies, and the Bishop reads it as well as the Gradual, *Munda cor meum*, and the Gospel. The deacon sings the Gospel with the usual ceremonies. After the Gospel, the sub-deacon carries the book to the

Bishop, who kisses it, and is afterwards incensed by the assistant priest.

6. Then the Bishop sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, *Auge*, as in the Missal, and after it the Preface; which being ended, the choir sings, and the Bishop says the *Sanctus*. Afterwards the Bishop sings the five prayers, as in the Missal. Whilst he is singing the last prayer, two acolytes go before him with the censer and incense-boat, and with the holy-water vase and sprinkle. The last prayer being ended, the Bishop puts incense into the censer, blesses it, sprinkles thrice the palms, saying, *Asperges me*, without the Psalm, and incenses them thrice. Then he sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer, *Deus qui Filium tuum;* and having finished it, he sits down, and puts on the mitre.

7. The clergyman first in dignity amongst those who are present, on invitation from the master of ceremonies, goes to the Bishop, and gives him the palm, kissing it and the Bishop's hand. The apron, prepared for this purpose, is then put on the Bishop's knees, and one of the acolytes furnishing, one by one, the palms to the second assistant deacon, the deacon gives them to the Bishop, who distributes them, first to the clergyman from whom he received it, then to the assistant priest and assistant deacon, to the deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy, who go to receive them, two by two, and kiss both the palm and the Bishop's hand, making the usual reverences. The choir, during the distribution, sings, *Pueri Hebræorum*.

8. After the distribution, the Bishop washes his hands. Then two acolytes, with their candlesticks and lighted candles, go before the Bishop, who, standing with his head uncovered, sings *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer,

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus; at the end of which he sits down, puts on the mitre, and puts incense into the censer, as usual.

In the mean while, every thing is prepared for the procession. The first assistant deacon signs, *Procedamus in pace.* Instead of candles, they all carry the palms in their hands. The Bishop, between the assistant deacons, holds the palm in his left, and blesses the people with his right. The officiating deacon walks at the left of the assistant priest. The choir sings the antiphons as in the Missal.

9. The procession moves out of the church; there they divide and place themselves as directed page 287; two or four of the singers remain within the church; the doors are shut, the *Gloria, laus*, is sung, and after it, when the sub-deacon knocks at the door with the foot of the cross, it is opened, the procession enters the church, the choir singing *Ingrediente Domino.*

10. The procession having returned to the sanctuary, the Bishop goes to his seat, and remains for Mass in his sacred vestments; but the others take them off. The celebrant comes from the sacristy to the sanctuary, and Mass is celebrated, as directed in page 289 and page 416.

11. What follows, is particularly to be observed at Mass.

12. When the sub-deacon, at the Epistle, sings the words, *Ut in nomine Jesu omne genuflectatur*, the Bishop and all the clergy kneel till after the words, *Et infernorum.*

13. Whilst the Epistle and Tract are sung, three deacons go to the sacristy, put on amices, albs, cinctures, maniples, and stoles, and at the end of the Tract, preceded by the master of ceremonies, go to the sanctuary

in the following order, carrying the Missal before their breast. First the deacon, who sings the words of the Evangelist; second, he who sings the words of the crowd; third, he who sings the words of Christ. They are followed by three acolytes, without candlesticks, and without the censer; after having made the usual genuflection and bows, they go to kiss the Bishop's hand, without asking the blessing. They go to the place where the Passion is to be sung, and place themselves as directed page 290, the acolytes holding the books.

14. When they begin to sing the Passion, the Bishop and all the clergy rise, with their heads uncovered, and stand with the palms in their hands till the end of it. The celebrant reads it at the Epistle side, and when he has done reading, he turns towards the deacons of the Passion, and stands at the corner of the altar, the deacon also on the middle step, and the sub-deacon before the lowest step, with palms in their hands; at the words *Jesu autem exclamans emisit spiritum*, the Bishop and all the clergy kneel at their places.

15. After the Passion, the Bishop sits, says *Munda cor meum*, and reads the Gospel; the deacon takes off his folded chasuble, puts on the large stole, carries the book to the altar, kisses the Bishop's hand, goes to the altar, kneels, and says *Munda cor Meum;* at the same time, the Bishop puts incense into the censer as usual; then the deacon and sub-deacon, with the censer-bearer, and two acolytes, without candlesticks, go to the Bishop's seat, the deacon asks his blessing, the Gospel is sung as usual, and the Bishop, having kissed the book, is incensed by the assistant priest.

16. At the elevation, the Bishop alone holds the palm in his hand. The rest is done as in other Masses.

CHAPTER IX.

MATINS OF THE TENEBRÆ.

1. For these Matins, every thing is to be prepared as directed page 293, and when the Bishop officiates at them, every thing is done as there specified.

2. If the Bishop occupies his usual seat, he has no other assistant than the master of ceremonies, who sits in some place near; but it is advisable that the Bishop should sit in a choir-stall with the other clergymen.

3. The Bishop rises with the clergy, and kneels and recites the prayer, *Respice.*

4. On Maundy-Thursday, and on Good-Friday, for the Tenebræ, the altar, the Bishop's seat, and faldstool should be quite bare.

CHAPTER X.

MAUNDY-THURSDAY.

Article I.

Things to be prepared.

1. A chapel for the repository.

2. The high altar, as on the greatest festivities, with white altar-veil, &c.

3. On the altar, the Bishop's vestments, with the exception of the cope. A chalice, with a purifier, for cleansing the Bishop's fingers.

4. On the side-table, besides every thing necessary for the Pontifical Mass, two Hosts on the paten, one of which should be of a size to fit the chalice in which it is to be placed; a second chalice, with its paten, pall, veil, and a white ribbon to fasten the veil round the chalice; a pix, with a sufficient number of small Hosts, for the communion of the clergy and people; a long linen cloth for the communion of the clergy.

By the side-table, the processional cross.

5. In a convenient place, in or near the sanctuary, the canopy for the procession.

6. In the sanctuary, in the middle towards the railing, a table covered with fine linen cloth, two candlesticks and candles, and the pontifical book on a cushion or stand on it, on that side which corresponds to the Gospel side. Behind the table, a chair for the Bishop, with three stools for the assistant deacons on each side, and for the assistant priest on the Gospel side. On each side of the table, six seats, or a bench sufficient for six persons, covered with suitable cloth. Behind the Bishop's chair, placed near the table, seats for the seven deacons and seven sub-deacons, who assist at the consecration of the oils.

7. In the sacristy, besides the usual white vestments for the assistant priest and deacons, and for the officiating deacon and sub-deacon, twelve white chasubles, stoles, and maniples, with as many cinctures, albs, and amices for twelve priests; also seven white dalmatics, stoles, and maniples, with as many cinctures, albs, and amices for seven deacons, and seven white tunics and maniples, with seven cinctures, albs, and amices for seven sub-deacons, who are all to assist at the consecration of the oils; besides, a sufficient number of sacred

vestments for the other clergymen, according to their order and rank, if there be any more. Moreover, two censers and incense-boat, and a wooden clapper. Candles in sufficient number for the procession.

8. In a suitable place, either in the sacristy, or near the baptismal font, three metal vases, large enough to contain a sufficient quantity of oil for all the churches of the diocese. On one of them there should be engraven at least the initials of these words, *Oleum Infirmorum*, on another, *Oleum Catechumenorum*, and on the third, *Sanctum Chrisma*. The first and second should be covered with silk cloth of any color, the third with white silk cloth. Near them, should be prepared two long veils for the deacons, who are to carry the vases containing the oil of the catechumens and the chrism. Also near the vase, a plate, and in it a small vessel containing the balm, and a spatula to mix it.

9. For the washing of the feet, should be prepared the necessary vessels to hold the water, which should be a little warm; and basins for washing the feet; also, a sufficient number of towels to wipe them; the ewer, basin, and towels for the Bishop to wash and wipe his hands; also a large towel with strings, which the Bishop puts before him, when he washes the feet; two benches, capable of containing six persons each, higher than usual, before which there should be a step; the book of the Gospel, a violet stole, and cope, for the Bishop; and white dalmatic, tunic, stole, and maniples, for the deacon and sub-deacon; the candlesticks, with lighted candles, for the acolytes, and the censer and incense-boat.

Article II.

From the entrance of the Bishop and clergy into the sanctuary, to the beginning of Mass.

1. The Bishop goes to the sacristy as before directed.

2. As soon as the Bishop and clergy arrive at the sacristy, they go into the sanctuary before they put on the sacred vestments. After a short prayer, they all rise, and say *None*, which is not to be sung. The Bishop, at the same time, reads the Psalms for the preparation of Mass, without *Gloria Patri*, and they put on him the stockings and sandals. The Psalms of *None* being ended, the Bishop goes to the middle, kneels before the faldstool, and all the clergy kneel at their places, during *Christus*, *Pater*, and *Miserere*, &c.; at the end of which the Bishop says the prayer *Respice*.

3. The prayer *Respice* being ended, the clergy who have to put on the sacred vestments, go for this purpose to the sacristy. The Bishop goes to his seat; the deacon and sub-deacon, who should take their sacred vestments during *None*, go to the Bishop's side, and help to take off his cape, wash his hands, and put on the sacred vestments as before directed.

Article III.

From the beginning to the end of Mass.

1. As soon as the clergy have put on their vestments, they go to their places in the sanctuary, and the Bishop being vested, the deacon and sub-deacon put on their maniples, the assistant deacons go to the side of the

Bishop, and Mass is celebrated as usual, with the following exceptions.

2. At the Confession the Psalm, *Judica*, with the *Gloria*, is omitted. The organ is not played, nor the bells rung any more after the *Gloria in excelsis;* instead of bells a wooden clapper is used.

3. Before the Bishop says the words, *Per quem hæc omnia, Domine, semper bona creas*, having made a genuflection to the Sacrament, he retires to the Epistle side, near the altar, where he washes his fingers in another chalice, and wipes them, makes again a genuflection to the Sacrament, goes to the first step of the altar, puts on the mitre, takes the crosier in his hand, and between the two assistant deacons, preceded by the assistant priest, goes to the seat near the table, prepared as in Art. I., n. 6, of this chapter, sits, turned towards the altar, having the table before him, and his assistants at his side, all the others remaining at their places; then the assistant priest says, with a loud voice, in the tone of a Lesson, *Oleum infirmorum.* Immediately after, one of the seven sub-deacons, having at his side two acolytes, goes to the sacristy, takes the vessel with the oil to be consecrated for the infirm, covered as it is, and holding its foot in his right hand, and having his left arm round it, carries it to the Bishop, and gives it into the hands of the assistant priest, saying, *Oleum infirmorum.* The assistant priest presents it to the Bishop, saying the same words, and puts it on the table.

4. The Bishop, with his mitre on, rises, and reads the exorcisms in a low voice, loud enough, however, to be heard by the priests who are round him; after the exorcisms, the clergy answer, Amen; the Bishop, having taken off his mitre, says, *Dominus vobiscum*, and reads

also, in a low voice, the prayer, *Emitte quæsumus;* after which, the vessel is brought back to the sacristy by the sub-deacon, accompanied by two acolytes. The Bishop puts on the mitre, seats himself, and washes his hands; then rising with his mitre on, returns to the altar attended by his ministers, and on arriving before the lowest step, takes off his mitre, makes a genuflection, goes up to the altar, and continues Mass from the words, *Per quem hæc omnia*, &c., as far as the communion of the sacred body and blood inclusively.

5. The Bishop having communicated, places the consecrated Host to be reserved for the following day into the chalice prepared for the purpose, which the master of ceremonies should have previously carried to the altar, with its veils and ribbon; the deacon covers it with the pall and the paten; over them he places the veil, which he fastens with the ribbon round the foot of the chalice, and places in the middle of the altar.

6. Then the deacon sings the *Confiteor*, and the celebrant gives the communion, first to the deacon and sub-deacon, and afterwards to the rest of the clergy, according to their rank, beginning by the priests, who should wear the stole. To-day, the *Pax* is not given to the deacon and sub-deacon by the Bishop before the communion.

7. The communion being ended, the Bishop having taken not only the usual ablutions, but also that which had been previously left in the other chalice, makes a genuflection to the Sacrament, goes down to the second step, puts on the mitre, takes the crosier, and attended by the ministers as before, goes to the seat near the table.

8. The Bishop having seated himself, the assistant

priest standing near him, says in a loud voice, and in the tone of a Lesson, *Oleum ad Sanctum Chrisma*, and immediately after, *Oleum Catechumenorum;* then the Bishop puts incense into the censer and blesses it. This being done, they go to the sacristy for the oils in the following order: the censer-bearer, the two acolytes with their candlesticks and lighted candles, the seven sub-deacons, two by two, and in the third row three; the seven deacons likewise; and, lastly, the twelve priests, also two by two. The Bishop, and his assistants and ministers, remain at their places.

9. The procession comes out of the sacristy in the following order: the censer-bearer, the sub-deacon with the processional cross, between the acolytes with their candlesticks, two chanters singing the verses, *O Redemptor;* six sub-deacons, two by two; five deacons, in the first row two, in the second three; a sub-deacon, carrying the vase with the balm, two deacons carrying the vases with oil, having a long veil hanging from their neck before their breast, holding the vases with their left arms round them, and covering the inferior part of the vases with that part of the veils which hangs on their right; the deacon carrying the oil for the chrism, walks at the right, and he that carries the oil of the catechumen at the left; last of all, the twelve priests, two by two. As they move from the sacristy, the chanters begin to sing the verses, *O Redemptor*, &c., which are immediately repeated by the choir; as also after each strophe sung by the chanters.

10. When the procession arrives at the sanctuary, the censer-bearer and the sub-deacon with the cross, between the acolytes, place themselves near the altar at the Epistle side; the twelve priests, six on each side of

the assistant deacons, with their faces turned towards the altar, the deacons behind the Bishop, and the sub-deacons behind the deacons. The sub-deacon with the balm, and the deacons with the oil, stop until the others have taken their places. Which being done, the deacon with the oil for the chrism goes before the Bishop, and the assistant priest receiving from him the vase wrapped in the veil, which the deacon had round his neck, presents it to the Bishop, and lays it on the table before him. In the mean while, the other deacon holds the vessel of the oil of the catechumens on his arm. Then the sub-deacon with the balm gives the vase which contains it to the assistant priest, who, having presented it to the Bishop, lays it on the table. The Bishop takes off his mitre, rises, and turned towards the altar, blesses the balm, saying, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the two prayers as found in the Roman Pontifical. The second prayer being ended, the Bishop, still standing, puts on the mitre, and mixes in a paten, or in another vessel, the balm with some oil, which is taken from the vase, saying the third prayer.

11. After the third prayer, the clergy having answered, Amen, the Bishop sits with his mitre on, breathes thrice in the form of a cross over the mouth of the vase, which is yet kept wrapped in the veil. Then the twelve priests breathe over it in the same manner as the Bishop, one after another, making genuflections to the Sacrament on the altar, and bowing to the Bishop both before and after. Which being done, the Bishop rises, and, with his mitre on, reads the exorcism; at the end of which, he takes off his mitre, and with his hands extended before his breast, he sings the Preface as in the Pontifical, and having concluded it with the words, *Per eumdem*

Dominum, &c., which he reads, the clergy answer, Amen.

12. Then the Bishop puts into the vase for the chrism, the mixture of balm and oil, saying, *Hæc commixtio*, &c., and the deacon who carried the vase of the chrism removes from it the long veil in which it was wrapped. Then the Bishop bowing, sings, *Ave Sanctum Chrisma*, three times, but the second time he raises his voice a tone higher, and the third he raises it another tone higher. After the third time, he kisses the border of the vessel, sits down, and puts on his mitre.

13. The twelve priests, one after the other, make a genuflection to the Sacrament and a reverence to the Bishop, kneel on both knees, in the middle, at a distance from the table, and sing, *Ave Sanctum Chrisma*, then rise, go nearer the table, kneel again, sing, *Ave Sanctum Chrisma*, a tone higher; rise, approach the table, kneel, sing, *Ave Sanctum Chrisma*, another tone higher; then rise and kiss the border of the vase. They then return to their places, having made a genuflection to the Sacrament on the altar, and a bow to the Bishop. This being done by the twelve priests, the vase with the chrism is placed on one side of the table.

14. The deacon who holds the vase of the oil of the catechumen goes before the Bishop, and gives it (without the veil, which he retains) to the assistant priest, who, having shown it to the Bishop, places it on the middle of the table before the Bishop, who immediately after breathes over it thrice in the form of a cross. The twelve priests, one after the other, do in like manner. Then the Bishop rises, with his mitre on, and reads in a low voice, the exorcisms; at the end of which, the clergy answer, Amen. The Bishop takes off his mitre,

and standing, says in a low voice, *Dominus vobiscum*, &c., *Oremus*, and the prayer, *Deus, incrementorum*, for the blessing of the oil of the catechumens, which being ended, the clergy answer, Amen. Afterwards, the Bishop sings thrice, *Ave Sanctum Oleum*, as has been said, n. 12, for the chrism, and kisses the brim of the vase; the same is done likewise by the twelve priests, as directed in n. 13.

15. All this being done, the deacons take the vases in their arms, and the procession is arranged, as in n. 9, to bring back to the sacristy the consecrated oil and the chrism, the chanters singing the verses, *Ut novetur*, and the choir repeating after each strophe, *O Redemptor*.

16. Whilst they go to the sacristy, the Bishop, sitting, washes his hands, returns to the altar, and continues Mass as usual; but every time he goes to or from the middle of the altar, he makes a genuflection to the Sacrament, and when he says *Dominus vobiscum*, does not turn his back to the Sacrament, but draws back a little towards the Gospel side. After the *Ite, Missa est*, the Bishop standing, without mitre, on the Gospel side, without turning completely round, gives the solemn blessing. But the Indulgences are to be published in the chapel of the repository.

17. The Bishop, at the words *In principio erat Verbum*, should not make the sign of the cross, as usual, on the altar.

Article IV.

The Procession to the Repository.

1. After the Gospel of St. John, he goes to his seat, takes off the sacred vestments as far as the stole exclusively, and puts on a white cope. In the same time, an-

other sub-deacon in tunic, takes the processional cross, covered with a violet veil, and the acolytes their candlesticks; candles are distributed to the clergy, and lighted; the canopy is brought outside of the railing, and given to those who are to carry it,

2. The Bishop, at his seat, with his mitre on, puts incense into the two censers, but he does not bless it, neither does the assistant priest kiss the spoon, nor the Bishop's hand. Then the Bishop, with his assistants, goes to the altar, takes off his mitre, and kneeling on a cushion on the lowest step of the altar, he incenses thrice the Blessed Sacrament; the long veil is put on his shoulders, and fastened before his breast. The first assistant deacon goes up to the altar, and after the usual genuflections, takes the Blessed Sacrament, and, standing, presents it to the Bishop, kneeling down on the highest step; who, having received it, rises, and the deacon makes a genuflection, and the choir begins to sing *Pange Lingua.* The assistant deacons, on each side of the Bishop, raise the extremities of his cope, and the master of ceremonies raises up his vestments in front, when he goes up or down the steps. The procession walks to the repository in the following order: the sub-deacon, cross-bearer, between the acolytes with their candlesticks, the chanters, the inferior clergy, the acolyte carrying the crosier, the sub-deacons, the deacons, the priests in chasubles, the deacon and sub-deacon, the assistant priest, the two censer-bearers, moving slowly and regularly their censers; the Bishop, between the two assistant deacons, under the canopy, followed by the acolytes, with the mitre, book, candle, &c.

3. The cross-bearer and the acolytes, on arriving near the door of the chapel, retire a little on one side to make

way for the procession, and remain there standing and turned towards the procession. Those of the clergy who walk next to the cross-bearer stop, the first on each side of the chapel, and those who follow stop next to them, so that the clergymen who walked the last may be the nearest to the altar of the repository, and divide into two lines, and the Bishop, with the assistant ministers, passes between them. The censer-bearers, on entering the chapel, keep their censers motionless. Those who carry the canopy, stop at the door of the chapel.

4. The Bishop, on arriving at the highest step of the altar, stops, and the deacon kneeling down, receives from him the Blessed Sacrament, and immediately places it in the urn, or tabernacle, prepared for the purpose, leaving the door opened. Then the Bishop goes down to the second step, puts incense into the censer, kneels down, and incenses thrice the Blessed Sacrament. The deacon shuts the door of the urn, and the Bishop goes up to the altar, makes a genuflection, kisses the altar, takes in his left hand the crosier, and standing at the Gospel side, without mitre, gives the solemn blessing; after which, the assistant priest publishes as usual the forty-days' Indulgences.

5. The procession returns to the sanctuary in the same order as it came; the Bishop, on arriving at his seat, takes off the sacred vestments. The clergy likewise take theirs off in the sacristy. Then Vespers are recited, and the altars stripped.

Article V.

The Mandatum, or Washing of the Feet.

1. At a convenient hour, the Bishop and clergy meet in the place prepared for the washing of the feet. The

Bishop puts on the amice, alb, cincture, with a violet stole and cope, and plain mitre. The deacon and sub-deacon, with the assistant priest, put on white vestments as for Mass.

2. Thirteen poor men, or thirteen clergymen, sit on high benches, with a high step in front; the covering of their right feet should be so arranged as to make it easy to remove it, when they are to be washed.

3. The Bishop, attended as usual by his assistants, at his seat or faldstool, puts incense into the censer and blesses it. Then the deacon holding the Missal before his breast, with the sub-deacon, the two acolytes carrying their candlesticks, go before the Bishop, kneel down, and the deacon asks the blessing, saying, *Jube Domne*, &c., which the Bishop gives him as usual, saying, *Dominus sit*, &c. The Gospel is afterwards sung with the usual ceremonies; the book is carried to the Bishop by the sub-deacon, and the Bishop is incensed by the deacon.

4. After the Gospel, the choir sings *Mandatum novum*, and what follows as in the Missal; the Bishop takes off his cope, ties an apron on him, and with his mitre on, goes before the first poor man, or clergyman, kneels on a cushion, which for this purpose is moved by an acolyte, as he passes on, and the ewer and basin being brought by the attending clergymen, the Bishop washes the right foot, wipes it with a towel, and kisses it; and if a poor man, he gives him some alms. He does in like manner to the other twelve.

5. After having washed his feet, the Bishop returns to his seat, washes his hands, takes off the apron which he had tied on him, puts on the cope, and takes off his mitre. The two acolytes with their candlesticks, and a

third one with the book, and a fourth with the candlestick, go before him, and rising, he says, *Pater Noster*, &c., *Et ne nos*, &c., with the following verses and prayers as in the Missal. After which, the Bishop, raising his hands, makes the sign of the cross towards those who are present. Lastly, he takes off the sacred vestments, and retires.

CHAPTER XI.

GOOD FRIDAY.

ARTICLE I.

What is to be Prepared.

1. THE altar, the seat intended for the Bishop, the sacred ministers' bench, and all the sanctuary, should be quite bare, without any ornaments.

2. On the altar, the cross covered with a black veil, but in such a manner as to render it easy to uncover its different parts successively; six plain candlesticks, with brown wax candles; the Bishop's vestments, viz., an amice, alb, and cincture, with a black maniple, stole, dalmatic, tunic, and chasuble, the pectoral cross, and the plain white mitre. The sandals, gloves, and crosier are not used on this day.

3. On the small table should be spread a linen cloth, which ought not, however, to hang down; and on this table should be placed the ewer and basin, with a towel on a plate; the cruets, a book-stand with a Missal, another Missal, an altar-cloth folded, a large black stole

for the deacon, a black burse with a purifier and a corporal, a black veil for the chalice, two candlesticks, with brown wax candles, for the acolytes.

4. In the sacristy, the sacred vestments for the deacon and sub-deacon, viz., two amices, albs, and cinctures, and a stole; a black cope for the assistant priest; also two folded chasubles of the same color, with cinctures, albs, and amices, for the two assistant deacons. Likewise, a sufficient number of sacred vestments for the clergy. Also, three amices, albs, cinctures, with as many black maniples and stoles, and three Missals, for the deacons who have to sing the Passion. Two censers with incense-boats, a chafing-dish with fire and tongs, the tapers and candles for the procession.

5. At the Gospel side in the sanctuary, a violet carpet, with a long white veil, and a violet velvet cushion, adorned with gold-lace and embroidery, for the veneration of the cross. Also, three bare book-stands or desks, for those who are to sing the Passion.

6. Before the middle of the altar, and at the foot of the lowest step, the praying-desk bare, and five cushions to be placed on the highest step of the altar, for the prostration of the Bishop's assistants and ministers, three on the Epistle side, and two on the Gospel side.

7. In any convenient place, the processional cross covered with a violet veil, and the wooden clapper.

8. At the chapel of the repository, besides the canopy, the white veil on the side-table, and the key of the tabernacle on the altar; also contiguous to it, the steps (if necessary) to reach the door of the tabernacle.

9. On the ministers' bench, the folded chasubles, and maniples for the deacon and sub-deacon.

Article II.

From the entrance of the Bishop and clergy into the sanctuary, to the beginning of the Office.

1. The Bishop goes to the sacristy as directed in the first part of this book.

2. From the sacristy, the clergy, before they put on the sacred vestments, go with the Bishop to the sanctuary: only the deacon and sub-deacon remain in the sacristy, and put on the sacred vestments, the folded chasubles and maniples excepted. The Bishop and clergy having entered the sanctuary, kneel, pray for a short space of time, and rise. The Bishop goes to his seat; they all say *Pater* and *Ave*, in a low voice, and when the Psalm *Mirabilia* is begun, they sit down, and continue the part of the divine office called in Latin, *None*. At the end of this canonical hour, the Bishop goes to the praying-desk, and, with the clergy, kneels during the *Christus* and *Miserere;* at the end of which, the Bishop says the prayer *Respice*, at the end of which they all rise; the Bishop goes to his seat; the deacon and sub-deacon come from the sacristy, go to his side and assist him to put on his vestments.

At the same time, the clergy put on their sacred vestments in the sacristy. The two assistant deacons go to the side of the Bishop, and the deacon and sub-deacon go to their bench, and put on their maniples and folded chasubles.

Article III.

From the beginning of the Office to the end of it.

1. The Bishop, being vested, goes to the middle, and taking off his mitre, kneels before the praying-desk; at the same time the assistant priest and deacons, with the officiating deacon and sub-deacon, prostrate themselves on the cushions, which the acolytes place on the steps as directed above. All the clergy kneel, and remain praying for some time. Meanwhile, two acolytes unfold the altar-cloth.

2. The Bishop and ministers rise, go up to the altar, and kiss it. An acolyte places the armed-chair on the platform, at the Epistle side, and the Bishop sits on it, turned towards the Gospel side (for to-day he goes not to his seat, before the end of the office); the assistant priest sits on the first step, at the feet of the Bishop, and behind him, on the same step, the deacon and sub-deacon; and near these, the two assistant deacons. The clergy sit at their usual places.

3. One of the acolytes, attended by the master of ceremonies, having made the usual genuflection and reverences, goes to the place where the Epistle is usually sung, and there sings the Lesson in the tone of a Prophecy. He does not kiss the Bishop's hand; but, leaving the book in the hand of the master of ceremonies, makes the usual genuflection and reverences, and returns to his place. Whilst the Tract is sung by the choir, the Bishop, still sitting, reads the Lesson and the Tract from the book, which an acolyte holds before him; but he is

not accompanied by the other, nor do the acolytes carry the candlesticks on this day. The Bishop's assistants and ministers stand by him whilst he reads.

4. After the Tract, the Bishop takes off his mitre, rises, and turning towards the altar, sings *Oremus.* The deacon sings *Flectamus genua;* and the sub-deacon, *Levate;* standing, one after the other, behind the Bishop. At the words, *Flectamus*, &c., all, except the Bishop, kneel, and at the word *Levate* they rise. Then the Bishop sings the prayer; during which the sub-deacon takes off his folded chasuble, and at the end of the prayer sings the second Lesson in the tone of the Epistle, during which the bishop, with his assistants and the clergy, sit as before. After the Epistle, the sub-deacon does not kiss the Bishop's hand; but he resumes his chasuble, and returns to his place. The Bishop sits, and whilst the choir sings the Tract, he reads the Epistle and the Tract, attended as usual.

5. Whilst the Tract is sung, the three deacons who are to sing the Passion, go to the sacristy, put on the sacred vestments, and towards the end of the Tract go out to the sanctuary, and sing the Passion. Every thing is done as at page 430, except that they do not kiss the Bishop's hand.

The Bishop, attended by his assistants, reads the Passion out of the Missal placed on the altar at the Epistle side, and makes a genuflection there at the words *Et inclinato capite.*

6. After the Passion, the Bishop and the clergy seat themselves; the officiating deacon takes off his chasuble, puts on the large stole, carries the book to the altar, kneels, says, *Munda cor meum*, takes the book, and without asking the blessing, goes with the sub-deacon,

and the acolytes without candlesticks and without the censer, to sing the last part of the Passion, in the tone of the Gospel; which being done, they all return to their places.

7. If there is a sermon, the preacher, accompanied by the master of ceremonies, goes to the Bishop and asks the Indulgences, without, however, asking the blessing; and having made the usual genuflection and reverences, goes to the pulpit and preaches. The Bishop sits at the Epistle side, but turned towards the preacher. All the clergy sit during the sermon. After the sermon, the preacher publishes the Indulgences. Then the Bishop immediately takes off the mitre, and rises; the armed-chair is removed, and the prayers are sung as in the Missal; the Bishop singing *Oremus*, the deacon *Flectamus genua*, and the sub-deacon, *Levate*. Whilst the last prayers are sung, the acolytes spread the carpet on the steps of the altar, and put the cushion on the lower steps, and over it the veil on which the cross is to be laid.

8. After all the prayers, the Bishop takes off his chasuble, and goes to the back corner of the altar, at the Epistle side, and turns towards the people. The sacristan, taking the cross from the altar, gives it to the deacon, and the deacon to the Bishop, who, having received it respectfully, with his right hand uncovers the top as far as the cross-piece, and raising it with both hands, sings, *Ecce lignum Crucis*, out of the book which the assistant priest holds before him; the deacon being at the Bishop's right and the sub-deacon at the left. All rise with their heads uncovered; the Bishop, assisted by the ministers, continues to sing, *In quo salus mundi pependit;* and the choir and all the clergy, the Bishop

only excepted, kneeling on both knees, and bowing their heads, answer, *Venite adoremus;* after which, the Bishop, with the assistant priest and ministers, goes up to the platform and stops at the Epistle side, where he uncovers the right arm and the head of the crucifix, and raising his voice one tone higher, sings again, *Ecce lignum Crucis;* and every thing is done as before. Afterwards he goes to the middle of the altar with all his assistants; there he uncovers the whole cross, giving the veil to the sub-deacon, by whom it is given to an acolyte, who carries it to the small table; and the Bishop then sings, one tone still higher than the second time, *Ecce lignum Crucis;* and every thing is done the third time as before.

The Bishop goes alone to the place prepared for the cross, carrying it raised up with both hands, and lays it on the cushion. He then goes to the chair, takes off his shoes, and without mitre, goes between the two assistant deacons to venerate the cross, kneeling the first time near the communion rail, and praying a little; the second time, at half the distance from it to the place where the cross is; and the third time, close to the cross, which, after having prayed, he reverently kisses, and returns to the chair where he puts on his shoes, chasuble, and mitre. He afterwards sits and reads, *Popule meus*, &c.

9. After the Bishop, the assistant priest, the two assistant deacons, the deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy, according to their respective order and dignity, go to venerate the cross, in the same manner as the Bishop. During the veneration of the cross, the choir sings, *Improperia;* and about the end of it the candles are lighted. The deacon and sub-deacon unfold

the linen cloth, which had been extended by the acolytes on the altar. The deacon carries from the small table to the altar the corporal and the purifier, and having taken the corporal out of the burse, unfolds it in the middle of the altar; the master of ceremonies carries the book-stand and the Missal to the altar, and places it at the Gospel side. The veneration being ended, the deacon carries back the cross to the altar, without making any reverence, and all the clergy kneel as he passes. The Bishop sits down and washes his hands.

10. Then the procession is arranged in the following order: the two censer-bearers with their censers and incense-boat; the cross-bearer in sub-deacon's dress, between the two acolytes with their candlesticks; the clergy; the assistant priest between the deacon and sub-deacon, and the Bishop between the two assistant deacons. As they move from the middle of the altar, they all make a genuflection to the cross.

11. When the procession arrives at the repository, all place themselves as yesterday; the Bishop, on arriving at the door or entry of the chapel, takes off his mitre; on coming to the altar, he kneels, with all the clergy; and, having prayed for some time, the Bishop rises; the assistant priest presents to him the incense-boat. The Bishop puts incense into the censer; but does not bless the incense; the sacristan opens the tabernacle, and the Bishop having knelt down, incenses the Blessed Sacrament thrice; the long veil is put on the Bishop's shoulders, and the first assistant deacon takes the Blessed Sacrament from the tabernacle, and gives it to the Bishop, who is yet kneeling. The deacon makes a genuflection, and the Bishop, having covered the chalice with the veil hanging from his shoulders, holds it with

both hands, rises, and all go in procession, as yesterday, to the altar; at the same time the choir sings, *Vexilla Regis*, &c. Those who carry the canopy stop at the chancel, the others form a double semi-circle before the altar, and kneel down till after communion, holding the lighted candles in their hands.

12. The Bishop, on arriving at the steps of the altar, standing, gives the Blessed Sacrament to the officiating deacon, who receives it kneeling, and places it on the altar. The Bishop, having taken off the veil, kneels on a cushion, on the lowest step. He afterwards rises, and being attended by the assistant priest, puts incense into the censer without blessing it. He incenses the Blessed Sacrament thrice, goes up to the altar, takes the Blessed Sacrament out of the chalice, and taking care not to touch it, places it on the paten which is held by the officiating deacon; and having received the paten from the hands of the same, lays the sacred Host on the corporal, without saying any thing. If he happen to touch the Blessed Sacrament, he washes his fingers in some vessel prepared for this purpose; the deacon puts wine into the chalice, and the sub-deacon water, which is not blessed by the Bishop, who does not say the usual prayer; but having received it from the deacon, places it on the altar, and the deacon covers it with the pall.

13. The Bishop, having received the incense boat from the assistant priest, puts incense into the censer, without blessing it, and incenses first the sacred offerings, saying, *Incensum istud;* secondly, the cross, and thirdly, the altar, saying, *Dirigatur Domine*, &c., making a genuflection before and after, and every time he passes before the Blessed Sacrament; and having incensed the altar, he gives the censer to the deacon, say-

ing, *Accendat in nobis Domine*, &c. The Bishop is not incensed.

14. After the incensing, the Bishop retires a little towards the Epistle side of the altar, and washes his hands, without saying any thing; then he goes to the middle of the altar, bows, and joins his hands, saying, *In spiritu humilitatis;* afterwards receding a little towards the Gospel side, he turns towards the people, and says, *Orate fratres*, taking care not to make a complete circle, turning his face towards the people, and back again, towards the altar. He immediately sings in a ferial tone, *Oremus*, *Præceptis salutaribus moniti*, &c., and having said in a low voice, *Amen*, says the prayer, *Libera nos*, &c., in the same tone of voice in which he said the *Pater.* Having finished it, he makes a genuflection, puts the paten under the Blessed Sacrament, and taking the latter in his right hand, raises it so that it may be seen by the people; then he divides the sacred Host in three parts as usual, and puts the smallest of them into the chalice, without making the sign of the cross. He does not say *Pax Domini*, nor *Agnus Dei;* neither does he give the *Pax.*

15. The Bishop having put the particle into the chalice, makes a genuflection, and having said only, *Perceptio corporis*, makes again a genuflection, takes the paten with the Blessed Sacrament, says, *Panem cœlestem accipiam*, &c., signs himself with the Blessed Sacrament, saying, *Corpus Domini nostri*, &c., and communicates; he immediately consumes the wine with a part of the Host in the chalice, without saying any thing; afterwards he washes his fingers (the deacon pouring, as usual, the wine into the chalice), takes the ablution, and bowing, with his hands joined, in the middle of the

altar, says only, *Quod ore sumpsimus*, *Domine*, &c. After this, he goes to the Epistle side, puts on the mitre, washes his hands, and goes to his seat; where, having taken off his vestments, and put on the cape, he says Vespers with the clergy, who have by this time taken off the sacred vestments, and put on their surplices. The candles are extinguished, and after the antiphon of the *Magnificat* has been repeated, the Bishop goes to the middle, kneels at the faldstool during the *Christus* and the *Miserere;* after which, he says the prayer, *Respice*, and retires, as usual.

CHAPTER XII.

HOLY SATURDAY.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. THE church, the high altar, and the baptismal font should be prepared as directed page 321. Likewise, the triple candle, the paschal candle, the new fire, the grains of incense, and every thing else, as there directed.

2. In the sacristy, the sacred vestments should be prepared as usual for the assistant priest, the two assistant deacons, the deacon and sub-deacon; for the clergy according to their order and dignity; with this difference, that to-day violet vestments must be prepared; the deacon and sub-deacon make use of folded chasubles. Under the violet, white vestments must be prepared.

3. On the altar, two front veils, white and purple; the sacred vestments for the Bishop must be double, that is, white vestments should be placed immediately upon the altar, and over them violet vestments.

4. The Bishop's chair should be adorned with white ornaments, and then covered with purple cloth.

Article II.

The Blessing of the New Fire.

1. The Bishop, unless prevented by some urgent cause, ought to bless the new fire; for this purpose he puts on the amice, alb, cincture, violet stole and cope; wearing the mitre, and holding the crosier in his hand, attended by the deacon and sub-deacon, and the two assistant deacons in folded chasubles, and the assistant priest in cope, and preceded by the cross and the clergy, he goes to the porch, where the new fire has been lighted, and blesses it as directed page 323, and in the Roman Missal. After which, he takes off his vestments, and puts on the cape.

Article III.

The Exultet, and of the Blessing of the Paschal Candle.

1. The Bishop, dressed in cape, sits on his pontifical chair, having at his side the two assistant deacons, and the assistant priest, and puts incense into the censer and blesses it, the assistant priest presenting to him the incense-boat.

2. The sub-deacon in violet folded chasuble, taking the processional cross, goes with the deacon, who is habited in a white dalmatic, with a sufficient number of

attending clergymen, to the place where the triple candle and other necessary things have been prepared. The Bishop, with his assistants, remains at his seat, and the rest of the clergy in the sanctuary.

3. The master of ceremonies walks first; then the censer-bearer, having at his left an acolyte; after them a sub deacon carrying the cross; the deacon follows; and, lastly, four acolytes, two by two.

4. On arriving at the place prepared, the master of ceremonies lights a candle from the new fire; the deacon takes the triple candle, and one of the acolytes the plate with the grains of incense; after this, they go back in the following order: first the acolyte, carrying with both hands the plate with the grains of incense; on his left, the censer-bearer, swinging the censer gently; second, the sub-deacon carrying the cross; third, the deacon with the triple candle, and on his left, the master of ceremonies with the lighted candle; lastly, the four acolytes, two by two.

5. As the deacon enters the church, he lowers the triple candle, that one of the branches may be lighted by the master of ceremonies, then he raises it again; and he, as well as all the others in the procession, together with the Bishop and all the clergy, kneel on one knee, when *Lumen Christi* is sung by the deacon; and rise when *Deo gratias* is answered by the clergy. The same is done a second time when they arrive at the middle of the church, and a third time when they arrive before the altar; but the deacon, at each time, raises his voice one tone higher.

6. Then the Bishop and all in the sanctuary sit down. Those of the procession rise, and place themselves as directed in the preceding Book, chapter viii. The deacon

having left the triple candle in the hands of one of the acolytes, receives from the master of ceremonies the Missal; and having made the usual genuflection to the altar, and reverences to the Bishop and the clergy, goes to the Bishop, and without kissing his hand, says, *Jube Domne*, &c.; the Bishop makes the sign of the cross towards him, using the accustomed form, *Dominus sit*, &c., saying, however, *Paschale præconium*, instead of *Evangelium*.

7. The deacon, having received the blessing, goes from the Bishop's seat to the middle before the altar, between the cross-bearer and the acolyte, who carries the triple candle, and having there made a genuflection, and the usual reverences, as directed in page 327, he goes to sing the Preface, which begins by the word *Exultet*, and performs every thing as directed in the same place.

8. When the deacon commences, the Bishop and all the clergy in the sanctuary rise, and stand with their heads uncovered during it.

Article IV.

From the end of the Exultet to the Benediction of the Baptismal Font.

1. The *Exultet* being ended, the deacon shuts the Missal, leaves it on its stand, goes to the bench of the sacred ministers, takes off his white maniple, dalmatic, and stole, and puts on the violet stole; the sub-deacon leaves the cross by the side-table, and takes off his folded chasuble and maniple, and with the deacon goes to the Bishop's seat, and the acolyte places the triple candle on its stand at the Gospel side.

2. The Bishop and all the clergy, standing with their heads uncovered, say, *Pater et Ave*, secretly, and then sit down, and *None* is recited. After the last Psalm, the Bishop kneels at the faldstool, the clergy kneeling likewise during the *Christus* and the *Miserere;* after which, the Bishop says the prayer, *Respice.* Then having returned to his seat, he reads the Psalm, *Quam dilecta*, &c., with the *Gloria Patri*, and the other verses with the following prayers; at the same time he puts on the white sandals; after the prayers he washes his hands, and puts on the pontifical vestments of violet color, including the maniple and the plain mitre, reading the appropriate prayers. The clergy likewise put on their sacred vestments; and the Bishop being vested, the two assistant deacons in violet folded chasubles, and the assistant priest in violet cope, go to the Bishop's chair, and the deacons to their bench, where they put on their violet chasubles and maniples, and sit down.

3. The Bishop rises, takes the crosier in his left hand, and attended by his assistants, and the deacon and sub-deacon, goes up to the altar, which he kisses, after having taken off his mitre. Then having made a reverence to the cross, he puts on the mitre, takes the crosier in his left hand, and attended by the assistant deacons and priest, goes to his chair, where he sits; the deacon and sub-deacon go to their bench. All in the sanctuary sit down.

4. A book-stand is placed in the middle of the sanctuary; a clergyman, attended by the master of ceremonies, goes to it, makes a genuflection to the altar, and the usual reverences to the Bishop and to the clergy, on each side of the sanctuary, and reads the first prophecy, without the title. In the mean time, the Bishop reads

the same prophecy out of the book, which an acolyte holds open before him. Whilst he reads, his assistants stand near him. The singer having finished the prophecy, and made the usual genuflection and reverences, goes to kiss the Bishop's hand, and to receive his blessing. Then the Bishop rises, sings, *Oremus*—the first assistant deacon, *Flectamus genua.* At these words, all in the sanctuary (the Bishop only excepted) make a genuflection, and the second deacon sings, *Levate;* then all rise, and the Bishop sings the prayer out of the book, which the assistant priest holds open before him. The same is done in regard to all the other prophecies, with the exception, that after the fourth, eighth, and eleventh prophecies, the choir sings the Tract, and the Bishop reads it. After the twelfth prophecy, *Flectamus genua* and *Levate* are not sung.

Article V.

Blessing the Baptismal Font.

1. After the prayer which follows the last prophecy, the Bishop takes off the maniple, chasuble, dalmatic, and tunic, and puts on a violet cope; then, with his mitre on, and the crosier in his left hand, preceded by the cross, carried by the sub-deacon and all the clergy, arranged as directed at page 330, he between two assistant deacons goes to the baptismal font, the assistant priest walking immediately before him at the right of the deacon, and he does every thing as directed in the same place, and in the Roman Missal.

2. If any child or adult is to be baptized, the Bishop baptizes them, as directed in the Roman Ritual.

3. After the blessing of the font, they return to the

sanctuary in procession, in the same order as they came to the font.

Article VI.

From the Benediction of the Font to the beginning of Mass.

1. The Bishop on arriving at the high altar takes off his cope and mitre, and kneels, leaning on the faldstool; the assistants, deacon and sub-deacon, and all the clergy, likewise kneel; and the Litany is sung by two chanters kneeling before two stools behind the Bishop.

If there is an ordination, those who are to be ordained prostrate themselves during the Litany, which the singers interrupt at the proper place when the Bishop is to say, *Ut hos electos*, &c.

2. When the chanters sing the verse, *Per mysterium sanctæ incarnationis tuæ*, the deacon and sub-deacon go to the sacristy, take off their violet vestments, and put on white, and come out immediately.

3. At the verse, *Peccatores*, the Bishop rises with the assistant deacons and priests; the latter go to the sacristy to take off the violet vestments, and put on white; the Bishop, standing in the same place, assisted by the deacon and sub-deacon, takes off the violet vestments, and puts on the white; all the clergy in sacred vestments do the same. In the mean while the acolytes remove from the altar the violet front-veil, and from the tabernacle the canopy of the same color, and from the small table the violet veil that covered the white; the candles are lighted, the relic cases are placed between the candlesticks, and the carpet is spread. The chanters should take care to sing the Litany very slowly from the verse *Peccatores*.

Article VII.

From the beginning to the end of Mass.

1. The Bishop, having put on the white vestments, when the singers begin, *Kyrie*, makes the Confession with his ministers, saying the Psalm *Judica* and the *Gloria Patri;* goes up to the altar, kisses both it and the book of the Gospels; puts incense into the censer and blesses it; incenses the cross and altar, and is incensed, as usual, by the deacon. Then he goes to his seat, where, having said the *Kyrie*, he sings, *Gloria in excelsis Deo.* Then all the bells are rung, and the organ is played.

2. After the hymn, *Gloria in excelsis*, the Bishop rises without mitre, turns towards the people, and sings, *Pax vobis*, and the prayer, *Deus qui hanc sacratissimam noctem*, &c. The rest is done as usual.

3. The sub-deacon, having sung the Epistle, leaves the Missal in the hands of the master of ceremonies, and forthwith going to the Bishop, says in an audible voice, *Reverendissime Pater, Annuntio vobis gaudium magnum, quod est Alleluia*, and kisses his hand; then either the sub-deacon or a chanter intones *Alleluia* to the Bishop, who, rising without mitre, sings thrice, *Alleluia*, raising every time his voice one tone higher, and the choir every time repeats it; and after the third *Alleluia*, sings the verse, *Confitemini;* then the Bishop sits down and continues Mass as usual.

4. At the Gospel, the acolytes do not carry the candlesticks, but the book is incensed as usual, and the deacon asks the blessing. *Pax Domini sit semper vo-*

biscum is said; but the *Pax* is not given. *Agnus Dei* is not said, neither the *Communio.*

5. The Bishop, after the communion and the usual ablutions, washes his hands, goes to his seat, seats himself, and the choir begins *Alleluia*, in place of Vespers. At the *Magnificat*, the sub-deacon intones the antiphon to the Bishop, which he repeats, standing; then he sits with his mitre on, puts incense into the censer, and when the *Magnificat* is begun, he goes to the altar, takes off his mitre, makes the reverence, kisses the altar, incenses the cross and the altar, returns to his seat, is incensed, as well as all the clergy, as usual, and stands till the end of the *Magnificat.* Whilst the antiphon is repeated, he sits, puts on the mitre, returns to the altar at the end of the antiphon, sings, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayer; the deacon sings, *Benedicamus Domino*, *Alleluia*, *Alleluia;* the Bishop gives the solemn blessing, and the Indulgences are published.

Then the Bishop disrobes and retires, as usual.

CHAPTER XIV.

CEREMONIES TO BE OBSERVED IN PROVINCIAL COUNCILS.*

ARTICLE I.

What is to be done before it opens.

1. Previous notice should be given of the celebration of the Provincial Council to all the Bishops of the province, and others who are to attend.

---

* Ex Cæremoniali Episcoporum, L. i., c. 31, et ex Pontificali Romano, Part III., Tit. Ordo ad Synodum.

2. On the feast of the Epiphany, when the movable feasts are published, as directed in the Roman Pontifical, Part III., *Tit. De publicatione festorum mobilium in Epiphania Domini*, adding to the usual formula before the publication of the movable feast, immediately following the day of the celebration of the Council, these words, *Die . . . mensis . . . hujus anni, quæ erit dominica . . . Concilium provinciale Deo adjuvante in Metropolitana Ecclesia ——— inchoabitur.*

3. On the three Sundays immediately preceding the opening of the Council, it should be published from the pulpit before the sermon, in all the churches of the province, and the prayers of the people requested for its success. It is usual on such occasions, that the Bishop of each diocese order the Collect, *De Spiritu Sancto*, to be added at Mass every day till the conclusion of the Council.

Article II.

How the Metropolitan Church is to be adorned and arranged.

1. The Metropolitan, or any other church in which the Council is to be celebrated, should be adorned as for the greatest festivals. On the evening before, the bells, with festive peals, should announce the opening of the Council.

2. The Archbishop's seat is placed at the altar; those of the Bishops on each side of the sanctuary: those nearest to the altar are to be occupied by the senior bishops, according to priority of consecration; they should be raised on a platform by one or two steps. The other clergymen may sit against the railing of the sanc-

tuary; the vicars-general of any diocese, if present, taking precedence, according to priority of ordination; next, the superiors of clerical congregations; next, the provincials of religious orders; next, the theologians, according to priority of ordination. The first place is on the Gospel side. This arrangement is not quite conformable to that prescribed by the Roman Pontifical, in which it is required that the Bishops should sit in a semicircle before the Archbishop, and behind them the priests; but we have adapted ours to suit best the sanctuary of our churches.

3. The Archbishop's usual chair should be likewise prepared and adorned as on great festivals, with stools on each side for the two assistant deacons; also a third one for the assistant priest.

4. The seats for the deacon and sub-deacon are to be placed, as usual, at the Epistle side, where also the side-table should be placed.

5. On those days on which one of the bishops sings High Mass, a faldstool should be prepared on the Epistle side, on a small platform, where the officiating Bishop will sit, with his face turned towards the people; on the same side, near the side-wall of the sanctuary, and in the same direction with it, a bench should be placed, where the deacon and sub-deacon with the assistant priest sit.

Article III.

THE OPENING OF THE COUNCIL.

Section I.—*What is to be prepared for it.*

1. In one of the rooms of the Archbishop's house, the following vestments are to be prepared:

For the Archbishop, sandals and stockings, amice, alb, cincture, with red stole and cope, crosier and mitre.

For the Archbishop's assistant priest, a red cope, which he puts over his surplice or on his rochet, if he is entitled to use it.

For the Archbishop's assistant deacons, red vestments suitable to their order.

For each of the bishops, an amice, cope, and mitre; they put the amice over their rochet.

For the officiating deacon and sub-deacon, the sacred vestments of their order.

For priests, sacerdotal vestments.

If other deacons and sub-deacons be present, besides those who officiate, a sufficient number of sacred vestments suitable to their order.

For the Archbishop, on the altar, a chasuble, the dalmatic, and tunic and gloves, which he puts on immediately before he begins Mass, having taken off the cope; also the pallium.

If the Archbishop could not celebrate Mass, he remains in cope, and assists at the Mass celebrated by the senior Bishop of the province—who, in this case, puts on the pontifical dress in the Archbishop's house, and is attended by the deacon and sub-deacon, and an assistant priest.

Section II.—*The Procession.*

1. All the prelates and clergy being dressed, the procession moves from the Archbishop's house in the following order:

The censer-bearer and the second master of ceremonies.

The cross-bearer, between the acolytes carrying their candlesticks.

The inferior clergy in surplices, two by two.

Those in sacred orders in dalmatics, two by two.

The priests in chasubles, two by two.

The Bishops in mitre and cope, two by two, according to the time of consecration, those last consecrated going before.

The senior Bishop—pontifically dressed to celebrate Mass, preceded by his assistant priest, and between the deacon and sub-deacon, in case the Archbishop could not sing it—should walk after the other bishops.

The sub-deacon.

The assistant priest at the right of the deacon.

The Archbishop's cross.

The Archbishop between the two assistant deacons, and followed by the crosier and mitre bearers.

2. During the procession, the bells ring continually, and the clergy sing psalms.

3. The organ is played as the procession enters the church.

4. The clergy, as they arrive at the sanctuary, make a genuflection, bow to each other, and go to their places, where they remain standing.

5. When the Archbishop has arrived at his seat, all the clergy sit down; and he takes off his cope, and puts on the other vestments for Mass, if he celebrate.

Section III.—*Mass.*

1. The Mass is to be of the Holy Ghost, with *Gloria* and *Credo*, without any commemoration of the current Feast, or Sunday; the last Gospel is that of St. John. The Archbishop wears the pallium.

2. The Mass is sung as usual. The Bishops and priests in sacred vestments do not kneel at the Confession; they make it, two by two; the one that is at the right begins, the other at the left answers, at the Confession, and at the *Kyrie.* They bow to one another before they begin, and after they have finished, not only for the Confession and *Kyrie*, but also for the *Gloria*, *Credo*, *Sanctus*, and *Agnus Dei*, which they recite together.

3. The deacon incenses the bishops with three double swings, and the priests in sacred vestments with two, in the order that will be pointed out for the *Pax* in the following number.

4. The *Pax* is carried by the assistant priest, first to the senior Bishop, who sits first at the Gospel side, then to the second senior Bishop, who sits first at the Epistle side; afterwards to the priest who sits first at the Gospel side, then to the other, who sits in the first place at the Epistle side.

5. The Archbishop does not give the blessing at the end of Mass, but, as it will be said below, at the end of the Session.

SECTION IV.—*The Ceremonies for the first Session, or the opening of the Council.*

1. It is more convenient that the sermon, which is chiefly intended for the instruction of the people, should be preached after Mass; during this time the Archbishop takes off the chasuble and tunic, and puts on the cope, either in the sacristy, or in the church at his seat.

2. The faldstool is prepared below the lowest step of the altar, in the middle. The Archbishop, attended by the assistant priest and deacon, goes to the middle, salutes the Bishops on each side, and kneels before the

faldstool; having taken off his mitre, he intones the antiphon, *Exaudi nos, Domine*, which is continued and chanted by the choir; after the antiphon, the chanters intone the 68th Psalm,* *Salvum me fac, Deus, quoniam intraverunt aquæ usque ad animam meam*, which is alternately sung by the clergy. After the first verse, all rise, the Archbishop sits on the faldstool, which is placed in the middle of the platform of the altar, having at his side the two assistant deacons and the assistant priest at the right of the first assistant deacon, the book-bearer and the candle-bearer holding respectively the book and the candle before him. The Bishops likewise, with their mitres, and the clergy, with their caps on, sit during the Psalm.

3. After the Psalm is ended, and the anthem *Exaudi* repeated, all rise, and the Archbishop and Bishops take off their mitres. The Archbishop, turned towards the altar, sings the prayer, *Adsumus, Domine Sancte Spiritus*, &c., at the end of which the clergy answer, Amen. Then the Archbishop sings *Oremus*, and the prayer, *Omnipotens sempiterne Deus;* after which the clergy answer, Amen.

4. Then the Archbishop, with his mitre on, kneels before the faldstool; the bishops likewise kneel with their mitres on, and all the clergy kneel at their places. The two chanters, kneeling in the middle of the sanctuary, sing the Litany of the Saints, to which the clergy answer.

5. When the chanters have sung the verse, *Ut omnibus fidelibus defunctis*, &c., and the clergy answered, *Te rogamus, audi nos*, the Archbishop alone rises, takes the crosier in his left hand, and turned towards the

* It is found at the beginning of Matins of the V. Feria.

clergy, sings, *Ut hanc præsentem Synodum visitare, disponere, et benedicere digneris;* the clergy answer, *Te rogamus, audi nos.* The chanters continue the Litany to the end—viz., as far as *Kyrie eleison, Christe eleison,* and *Kyrie eleison,* inclusively.

6. The Litanies being ended, they all rise, the Archbishop and Bishops take off their mitres, the Archbishop turned towards the altar, sings, *Oremus;* the first deacon, *Flectamus genua,* and the second, *Levate.* The Archbishop sings the prayer, *Da quæsumus ecclesiæ tuæ,* &c.

7. The prayer being ended, the Archbishop goes up to the altar, sits on the chair or faldstool placed in the middle, turning his back to the altar. The clergy sit in the mean time, and the Archbishop puts the incense into the censer and blesses it, as usual. The deacon carries the Missal, and lays it on the altar, kneels, says, *Munda cor meum,* asks the Archbishop's blessing, and goes with the sub-deacon, master of ceremonies, censer-bearer, and acolytes, to the place where the Gospel is usually sung; having first made the genuflection to the altar, and bowed to the Archbishop, Bishops, and clergy, he sings in the usual manner the Gospel, which is taken from St. Luke, c. 9, from v. 1 to 6.

8. After the Gospel, the sub-deacon carries the Missal to the Archbishop, who kisses it; and the deacon incenses him, as usual.

9. After the Archbishop has been incensed, he takes off his mitre, and kneels before his chair, or faldstool; the Bishops likewise, having taken off their mitres, and all the clergy, kneel at their places. The Archbishop intones the hymn, *Veni, Creator Spiritus,* and the choir continues to sing it; after the first strophe, they all rise, and stand till the end of the whole hymn.

10. After the hymn, all sit, and the Archbishop makes a Latin allocution to the Council, either as it is in the Roman Pontifical, or any other, as he pleases. Should he choose to have another discourse addressed to the Council by some one else, it may be made at this time.

11. The Archbishop addresses the Fathers of the Council to this effect: *Reverendissimi Patres, Venerabiles fratres, placetne vobis ad Dei gloriam et honorem, et ad Catholicæ Ecclesiæ amplificationem Concilium provinciale . . . . . legitime convocatum, et hic congregatum hodierno die aperiri et inchoari.* The Bishops severally reply, *Placet, aperiatur.* Then the Archbishop, in his own name and that of his colleagues, turning towards the people, says, *Christi nomine invocato, decernimus Sanctam Synodum provincialem . . . . . esse apertam, et ita judicamus.**

12. The Archbishop then orders his secretary to read the names of those whom he proposes as officers of the Council; which being read, he says, *Placetne vobis, venerabiles fratres, hosce in Concilii officiales eligendos.* The Bishops severally answer, *Placet.* The Archbishop's secretary then reads the Decree in these words: *Reverendissimus D. Archiepiscopus . . . . . una cum Episcopis in hoc sacro Concilio Provinciali congregatis decernit hosce Reverendos viros in officiales hujus sancti Concilii eligendos esse, et legitime jam electos, nempe Promotorem . . . . . Secretarios . . . . . Magistros Cæremoniarum . . . . . Cantores.*

13. The Promoter addresses the Archbishop: *Illustrissime ac Reverendissime Domine, peto ut legantur Sacro-sancti Concilii Tridentini decreta de Professione*

---

* Ex Concil. Rhemensi, an. 1583.

fidei, et de residentia. The Archbishop addressing the Bishops, says: *Venerabiles fratres, placetne vobis ut legantur decreta Concilii Tridentini de Professione fidei, et de residentia?* The Bishops severally reply, *Placet, legantur.* Then the Archdeacon reads the decrees.

14. Then, such of the Bishops as have not in a former Council made the profession of faith, approach to the front of the altar, take off their mitres, make a genuflection on the lowest step, salute the Archbishop, and kneeling on the step, simultaneously recite the Profession of Faith as in the Roman Pontifical. In saying the last words, *Sic me Deus adjuvet*, &c., each Bishop places his right hand on the Book of the Gospel. After having made the usual genuflection and salutation, they retire to their places.

15. The Archbishop then gives the solemn pontifical blessing, which the Bishops receive standing, with their heads uncovered, and profoundly inclined. After this, they all retire as usual to the sacristy, where they disrobe.

Article IV.

Mode of procedure of the Council.

1. Each day, two meetings, called Congregations, are usually held; the one private, consisting of the Bishops alone, with the secretaries of the Council, in the sacristy of the Metropolitan church, or in the Archbishop's house, in the morning, from about nine till twelve; the other public, in the afternoon, held in the Metropolitan church, from about four to six. To this latter are invited the Theologians of the Archbishop and Bishops, with the Supervisors of the Religious Orders, and Clerical bodies,

and all the officers of the Council. The chief matters, which each prelate intends to submit to the consideration of the Council, are usually made known by him to the Archbishop, within a reasonable time before the holding of the Council, and by the Archbishop communicated to the Bishops generally. The Promoter, after the opening of the Council, appoints select committees, called also Congregations, of the inferior clergy there assembled, to whom such matters as the Bishops deem proper are referred for examination. They assemble in the morning at convenient places to investigate the matters submitted to them respectively, and their written reports are read in the public Congregations; after the reading of the reports, the Promoter suggests that any clergyman who dissents therefrom, or who wishes to propose any amendment, or to make any observation, may freely, but respectfully, deliver his sentiments. If no one rises to speak, the Promoter proposes that the report be referred to the Bishops for private consideration. Should any one choose to speak, the reference is made after the sentiments have been delivered. In speaking, each clergyman follows the order in which they are seated. No clergyman speaks a second time on the same subject, unless he obtains special leave.

2. In the private Congregations of the Bishops, the matters to be submitted to the consideration of the clergy are designated; the reports of the clergy are subsequently read, and the matters finally decided. Each prelate, according to priority of consecration, is free to express his sentiments on the respective matters treated of in the Council. After the matters have been canvassed, the question is put by the Archbishop, and

the decision made by the majority of suffrages, which are given according to the order of consecration.

3. It is usual in Councils, that all propositions be expressed in the Latin language and given in writing, and that the decrees be in the first instance drawn up in that language.

4. No special exercise of devotion is prescribed for the various Congregations. It is usual, however, to begin by the recital of the hymn, *Veni Creator Spiritus.* The evening Congregation is opened by the recital of the *Veni, Sancte Spiritus*, &c., and closed by reciting the *Sub tuum præsidium.* In this article we have stated the usages of the Baltimore Councils.

Article V.

Second solemn Session.

1. On some day during the holding of the Council, a second solemn session is celebrated; High Mass for the deceased Bishops and clergy is sung by one of the prelates, the other prelates assisting in their pontifical robes; a discourse is usually pronounced after Mass, by a prelate or priest appointed for that purpose.

2. A faldstool or chair for the celebrant is placed on a small platform in front of the altar, at the Epistle side, so that the celebrant when sitting has his face towards the people. A bench for the assistant priest, deacon, and sub-deacon, is placed near the faldstool, parallel to the side-wall of the sanctuary. The assistant priest takes his seat on it, nearest to the Bishop's left hand; next to him sits the deacon on the same bench; the sub-deacon sits at the side of the deacon.

3. The prelates dress in the sacristy, and proceed

thence to the church, in the same order as on the first day, except that the celebrant with his assistants follows the other prelates, and walks immediately before the Archbishop.

4. The prelates go to their respective seats, and the celebrant with his assistants, having made a genuflection before the altar, salutes the Archbishop and the prelates, and then begins Mass as usual.

5. The ceremonies of the Mass are the same as on other occasions, with the following exceptions. After the Confession the Bishop ascends to the altar and kisses it, and then, having received the mitre, makes a profound bow to the cross, and goes directly, *per breviorem*, to the faldstool, where the sub-deacon, having taken off the mitre, the celebrant and assistants standing with their faces turned to the altar, the celebrant reads the Introit, and says the *Kyrie;* he turns to the people to say, *Dominus vobiscum*, and turns again to the altar to say the prayer. He sits whilst the sub-deacon sings the epistle, which being terminated, he himself reads it with the Tract, *Sequentia*, *Munda cor meum*, and the Gospel. The Offertory is read by him standing with his face towards the altar, which posture is observed whenever he reads or sings any thing standing.

6. At the end of the Mass, the celebrant with his assistants retires to the sacristy, and the Archbishop from his chair performs the absolution of the dead as usual.

7. After the absolution, the black ornaments are laid aside, and the prelates put on copes. The ceremonies of the session are performed as prescribed in the Roman Pontifical,—for the second day of the synod, beginning

with the anthem, *Propitius esto peccatis nostris, Domine, nequando dicant gentes: ubi est Deus eorum?* and the Psalm 78, *Deus, venerunt gentes in hæreditatem tuam*, &c., which may be found in the Breviary, at Fer. V. ad Matutin. The prelates and clergy kneel while the anthem and first verse of the Psalm are sung, and then resume their mitres, and sit until the end of the Psalm, as directed in the first session. The prayers are then sung by the Archbishop, after which he resumes his seat on the platform of the altar, and puts in, and blesses the incense, and gives the blessing to the deacon; then all the prelates and clergy rise, and stand with their heads uncovered, while the deacon sings the Gospel, *Designavit Dominus*, Luke 10th, from the 1st verse to the 9th inclusive, with the usual ceremonies.

8. Afterwards, all kneel with their heads uncovered, whilst the first verse of the hymn, *Veni, Creator Spiritus*, is sung, which being intoned by the Archbishop, is continued by the choir and clergy. After the first verse, all rise, and stand until the termination of the hymn. Then all resume their seats, and the Archbishop addresses them in the words of the Pontifical, or others, if he thinks proper. Such decrees as have been already agreed on may be then read, and the assent of the Fathers asked, after which the pontifical blessing is given, and all depart.

Article VI.

Third solemn Session.

1. On the last day of the Council the third solemn session is held. The prelates wear copes and mitres as in the other sessions. Solemn Mass is celebrated by the Archbishop, or by one of the Bishops.

2. When one of the Bishops celebrates, he proceeds before the Archbishop to the sanctuary, as before expressed, and observes the other peculiar ceremonies stated in the preceding article. On ascending to the altar, after the Confession, he makes the usual incensing, and then, having received the mitre, he stands at the Epistle side of the altar, with his face turned towards the side-wall, and is incensed by the deacon. He then retires to his faldstool and reads the Introit. The censer-bearer, in the mean time, carries the censer to the assistant priest of the Archbishop, who incenses the Archbishop. After the Gospel, the celebrant is incensed by the deacon, and then the archbishop by his assistant priest. After the Offertory, the celebrant is incensed by his deacon, the Archbishop by his assistant priest, and the prelates by the deacon, with three double swings, the clergy in sacred vestments, with two, and the inferior clergy with one.

3. The *Pax* is given by the celebrant, first to the assistant priest of the Archbishop, who, advancing to the altar, kneels down as usual, whilst the previous prayer is recited. The deacon and sub-deacon then receive the *Pax* from the celebrant. In the mean time, the assistant priest of the Archbishop gives the *Pax* to the Archbishop, who immediately gives it to his assistant deacons. The assistant priest of the celebrant, after the deacon and sub-deacon have received the *Pax*, goes to the assistant priest of the Archbishop and from him receives the *Pax*, which he subsequently gives to the first prelate on each side, and to the first among the clergymen. The Bishop, who receives from him the *Pax*, gives it to the next, and so on.

4. The celebrant does not give any blessing at the end

of Mass, but having secretly said the prayer, *Placeat*, &c., recites the Gospel of St. John, and, with his attendants, retires to the sacristy.

5. The Archbishop advances towards the altar and kneels by his faldstool below the lowest step. He begins the anthem, *Exaudi nos, Domine, quoniam benigna est misericordia tua, et secundum multitudinem miserationum tuarum respice nos, Domine;* which is chanted as the Psalm, *Salvum me fac, Deus*, on the first day. Then three prayers are sung by the Archbishop, and the Gospel is sung, taken from the 18th chap. of St. Matt., from the 15th to the 22d v. The hymn, *Veni Creator*, is sung as in the preceding sessions. The Archbishop, seated on his faldstool on the platform of the altar, addresses his brethren in the words of the Pontifical, or in such other terms as he deems expedient. A sermon is delivered by a prelate, or priest, appointed by the Council, unless it has been already delivered during Mass, or subsequently. The secretary of the Council, by order of the Archbishop, reads the decrees which have been prepared in the private Congregations of the prelates, and the Promoter solicits that they be publicly approved of and confirmed by the Council, in these words: *Reverendissime Pater, ego N. hujus Sancti Concilii promotor, peto ut decreta hæc quæ lecta sunt, a patribus hujus Concilii approbentur et confirmentur, ad ecclesiæ Catholicæ augmentum.* Then the Archbishop proposes them to the judgment of the prelates, in these words: *Placetne vobis, Venerabiles Fratres, hæc quæ lecta sunt decreta approbare et confirmare.* The Bishops severally reply, *Placet, approbamus, confirmamus.* Then the secretary reads the decree in these words: *Nos N. N. Archiepiscopus aliique episcopi in hoc Sacro-*

Concilio adunati decreta hæc quæ mox lecta sunt, approbamus, et confirmamus. Then the prelates sign the decrees, which are placed by the secretary on the altar; the Archbishop first subscribes, in these words, *Ego N. Archiepiscopus . . . . . definiens subscripsi.* The Archbishop having retired from the altar to his seat, the other Bishops, according to priority of consecration, successively advance towards the high altar, and, having made a genuflection and saluted the Archbishop, severally subscribe the decrees in these words, *Ego N. epis. N. definiens subscripsi.*

6. The Archbishop having returned to the faldstool, on the platform of the altar, the Promoter solicits that the Council be terminated, in words of this import: *Reverendissime Pater, ego N. hujus S. Concilii Promotor, peto ut huic Concilio Provinciali finis jam fiat.* The Archbishop inquires into the wishes of the Fathers in words to this effect: *Venerabiles Fratres, placetne vobis ad Dei Omnipotentis laudem hujus Concilii Provincialis finem jam fieri.* The Fathers severally answer, *Placet.* The secretary then reads the decree in these terms: *Nos N. Archiepiscopus . . . . . aliique Patres qui huic Concilio Provinciali intersumus, cum absoluta sint quæ pro temporis ratione agi gerique posse videbantur, cumque pastoralis cura ad ecclesiarum nostrarum status et pastorales vigilias revocet, propterea huic Sancto Concilio finem imponi censuimus.*

7. The prayer, *Nulla est, Domine*, as in the Roman Pontifical, is then sung by the Archbishop.

8. Afterwards the Acclamations are sung by the arch-deacon, the prelates and clergy singing the responses.

9. After the Acclamations, the *Te Deum* is sung, and

after it the prayer, *Pro gratiarum actione; Deus cujus misericordiæ non est numerus*, &c. The Archbishop then having returned to his seat, gives the *Pax* to each of the bishops; each of them, as he advances to receive it, retaining his mitre, salutes the Archbishop. Each Bishop subsequently gives the *Pax* to all of his brethren in their respective places.

The Session closes with the solemn blessing of the Archbishop. The deacon sings, *Recedamus in pace*, and the clergy respond, *In nomine Christi.* They then return to the sacristy, and disrobe as usual.

CHAPTER XV.

CEREMONIES TO BE OBSERVED IN DIOCESAN SYNODS.

1. The priests and clergymen of every grade, who by right or custom are bound to come to the Synod, assemble in the city, or such other place as the Bishop may prescribe.

2. On the first day of the Synod, at a very early hour in the morning, the Bishop in his ordinary episcopal dress (*cappam indutus*), accompanied by all the clergy in surplice, goes to the church, puts on the pontifical vestments at his seat, celebrates the Mass of the Holy Ghost, and gives communion to the clergy. At the end of Mass the faldstool or seat is placed on the floor of the sanctuary, near the lowest step, about the middle of the altar; and another seat on the platform of the altar;

(the faldstool, however, may suffice, and be placed on the platform at the proper time.)

3. The Bishop, over his rochet, or over his surplice, if he be a regular, puts on the amice, stole, red cope, and precious mitre, and bearing his pastoral staff, goes before the altar; the deacon and sub-deacon, in red ornaments, such as they use at Mass, accompanying him, one on each side. Kneeling there before the faldstool, and having laid aside the mitre, he begins the antiphon, *Exaudi nos, Domine*, &c., which the choir continues. The Psalm 68, *Salvum me fac Deus*, is then sung. After the first verse, the Bishop sits with the mitre, and so remains until the antiphon is repeated, after the conclusion of the Psalm.

4. The Bishop rises, and turning towards the altar, after the mitre has been taken off, says the prayer, *Adsumus Domine*, &c., to which all reply, Amen. He then says, *Oremus, Omnipotens sempiterne Deus*, &c., as in the Pontifical.

5. At the end of this latter prayer, the Bishop, having put on the mitre, kneels, leaning on the faldstool, and all the clergy kneel, whilst the chanters sing the Litany. After the verse, *Ut omnibus fidelibus defunctis*, &c., the Bishop rises, and holding his crosier in his left hand, standing with his face towards the Synod, says, *Ut hanc præsentem Synodum visitare, disponere, et benedicere digneris, R. Te rogamus, audi nos.* In saying this, he makes the sign of the cross over all; and then he again kneels as before until the end of the Litany.

6. The Litany being sung, all rise, and the Bishop, laying aside his mitre, says, with his face turned towards the altar, *Oremus.* The deacon says, *Flectamus genua;*

the sub-deacon, *Levate*. Then the Bishop recites the prayer, *Da quæsumus*, &c. This being finished, he resumes the mitre, ascends to the seat prepared for him on the platform of the altar, and sits with his back towards the altar. He puts incense into the censer, and blesses it, as usual. The deacon, in red dalmatic, preceded by the censer-bearer and acolytes, and by the sub-deacon in tunic, after the pontifical blessing, sings the Gospel, Luke ix., 1, 6. The sub-deacon then presents the book of the Gospels to the Bishop to kiss, and the deacon subsequently incenses him. The Bishop then putting off his mitre, kneels before the seat, with his face towards the altar, and all the others kneel at the same time, in their respective places. The hymn, *Veni, Creator Spiritus* is begun by the bishop, and continued by the choir. After the first verse, the Bishop rises, and stands without his mitre, and with his face towards the altar, until the end of the hymn; and in like manner all the others rise with the Bishop. Then all sit, and the Bishop having resumed the mitre, and seated himself on the platform of the altar, addresses them in the words of the Pontifical, or others, at discretion.

7. After the address, or before, as the Bishop may think proper, a discourse is delivered by some learned priest, who in it treats of ecclesiastical discipline, of the divine mysteries, and of the correction of abuses, according as the Bishop may think fit. After the discourse, any complaints that the clergy may think fit to put forward may be made.

8. Then the Archdeacon reads aloud from the pulpit the Decrees of the Council of Trent, regarding residence and the profession of the faith, which all who are bound

to it make in the hands of the Bishop, according to the form prescribed in the Pontifical.

Finally, all are charitably admonished to conduct themselves with edification in all respects during the Synod. The Bishop, after the admonition, gives the solemn blessing.

9. On the second day of the Synod, the clergy assemble again in the church, and Mass being ended, the Bishop, dressed as on the first day, proceeds to the foot of the altar, accompanied by the deacon and sub-deacon, who likewise are dressed as on the preceding day; then kneeling before the faldstool, and having laid aside his mitre, he begins the antiphon, *Propitius esto*, which is continued by the choir. The 78th Psalm, *Deus, venerunt gentes*, is then sung. After the first verse the Bishop sits down, resumes his mitre, and remains seated until the antiphon is repeated at the end of the Psalm.

10. The antiphon having been repeated, the Bishop lays aside the mitre, rises, and turning towards the altar, says the prayer, *Nostrorum tibi*, &c., and the other prayers marked in the Pontifical.

11. Then the Bishop ascends to the seat prepared for him on the platform of the altar. After this, the deacon presents the censer. The Bishop puts incense into the censer, then gives his blessing to the deacon, who afterwards proceeds to sing the Gospel, with the accustomed ceremonies; the Bishop having taken off his mitre, stands at his seat turned towards the deacon.

12. When the Gospel has been sung, the Bishop kisses the book, and is incensed. Then the Bishop kneels before his seat, and the clergy kneeling also at their places, he intones the hymn, *Veni, Creator*, which is continued by the choir till the end, as on the first day. After the

first verse, the Bishop rises, and stands with the mitre on, his face being towards the altar; the clergy likewise stand until the end of the hymn. The hymn being sung, they sit in silence. Then the Bishop being seated, and having received the mitre, addresses the clergy in the words of the Pontifical, or others, at his discretion.

13. After the address, or before it, if the Bishop thinks proper, a discourse is delivered by some learned priest, who treats of ecclesiastical discipline, or of other subjects at the pleasure of the Bishop. After this, the Archdeacon reads the decrees of the Holy See, or of Provincial Councils, which have not yet been promulgated, or any others the Bishop may direct. Afterwards the Diocesan Constitutions are read, which are to be approved of by the Synod. Then the suffrages are taken, and those which are approved of, are confirmed. This being done, the Bishop rises, and gives his solemn blessing, as on the preceding day. Then all retire.

14. On the third day, the clergy being assembled in the church, at the end of Mass, the Bishop dressed as on the preceding days, accompanied by the deacon and subdeacon, makes a genuflection on the lowest step, in the middle of the altar, and laying aside his mitre, commences the antiphon, *Exaudi nos, Deus*, which is continued by the choir. Then is intoned the 68th Psalm, *Salvum me fac, Deus*, as on the first day, and the antiphon is repeated at the end of it. After the first verse, the Bishop takes his seat in the middle of the altar, resumes his mitre, and remains sitting until the antiphon is repeated. When this is sung, he puts aside his mitre, rises, and turning towards the altar, says, *Oremus, Ad te, Domine*, and the other prayers mentioned in the Pontifical. When these are said, he resumes his mitre,

and sits on the faldstool prepared for him. Then the deacon, with the censer-bearer, comes to him, and the Bishop puts incense into the censer. Then he gives his blessing to the deacon, who proceeds to sing the Gospel at the accustomed place, with the usual ceremonies; the Bishop standing before his seat, without his mitre, and turned towards the deacon.

15. After the Gospel, the book is brought to the Bishop to be kissed, and the deacon incenses him. The Bishop having taken off his mitre, kneels before his seat, turned towards the altar, and all the others likewise kneeling, he intones the hymn, *Veni, Creator Spiritus*, which is continued by the choir to the end. The first verse having been sung, the Bishop rises, turned towards the altar, without his mitre, and remains standing till the end. The hymn being ended, all sit in silence. Then the Bishop, being seated with his mitre, addresses the Synod, if he pleases, in the words which follow—*Venerabiles fratres*, &c.; or he may direct that some learned priest should deliver a discourse on the topics herein mentioned.

16. Then the constitutions are read, which are to be approved by the Fathers; which being approved, if it seems good to them, and all things being concluded, the Bishop being seated, and having his mitre on, recommends himself to the prayers of all. When the names of those who ought to be present are read out, each one rises and answers, *Adsum*. A fine is inflicted on the absent. Then the Bishop, being still seated with his mitre on, admonishes those who are present, in the words of the Pontifical, *Fratres dilectissimi*, &c., or in other words at discretion.

17. Then the Bishop lays aside his mitre, and rising,

turned towards the altar, says the prayer, *Nulla est*, &c.; afterwards, he gives his solemn blessing. After this, the Archdeacon, standing by his side, says, *Procedamus in pace*, to which all answer, *In nomine Christi.* Then all rise, and accompany the Bishop to his house.

18. If either on the first or second day all the business of the Synod be terminated, the Synod may be concluded in the manner here prescribed for the third day.

CHAPTER XVI.

SOLEMN ADMINISTRATION OF THE SACRAMENT OF CONFIRMATION.

Article I.

Things to be Prepared.

1. On the Gospel side of the sanctuary, the Bishop's chair raised on a platform by two or three steps, with a canopy over it, and hangings behind it.

2. On the altar, the Bishop's vestments, viz., the amice, stole, cope, mitre, and crosier.

3. On the side-table, the Pontifical book, the candlestick with a candle, the vessel containing the holy chrism, on a small plate, a sufficient quantity of cotton to wipe the forehead (this cotton should be divided in small balls for greater convenience), a ewer and basin, to wash the Bishop's hands, clean towels on a plate, some slices of bread, neatly cut and arranged on another small plate, for the same purpose.

4. Outside of the sanctuary, but near the rails, some

benches for those who are to be confirmed; all the men at the Epistle side, and the women at the Gospel side.

5. Those who are to be confirmed should have been previously instructed and prepared by the sacrament of Penance; and it is advisable that they receive on the same day the Holy Communion, which may be done either at the Bishop's Mass, or at the High Mass, as may be deemed most convenient. Each ought to have a ticket, on which should be written the Christian and family name, which each should hold in the hand, when he kneels to receive Confirmation, and give to the clergyman who attends the Bishop. This will answer the double purpose of suggesting the Christian name to the Bishop, and of recording it, together with the family name, in the Register.

6. Where it is customary to have sponsors, these should be placed behind the persons to be confirmed, and should be no more than one for each, and of the same sex as the person to be confirmed.

7. It is customary in some places to add another name on this occasion, especially if that which they have be not of some saint. The adopted name ought to be written after the name received at baptism, and called with it by the Bishop.

8. It is proper that the solemn administration of Confirmation should be made at High Mass, either before it commences, or, as it seems more convenient, especially if the persons to be confirmed receive communion at it, after Mass.

9. There should be four boys dressed as those who usually attend at High Mass, one to hold the mitre, another the crosier, another the book, and another the candlestick.

Article II.

The Administration of the Sacrament of Confirmation.

1. At the stated hour, the Bishop, attended by the clergy and preceded by the acolytes, goes to the church; on arriving before the altar, he makes a genuflection, kneels on the lowest step, and prays for a while with the clergy; then he goes to his seat; there he takes off his cape, washes his hands, puts on the above-mentioned vestments, which are carried before him by the acolytes, puts on the mitre, and having taken the crosier in his left hand, goes to the altar.

If Confirmation be given after High Mass, the Bishop might assist at it in mitre and cope; in this case, after he has been vested, he goes to the altar to begin Mass; the priest who celebrates Mass ought to come to the sanctuary in his sacerdotal dress, walking immediately before the Bishop; having made a genuflection, when the Bishop goes to his chair, the celebrant should go to his seat, and remain there sitting, until the Bishop is dressed, then he goes to the altar, places himself at the left of the Bishop, and does every thing as directed for High Mass celebrated in presence of the Bishop.

2. On arriving at the altar, the Bishop kneels, and although it is not prescribed by the Pontifical, the hymn, *Veni, Creator Spiritus*, and the prayer, *Deus qui corda fidelium*, are generally sung. Then, either the Bishop or some other clergyman, if the Bishop chooses, gives an instruction on the holy sacrament of Confirmation.

3. After the instruction, the persons to be confirmed are directed to kneel at the rails, holding the tickets in their hands; then the Bishop, turned towards them,

takes off his mitre, sings, *Spiritus Sanctus*, &c., and all the rest as in the Roman Pontifical, with the prayer, *Omnipotens sempiterne Deus*, extending his hand on them.

4. The prayer being ended, the Bishop puts on the mitre, takes the crosier in his left hand, and goes to the rails, where he anoints the foreheads of the persons whom he confirms, and having said, *In nomine Patris*, &c., the attending clergymen answer, *Amen*. One of them, at his right, holds the vessel with the chrism, the other, at his left, wipes the foreheads of those who have been anointed, with the cotton, which an acolyte holds on a plate near him; and either he or another clergyman takes the tickets from the hands of the persons to be confirmed, and suggests their Christian name to the Bishop.

5. When the Bishop has confirmed the men at the Epistle side, and as he continues to confirm the women at the Gospel side, if there be more than one row of them, the men already anointed are directed to retire, walking one after the other, behind the last row, and those of the second row take the place of the first at the rails, those next to them advancing forward; the same is done when the women at the Gospel side are anointed; and so on successively.

6. The Bishop having anointed all those who were to be confirmed, goes to his seat; the acolytes carry to him the ewer with the basin, the towel and the plate with slices of bread; he washes his hands, and in the mean while the choir sings, *Confirma hoc Deus*, &c., or if there be no choir, the Bishop's attendants read it; then he returns to the altar, and turned towards it, sings the verses, *Ostende*, &c., the prayer, *Deus, qui*

apostolis, &c.; afterwards, he turns towards the confirmed, blesses them, as in the Pontifical, gives them the admonitions suggested by the Roman Pontifical, and tells them to say once, *I believe in God*, *Our Father*, and *Hail Mary*.

7. It is proper that the pastor of the congregation should say aloud, with the confirmed, the above prayers enjoined by the Bishop, before they leave the church.

8. The Bishop returns to his seat, takes off the sacred vestments, puts on the cape, and accompanied by the clergy, after a short prayer before the altar, retires.

CHAPTER XVII.

EPISCOPAL VISITATION OF PARISHES.*

Article I.

The Bishop's Reception, when he visits the Parishes of his Diocese.

1. As it would be inconvenient in this country to make the solemn procession as directed in the Roman Pontifical, the essential part of the ceremony might be performed when he goes to the church to administer Confirmation, or the first time the faithful meet in it after his arrival in the parish.

2. He proceeds, accompanied by the clergy, from the priest's house, if near the church, or from the sacristy to the church. On entering it, the clergy or the choir sing the response, *Ecce Sacerdos magnus qui in diebus suis*

---

* Ex Pont. Rom., Part 3.

placuit Deo, &c., in the office, *Confessoris Pontificis;* and the parish priest offers to the Bishop the sprinkle with holy water; the Bishop having received it, first applies to his own forehead, and then sprinkles the others; then the priest presents to him the boat, and the Bishop puts incense into the censer, and the parish priest incenses him. Afterwards, they all go before the high altar, there the Bishop kneels before the faldstool, or the praying-desk, placed below the steps, in the middle; the clergy likewise kneel, and pray for a short time. In the mean time, the parish priest standing with his head uncovered, at the corner of the altar, on the Epistle side, sings what follows:

V. Protector noster, aspice, Deus.
R. Et respice in faciem Christi tui.
V. Salvum fac servum tuum.
R. Deus meus, sperantem in te.
V. Mitte ei, Domine, auxilium de Sancto.
R. Et de Sion tuere eum.
V. Nihil proficiat inimicus in eo.
R. Et filius hominis non apponat nocere ei.
V. Domine, exaudi orationem meam.
R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.
V. Dominus vobiscum.
R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, qui facis mirabilia magna solus, prætende super hunc famulum tuum et cunctas congregationes illi commissas spiritum gratiæ salutaris, et ut in veritate tibi complaceat, perpetuum ei rorem tuæ benedictionis infunde. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. R. Amen.

3. The choir sings an antiphon in honor of the patron Saint; and whilst the verses are sung, the Bishop rises, goes up to the altar, kisses it in the middle, then goes to the Epistle side, and there standing, turned towards the altar, sings the prayer of the same saint.

4. When the visit is the first that the Bishop makes to the parish, instead of the above prayer, *Omnipotens*, &c., the parish priest sings the following:

OREMUS.

Deus, omnium fidelium pastor et rector, famulum tuum N. quem Ecclesiæ tuæ præesse voluisti, propitius respice, da ei quæsumus verbo et exemplo, quibus præest proficere, ut ad vitam una cum grege sibi credito perveniat sempiternam. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. R. Amen.

On the subsequent visits which the Bishop makes to the parishes of his diocese, instead of the above prayer, the following is said:

OREMUS.

Deus humilium visitator, qui eos paterna dilectione consolaris, prætende societati nostræ gratiam tuam; ut per eos, in quibus habitas, tuum in nobis sentiamus adventum. Per Christum Dominum nostrum.

5. After the prayer, the Bishop gives the solemn blessing to the people, saying as usual, *Sit nomen Domini benedictum*, &c., and the Indulgences are published.

6. He then addresses the people, or, if he chooses, after the Gospel at High Mass.

7. High Mass is then celebrated as usual, with the ceremonies to be performed when the Bishop is present.

8. After Mass, the Bishop puts on the amice, alb, cincture, and the black stole and cope, with the plain

mitre, and standing near the altar, turned towards the people, intones the anthem, *Si iniquitates*, and says alternately with the clergy, the Psalm, *De profundis*, &c., and after it, *Requiem*, &c., repeats the anthem, *Si iniquitates observaveris, Domine, Domine, quis sustinebit?* Then, having taken off the mitre, he says:

Kyrie eleison.
R. Kyrie eleison.
Kyrie eleison.
Pater noster, &c., which is continued secretly.
Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.
R. Sed libera nos a malo.
V. In memoria æterna erit justus.
R. Ab auditione mala non timebit.
V. A porta inferi.
R. Erue Domine animas eorum.
V. Requiem æternam dona eis Domine.
R. Et lux perpetua luceat eis.
V. Domine, exaudi orationem meam.
R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.
V. Dominus vobiscum.
R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Deus qui inter Apostolicos sacerdotes famulos tuos pontificali fecisti dignitate vigere; præsta quæsumus, ut eorum quoque perpetuo aggregentur consortio. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. R. Amen.

9. The prayer being ended, if the grave-yard be adjacent to the church, the Bishop, preceded by the cross, the acolytes with the candlesticks, and two others with the censer, and the holy-water vase and sprinkle, and all the clergy, two by two, go in procession to the grave-

yard; but if it be not convenient to the church, they go to the middle of the church, where a cenotaph, with at least four candles, is placed, and the Bishop makes the absolution of the dead. The choir and clergy, while going, sing, *Qui Lazarum resuscitasti a monumento fœtidum, Tu eis, Domine, dona requiem et locum indulgentiæ. V. Qui venturus es judicare vivos et mortuos, et sæculum per ignem, Tu eis*, &c. Then the anthem *Si iniquitates* is intoned, the Psalm *De profundis* is sung, and the anthem repeated.

10. On arriving at the grave-yard, or at the cenotaph, the response *Libera me Domine* is sung, and repeated as usual; the Bishop puts incense into the censer; after the *Kyrie eleison* has been sung thrice, the Bishop sings *Pater noster*, which is continued secretly, sprinkles and incenses as usual, and says:

Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.
R. Sed libera nos a malo.
V. In memoria æterna erunt justi.
R. Ab auditione mala non timebunt.
V. A porta inferi.
R. Erue, Domine, animas eorum.
V. Requiem æternam dona eis, Domine.
R. Et lux perpetua luceat eis.
V. Domine, exaudi orationem meam.
R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.
V. Dominus vobiscum.
V. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Deus qui inter Apostolicos sacerdotes famulos tuos sacerdotali fecisti dignitate vigere, præsta quæsumus ut eorum quoque perpetuo aggregentur consortio.

Deus veniæ largitor, et humanæ salutis amator, quæsumus clementiam tuam, ut nostræ congregationis fratres, propinquos et benefactores, qui ex hoc sæculo transierunt, Beata Maria semper virgine intercedente, cum omnibus sanctis tuis, ad perpetuæ beatitudinis consortium pervenire concedas.

Deus, cujus miseratione animæ fidelium, requiescunt, famulis et famulabus tuis omnibus hic et ubique in Christo quiescentibus, da propitius veniam peccatorum, ut a cunctis reatibus absoluti tecum sine fine lætentur. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. R. Amen.

V. Requiem æternam dona eis Domine.

R. Et lux perpetua luceat eis.

Then two singers sing *Requiescant in pace.* R. Amen.

The Bishop, raising his hand, makes the sign of the cross on the grave-yard, or on the cenotaph, puts on his mitre, and returns to the sanctuary, saying alternately with the clergy the Psalm *Miserere.*

11. On arriving before the altar, the Bishop takes off the mitre, makes a genuflection on the lowest step, and standing before it in the middle, turned towards the altar, says :

Kyrie eleison.

Christe eleison.

Kyrie eleison.

Pater noster, &c.

Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.

R. Sed libera nos a malo.

V. A porta inferi.

R. Erue Domine, animas eorum.

V. Domine exaudi orationem meam.

R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.

V. Dominus vobiscum.

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Absolve, quæsumus, Domine animas famulorum, famularumque tuarum ab omni vinculo delictorum, ut in resurrectionis gloria inter sanctos et electos tuos resuscitati respirent. Per Christum Dominum nostrum. R. Amen.

12. This being ended, the Bishop takes off his black cope and stole, and puts on a white cope and stole, and begins the visitation by the tabernacle, where the Blessed Sacrament is kept; then proceeds to the baptismal font, to the place where the sacred oils are kept, also to that where the relics are kept; visits and inspects the altars, chapels, sacristy, the sacred vestments, the confessionals, and every thing relating to the divine worship; also the parish registers, the grave-yard, &c.

THE THINGS SUBJECT TO THE EPISCOPAL VISITATION ARE THE FOLLOWING:

Of the Holy Eucharist.

Tabernacle.	Veil of ciborium.	Pyx, for the sick.
Veil, and how many.	Particles.	Burse, &c., for communión of the sick.
Interior lining.	Fragments.	Monstrance.
Corporal spread out.	Renewed, how often.	Throne, for benediction.
Ciborium: bowl silver, gilt within.	Key.	Portable lanterns.
Processional canopy.	Lamp, always burning.	Humeral veil.
	Umbrellica for processions	

Of the Baptistry.

Font.	Water.	Holy oils.
Cover.	Drain.	Salt.
Rails.	Shell.	Cloths.

Of the Holy Oils.

Ambry on the Gospel side of Sanctuary.	Vessel for holy oils.	How brought from the cathedral.
Inscription (exterior and interior.)	Cotton wet with oil, dry cotton above.	Renewal.
	Purple burse, or cover.	Burning the old.

Of the Confessionals.

In a public position.	Thick veil.	Doors with bolt.
Pierced grating.	Pictures.	

Of the Holy Relics.

Ambry.
Lining.
Reliquaries.
Names.
Approbation.
Exposition.
Key.
Proper Offices.
Festivals.

Of the Altars.

High Altar.
Steps up to it.
Steps upon it.
Stone Altar.
Consecration.
Wax-cloth.
Altar-cloths.
Their blessing.
Crucifix.
Candlesticks.
Statues.
Pictures.
Altar-cards.
Covering.
Changing-cloths.
Antependiums, and how many.
Canopy.
Predella.
Credence.
Piscina.
Screen, or rails.
Bell.
Endowment.
Obligations.

Of the Church itself.

Choir.
Large Crucifix, in a prominent place.
Bishop's throne, steps, and canopy.
Nave and aisles.
Walls.
Images of saints.
Pulpit.
Windows.
Vaults.
Seats.
Division of sexes.
Roof.
Pavement.
Ambry.
Alms-chests.
Holy-water stoups.
Doors.
Churchyard.
Cross therein.
Trees.
Bell-tower.
Bells.
Their blessing.
Ladders, ropes.
Roof.
Spire.
Weathercock.
Pavement.
Door.
Key.
Use of bells.
Subterranean chapels.
Patron.
Improper epitaphs.
Burying-place for the clergy
And for children.
Titulars of church.
Dedication.
Both festivals.
Office, how held.
Other festivals.
Indulgences.
Forty hours' Prayer.
Benediction, how often.
Lights, how many.

Of the Sacristy.

Ambries.
Lavatory.
Towels.
Kneeling-desk.
Prayers before and after Mass.
Prayers for vesting.
Altar-cloths.
Finger-cloths.
Communion-cloths.
Altar-breads, — where made.
Cottas.
Missal-markers.
Bier.
Pall.
Book-stands.
Books.
Supplement to Missal.
Ordo celebrandi.
Ritus servandus.
Missals, binding.
Chalices.
Patens.
Purificators.
Corporals and palls.
Veils.
Burses.
Amices.
Albs.
Girdles.
Stoles, maniples, and chasubles, of five colors, for feast-days, for ferias.
Dalmatics.
Tunics.
Copes of different colors.
Humeral veils.
Altar-cushions and book-stands.
Devout images.
Cruets.
Lavabo-dishes.
Bells.
Thurible and boat.
Processional Cross.
Holy-water vessel and aspersory.
Pax.
Banners.
Flower-vases.
Triangular candlestick.
Paschal candlestick.
Door.
Key.
Safe.
Pavement.
Windows.
Wall.
Roof.
Table of obligations.
Inventory of the aforesaid.

INDEX OBSERVANDORUM IN VISITATIONE PERSONARUM.

Name.
Surname.
Country.
Age.
When appointed.
Profession of faith.
Income.
Obligations satisfied.
Divine office.
Faculties.
Parish books and papers.
Residence.
Mass, how often.
Sermons.
Publication of feasts, fasts, pastorals.
Catechism.
Vespers.
Processions.
Proper feasts.
Customs.
Monthly conferences.
Servers at Mass.
Blessing of ashes, candles, palms.
Holy Week.
Blessing houses.
Holy sepulchre.
Blessing font and Paschal candle.
Pious pictures.
The long Litanies.
Ceremonies in High and Low Mass.
The administration of the Sacraments.
Baptism, how long delayed.
Given in private houses.
Godfathers and godmothers.
Confessions, where, at what time.
Instructions for first Communion.
Sick persons, and how often.
Visiting sick, commendation.
Marriages, how, where.
Other functions.
Lent sermons.
Funerals.
Moral and dogmatic theology.
Books, what studied.

13. He gives Confirmation at the time he deems most convenient, as directed in the foregoing chapter.

14. When the Bishop has completed the visitation, he goes in his usual dress to the church, and, standing before the altar, at the Epistle side, he says the Psalm, *De profundis*, *Requiem æternam*, the anthem, *Si iniquitates*, *Pater noster*.

Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.
R. Sed libera nos a malo.
V. A porti inferi.
R. Erue, Domine, animas eorum.
V. Requiescant in pace.
R. Amen.
V. Domine, exaudi orationem meam.
R. Et clamor meus ad te veniat.
V. Dominus vobiscum.
R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Deus cujus miseratione animæ fidelium requiescunt, famulis et famulabus tuis omnibus hic et ubique in Christo quiescentibus, da propitius veniam peccatorum, ut a cunctis reatibus absoluti, tecum sine fine lætentur. Per Christum Dominum nostrum.

R. Amen.

APPENDIX.

CHAPTER I.

FORTY-HOURS' EXPOSITION.

ARTICLE I.

Things to be prepared for the Mass of the Exposition.

1. THE picture or image of the high altar, as well as the walls near it, should be covered with precious drapery; but representing nothing profane.

2. The altar ought to be prepared as well as possible. No statues or relics of saints should be placed on or about it. In the most conspicuous place of it, should be erected the throne, or exposition place for the Blessed Sacrament, with a pall or corporal on it. It should be surrounded with a sufficient number of candles near it, besides those that are on the steps of the altar. The front altar-veil must always be white, although the Mass may require another color.

3. On the side-table, besides what is usually necessary for High Masses, should be a cope of the color of the vestments for the celebrant, the book containing the Litany and prayers, the remonstrance covered with a white veil, and the Host to be consecrated fixed in the little half-moon that holds it, a stole for the priest who is to expose the Blessed Sacrament.

4. In the sanctuary, a bench covered with a cloth or carpet for the clergy who remain at the adoration.

5. In the sacristy, the usual vestments for the celebrant and ministers.

6. In any convenient place, the processional canopy, the umbrella, the processional cross, two censers with their boats, candles for the procession, and two books with the Litany for the chanters.

Article II.

Of the Mass for the Exposition.

1. The Mass for the exposition and reposition, is to be sung at the altar where the exposition is made. The Mass should be the solemn *Votiva* of the Blessed Sacrament, with the *Gloria* and *Credo*, and with the commemoration of the Sunday, and of the feasts of either double or semi-double rite. But on Sundays of first or second class, on festivals of double rite of first or second class, on Ash-Wednesday, on Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday in Holy Week, during the whole octave of Easter, Pentecost, and Epiphany, on the vigils of Christmas and Pentecost, and within all privileged octaves, that exclude the celebration of vestivals of first and second class, either translated or falling on those days, the Mass of the Blessed Sacrament cannot be sung, but the Mass occurring on that day is to be celebrated with the prayer of the Blessed Sacrament, *Sub unica conclusione*, with the Preface, *de Nativitate*, if the Mass of the day has not a proper preface; and should those festivals fall on Sunday, the prayer of the Blessed Sacrament is to be said, *Sub unica conclusione*, with that of the Saint,

and the commemoration of the Sunday is to be made afterwards, under its proper conclusion.

2. This Mass is celebrated as other High Masses, having nothing particular, except that another large Host is to be consecrated with that of the Mass.

3. The acolytes, who hold the candles for the elevation, must not leave the sanctuary before the consecrated Host is placed in the remonstrance; and before they go, they must make a genuflection on both knees.

4. The acolytes should light all the candles of the altar prepared for the exposition before the elevation.

5. After the celebrant has consumed the precious blood, the deacon and sub-deacon make a genuflection, exchange places, make another genuflection; the master of ceremonies carries the remonstrance to the altar; and the celebrant, assisted by the deacon, places the sacred Host in the remonstrance, the deacon shuts it and places it in the middle of the corporal; the deacon and sub-deacon again exchange places. During the remaining part of the Mass, the ministers omit the usual kisses in giving or receiving any thing from the celebrant.

6. The celebrant in the usual place makes the ablution of his fingers; after which, the ministers make a genuflection and exchange places; the sub-deacon wipes the chalice, and covers it as usual, leaving the corporal spread on the altar, taking care to retire a little, whilst the celebrant says, *Dominus vobiscum;* he then makes a genuflection on the platform, and on the lowest step, as he passes before the Blessed Sacrament, and having brought the chalice to the side-table, goes to his place behind the deacon.

7. The celebrant having given the chalice to the sub-deacon, makes a genuflection, and goes to read the *Com-*

munio; then he returns to the middle, kisses the altar, makes a genuflection with the deacon, turns to the people from the Gospel side, so as not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament; says, *Dominus vobiscum*, makes again a genuflection with the ministers, goes to sing the prayers; after having sung them, returns to the middle, kisses the altar, makes a genuflection with the ministers, turns to the people as before, says, *Dominus vobiscum;* in the mean while, the deacon makes another genuflection, turns to the people in the same manner as the celebrant, and sings, *Ite, missa est.* Then the celebrant and the ministers make a genuflection; the celebrant says, *Placeat*, &c., and the ministers kneel on the platform for the benediction.

8. The celebrant having said the *Placeat*, kisses the altar, says, *Benedicat vos;* instead of bowing, makes a genuflection, turns as for the *Dominus vobiscum*, blesses the people, without completing the circle, and without making another genuflection, turns on his left, says the Gospel, does not make the sign of the cross on the altar, but he makes it on his forehead, mouth, and breast, and saying, *Et verbum caro*, he makes a genuflection to the Blessed Sacrament.

9. After Mass, the ministers go up to the platform at the side of the celebrant, and having made a genuflection on one knee, go directly by the side steps to the bench.

10. Towards the end of Mass, the acolytes give the candles to the clergy and light them; the two censer-bearers prepare their censers, and whilst the celebrant reads the last Gospel, the latter go to the altar and make a genuflection on both knees.

Article III.

Of the Procession for the Exposition.

1. The celebrant and the ministers, on arriving at the bench, take off their maniples; the celebrant, moreover, takes off his chasuble and puts on the cope, puts incense in both censers, without blessing it, the deacon presenting the incense-boat, and goes with them to the middle, below the steps, where he makes with them a genuflection on both knees, kneels on the lowest step, and incenses the Blessed Sacrament with three double throws.

2. In the mean time, the master of ceremonies brings from the side-table the long veil, and puts it on the celebrant, after he has given the censer to the deacon. The censer-bearers go to each side of the altar, and the acolytes give the canopy to those who are to carry it.

3. The celebrant having incensed the Blessed Sacrament, goes up to the second step with the deacon and sub-deacon; the celebrant and the sub-deacon kneel, and the deacon goes up to the altar, makes a genuflection on one knee, takes the Blessed Sacrament without bowing, and standing gives it to the celebrant; then the deacon makes a genuflection, and at the same time bows, goes to the celebrant's right, who, with the ministers, goes up to the platform, and they turn towards the people in such a manner that the deacon be at the right, and the sub-deacon at the left of the celebrant, whose cope they raise on each side; a priest in surplice holds the umbrella opened over the Blessed Sacrament, and the singers intone the *Pange Lingua*.

4. The procession moves in the following order: the

cross-bearer, in surplice, having on each side the acolytes with their candlesticks, goes to the lower part of the sanctuary near the railing, and stands turned to the altar. When the chanters intone the *Pange Lingua*, they turn towards the people, without making any genuflection, and begin to move; the clergy, two by two, make a genuflection on both knees, follow them, carrying their candles outside—that is, those who are at the right carry them in their right hand, and those at the left side, in their left hand.

5. The celebrant, between the deacon and sub-deacon, who raise his cope on each side, preceded by the two censer-bearers, who gently swing their censers, and surrounded by four or six acolytes, who carry lighted candles on each side of the canopy, walks in the last place, reciting, in a low voice, psalms and hymns alternately with the ministers, and the choir continues to sing the *Pange Lingua.*

6. The procession having returned, the acolytes put their candlesticks on the side-table, and the cross-bearer leaves the cross at its place, the clergy divide in two lines at each side of the altar, and as the Blessed Sacrament approaches, they all kneel down. The censer-bearers, on arriving near the altar, do not swing their censers any more, but stop at each side of it, and remain there standing. The celebrant stops at the lowest step of the altar, and there standing, gives the Blessed Sacrament to the deacon, who receives it kneeling on both knees, and turned a little to the Epistle side. Then the celebrant kneels, and takes off the long veil. The deacon places the Blessed Sacrament on the altar, if there be another priest to place it on the throne; otherwise the deacon himself places it thereon, makes a genuflection

on the platform, without bowing his head, and goes down by one side to the right of the celebrant.

7. Those who carried the canopy, having left it at a convenient place, receive candles, and kneel down, forming a semicircle before the altar, if they be clergymen; but if laymen, they kneel outside of the chancel.

8. After the deacon has placed the Blessed Sacrament on the throne, and returned to the right of the celebrant, the chanters intone *Tantum ergo*. At the verse *Genitori* the celebrant rises with the ministers, puts incense into the censer, without blessing it, the deacon presenting the incense-boat, and the sub-deacon raising the celebrant's cope at his right, while he incenses the Blessed Sacrament with three double throws. After the incensing, the censer-bearer having received the censer from the deacon, goes to the middle, makes a genuflection, with the second censer-bearer, and both carry their censers back to the sacristy.

9. After the *Tantum ergo*, the chanters do not sing the verse *Panem de cœlo*, but they go in the middle, kneel, and sing the Litany. At the end of it the celebrant intones *Pater noster*, the rest of which being recited secretly, the chanters intone the Psalm *Deus in adjutorium;* after it, the celebrant, kneeling, sings in a ferial tone the verses from the book, which the ministers hold on each side; he then rises, and standing, sings with his hands joined, *Dominus vobiscum*, and the prayers that follow; these being ended, he kneels, says again *Dominus vobiscum*, and the chanters, *Exaudiat nos omnipotens et misericors Dominus;* the choir answers, Amen; the celebrant subjoins, *Fidelium animæ*, &c., without making the sign of the cross; the choir answers, Amen.

Then all the clergy pray for a short time in silence; the acolytes go to the middle with their candlesticks, kneel on both knees, rise, and walk to the sacristy, followed, as usual, by the clergy and the sacred ministers, who all make in the middle a genuflection on both knees; the latter, when at a proper distance from the Blessed Sacrament, put on their caps.

If, for want of a sufficient number of persons, or for any other cause, the procession cannot be made, the celebrant, and the deacon and sub-deacon, after Mass, go to the bench, as has been said above, take off their maniples, the celebrant taking off also his chasuble, and putting on the cope; go to the altar, make a genuflection on both knees below the last step, then kneel on it and after a short prayer, rise; the celebrant puts incense into the censer, and kneeling, incenses with three double throws the Blessed Sacrament; then the deacon, or another priest in surplice and stole, making the usual genuflections, places it on the throne; the choir sings *Pange Lingua;* at the verse *Genitori* the celebrant puts incense again into the censer, and incenses, as usual, the Blessed Sacrament. After the hymn is finished, the chanters sing the Litany immediately. The same is to be done at the reposition of the Blessed Sacrament, except that the hymn *Pange Lingua* is sung after the verse *Domine exaudi orationem meam*, and the benediction is given as usual.

10. After the clergy have left the sanctuary, the bench or stool prepared for the purpose is placed near the last step of the altar in the middle, and the two clergymen destined to begin the adoration, dressed in surplice (and stole if they be priests), kneel before it, and remain there for the space of an hour, after which

two others go to take their place, and so on till the exposition is finished.

11. There should be constantly, day and night, during the exposition, at least twenty lights; and when the church is shut in the night, at least ten of them should be candles and ten lamps.

Article IV.

Of the Mass pro pace.

1. Every thing is to be prepared for this Mass as for others, but the color of the vestments is to be violet.

2. This Mass ought to be sung on the second day of the forty-hours' exposition, with the assistance of deacon and sub-deacon. It should not be sung at the altar where the Blessed Sacrament is exposed, or where it is usually kept in the tabernacle. However, as in most of our churches in this country there is but one altar, the Mass here spoken of must necessarily be celebrated at the altar of the exposition. The assistance of the deacon and sub-deacon must be dispensed with where there is only one clergyman.

3. The Mass, *pro pace*, is sung without *Gloria* and *Credo*, and without any other commemoration besides that of the Blessed Sacrament, which is said, *Sub unica conclusione*. At the elevation, the little bell is not to be rung. However, if it is celebrated on a Sunday, the *Credo* is to be said.

4. The days on which this Mass, *pro pace*, cannot be said, are the same as mentioned above for that of the Blessed Sacrament, n. 1, art. ii. When any other is said in its place, the prayer, *pro pace*, is to be said, *Sub*

unica conclusione, with that of the current Mass, and the commemoration of the Blessed Sacrament is omitted.

5. All private Masses celebrated during the exposition are of the current office, with the commemoration of the Blessed Sacrament after the others prescribed for that day by the Rubrics; and if a feast of the first or second class be then celebrated, the commemoration of the Blessed Sacrament is omitted; the little bell is not to be rung; if, on the days of the exposition, votive Masses are permitted by the Rubrics, it is proper that all private Masses should be of the Blessed Sacrament, without *Gloria* and without *Credo*, with the Preface *de Nativitate*.

Article V.

Things to be prepared for the Mass of the Reposition.

1. In the sacristy and on the side-table, every thing as for the first day.

2. On the altar, the key of the tabernacle, the Missal on its stand, the cards and the cross, according to the established custom. All the candles are to be lighted before Mass.

3. In the sanctuary, the bench or stools placed in the middle for the adoration are to be removed.

Article VI.

Of the Mass for the Reposition.

1. We think it proper to mention here some general rules, before we speak of the ceremonies to be observed in Masses celebrated at the altars on which the Blessed Sacrament is exposed.

2. These rules are the following: during Mass, the genuflections are made only on one knee, except when the priest first arrives at the altar, and when he leaves it to return to the sacristy; in both these cases, he makes the genuflection on both knees.

The usual reverences to salute the clergy are omitted, by the celebrant and ministers, and by every one else.

The ministers and all others in giving any thing to the celebrant, or receiving it from him, do not kiss it or his hand; but the sub-deacon, after the Epistle, kisses the hand in receiving his blessing; likewise the deacon when he goes to receive his blessing before he sings the Gospel; at the Offertory, when he presents the paten to the celebrant, he kisses both the paten and his hand, as also when he gives it to him at the end of the *Pater noster*. The celebrant, at the end of the Gospel, sung by the deacon, kisses the Missal, as usual.

3. The sacred ministers being vested, go from the sacristy to the sanctuary as usual; the acolytes arriving before the altar, make a genuflection on both knees, and a profound bow, retire on each side, and wait for the ministers. The clergy, as they arrive at the middle, make likewise a genuflection on both knees, with a profound reverence, and go to their respective places, without bowing to each other. The sacred ministers uncover their heads, as soon as they can see the Blessed Sacrament, carry their caps till they enter the sanctuary, then they give them to the master of ceremonies, and on arriving before the last step of the altar, they, with the acolytes and the master of ceremonies, make a genuflection on both knees, and a profound bow, and Mass is begun as usual.

4. Having made the confession, they go up to the

altar, without making a genuflection, where they make a genuflection on one knee. The deacon and sub-deacon should observe, that in making the genuflections, they must not place their hands on the altar, this being allowed only to the celebrant. When the latter has said, *Oramus te Domine*, they retire a little to the Gospel side, turned to the Epistle side, to put incense into the censer; and before the censer-bearer goes up for this purpose, he makes below the last step a genuflection, bending one knee; the deacon does not kiss the spoon, nor the celebrant's hand, as has been observed before for all similar cases.

5. The incense having been blessed, the censer-bearer retires to his place, making a genuflection, and the celebrant and ministers go down to the second step, taking care not to turn their back to the Blessed Sacrament; on which account the celebrant and the sub-deacon go down by the Gospel side, and the deacon by that of the Epistle, kneel on the edge of the platform; there the celebrant having received the censer from the deacon, without the usual kisses, and made a profound bow, incenses the Blessed Sacrament with three double throws, the ministers raising, in the mean while, his chasuble on each side. Then they rise, go up to the altar, making a genuflection on one knee, and incense the altar, as usual.

If, according to the custom established in some churches, the cross has been placed on the altar, it must not be incensed. (*Decr. S. R. C.*, 29 Sept., 1738.)

6. After the incensing, the celebrant goes down to the first step, or below them all, according to the construction of the altar, and there, turned towards the people, is incensed by the deacon, who turns towards him. Then he goes to read the Introit, &c.

7. After the choir have done singing the *Kyrie*, the celebrant with the ministers goes to the middle as usual, makes with them a genuflection, and intones the *Gloria;* the ministers make again a genuflection, go to his side, recite the rest of the hymn, make a genuflection, and by the side steps go to the bench, where they sit without their caps; after it is sung, they go to the middle, make a genuflection below the steps, and go, one behind the other, without making any other genuflection. The celebrant, after arriving on the platform and kissing the altar, with his shoulders turned a little towards the Gospel side, sings the *Dominus vobiscum;* then returns to the middle, makes a genuflection with the ministers, and goes to sing the prayers as usual; after which, the sub-deacon sings the Epistle, having made the usual genuflections before the altar, then asks the celebrant's blessing, kisses his hand, and carries the Missal to the Gospel side, as usual.

8. During this time, the celebrant says the *Munda cor meum*, makes a genuflection before and after, then reads the Gospel; and the deacon takes the book to the altar, having made a genuflection in the middle on the lowest step, and again on the platform.

9. When the celebrant has read the Gospel, he turns in his place, and puts in the incense as at n. 4; then all three go to the middle on the platform, the sub-deacon descends to the bottom of the steps, and the deacon kneels to say the *Munda cor meum.* The celebrant, at the proper time, gives him his blessing, who, having kissed his hand, rises, both make a genuflection, the celebrant goes to the Epistle side, the deacon goes to the floor, makes a genuflection with the others, and proceeds as usual to sing the Gospel. At the end, the sub-deacon

takes the Missal to the celebrant to kiss, without making a genuflection before, comes down from the altar (which he must do without turning his back to the Blessed Sacrament), and the deacon incenses the celebrant as usual.

10. After incensing the celebrant, all three go to the middle, one behind the other, make a genuflection, and the celebrant intones the *Credo;* at the end, the ministers make a genuflection, and go to recite it with the celebrant. Then all three make a genuflection and go to the bench, as was mentioned at n. 7.

11. At the *Crucifixus*, the deacon takes the burse from the side-table, bows to the celebrant only, goes to the middle, makes a genuflection on the lowest step, and again on the platform, and spreads the corporal in the usual manner, makes a genuflection, and returns by the side of the altar to the right of the celebrant.

12. At the end of the *Credo*, the ministers go to the altar, as at n. 7. The celebrant sings the *Dominus vobiscum*, makes a genuflection, and says *Oremus*. After which the deacon and sub-deacon make a genuflection, and go, the first to the celebrant's right, and the other to the side-table, in the usual manner, for the chalice, which he brings to the altar, making there a genuflection. The deacon presents the paten and chalice with the usual kiss. In like manner the sub-deacon presents the cruets, then takes the paten, and makes a genuflection, first on the platform, and again on the lowest step. He does not, however, make a genuflection when the celebrant kneels on the platform to incense the Blessed Sacrament.—*S. C. R.*, 11 Feb., 1764.

13. After the oblation of the chalice, the deacon gives the insense as at n. 4. And the celebrant, without mak-

ing a genuflection, incenses the offerings; the deacon does not remove the chalice from the middle of the corporal. When this is done, they descend to the second step, kneel on the edge of the platform, and incense the Blessed Sacrament, the altar as at n. 5, and the celebrant as at n. 6, and in the same place washes his hands according to the Rubric of the Missal on Good Friday, and the S. C. R., 22d August, 1682; then he returns to the middle, makes a genuflection, and says the *Suscipe Sancta Trinitas*, &c.

14. When the deacon has incensed the celebrant, he incenses the choir as usual, then the sub-deacon, who makes a genuflection, and then turns for this purpose a little towards the Gospel side. This done, the deacon gives the censer to the censer-bearer, goes up to the second step, makes a genuflection, and turns in the same manner as the sub-deacon, to be incensed, and again makes a genuflection.

15. When the celebrant has said the *Suscipe Sancta Trinitas*, he kisses the altar, makes a genuflection, and turns, as at the *Dominus vobiscum*, to say the *Orate Fratres;* but he does not make a perfect circle; then he returns to the middle, makes a genuflection, and continues Mass.

16. At the *Sanctus*, the acolytes go out with torches, and without bowing, kneel down till after communion, as they did on the first day. From this to the end of Mass, they observe exactly what is prescribed for the first day, and make preparations towards the end for the procession.

Article VII.

From the Litany to the end of the Forty Hours.

1. At the end of Mass, the ministers return to the bench, vest, do not put in incense, but go to the middle, make a genuflection on both knees, and kneel on the lowest step; then the singers sing the Litany, as on the first day, to *Domine, exaudi orationem*, &c., inclusive.

2. At *Peccatores*, the acolytes give the candles to the clergy, and light them; the censer-bearers prepare their censers, and approach the altar with the usual genuflections.

3. After the celebrant has said the *Domine exaudi*, &c., he rises with the ministers, puts incense into the censers, without blessing it, and kneeling, incenses three times the Blessed Sacrament; and the master of ceremonies gives him the veil.

4. After incensing the Blessed Sacrament, the censer-bearers place themselves on each side of the altar, and the deacon or a priest with surplice and stole, with the usual genuflections, takes it from the repository; if it is a deacon, without placing it upon the corporal, he places it in the celebrant's hands, who receives it after a genuflection; and as soon as he has delivered it, the deacon makes in turn a genuflection. If another priest takes it from the repository, he places it upon the corporal, makes a genuflection and retires; then the deacon goes upon the platform, and takes it as said above, and as to the remainder, observes what is prescribed in the ceremonies and rite of the procession.

5. When the procession has returned, and the celebrant has arrived at the lowest step of the altar, the

deacon makes a genuflection, receives from him the Blessed Sacrament; the celebrant then immediately makes a genuflection, and takes off the veil. The deacon places the remonstrance on the corporal, in the middle of the altar, and returns to the right of the celebrant, making the usual genuflections.

6. As soon as the deacon returns to the right of the celebrant, the singers intone the *Tantum ergo;* at the *Genitori* incense is given, and the Blessed Sacrament is incensed; and after the verse *Panem de cœlo* (to which an *Alleluia* is added during paschal time, and the octave of *Corpus Christi*, according to the Decree, S. C. R., 10 Jan., 1705), the celebrant rises without making another genuflection, or saying *Dominus vobiscum*, (Decree, S. C. R., 16th June, 1663; 28th Sept. 1675; 2d Aug. and 6th Sept., 1698), and sings the prayers with his hands joined, and the ministers hold the book.

7. After the prayers, he kneels, and after saying *Fidelium animæ*, as on the first day, he puts on the veil, and goes upon the platform (the ministers place themselves at each side of him, on the edge of the platform), makes a genuflection, with both his hands covered with the veil he takes the Blessed Sacrament, and blesses the people in the usual manner; the ministers, bowing a little, lift the border of the cope. After having placed the remonstrance upon the corporal, he makes a genuflection (at the same time takes off the veil), and returns with the ministers to the lowest step, in such a manner as not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament, and remains there kneeling. The deacon immediately, or a priest with a stole, observing the usual ceremonies, puts the Blessed Sacrament in the tabernacle, which must be on the altar where the exposition is made, and the con-

secrated host must be consumed during Mass, either the same morning or the following. (*Instruct. Clement.*)

8. Whilst the Blessed Sacrament is put away, the acolytes take their candles from the side-table, and go to the middle; the master of ceremonies takes the ministers' caps, and at the end of the function gives them a signal to rise; all make a genuflection together on the floor; he presents the caps, and they go, preceded by the censer-bearers and acolytes, to the sacristy, to disrobe as usual.

As it frequently happens that not the celebrant, but a Bishop, terminates the function, it may be necessary to point out what is to be observed after Mass. At the end of the last Gospel, the celebrant, with the ministers at each side of him, goes to the middle of the altar, makes a genuflection on one knee, without bowing the head, and then goes down to the floor, in such a manner as not to turn his back to the Blessed Sacrament. When they are at the bottom of the steps, they all make a genuflection together on both knees, together with a prostration; the acolytes with their candles, and the master of ceremonies, do the same as they did in the beginning of Mass. Then they all depart with their heads uncovered, and do not take their caps until they are out of sight of the Blessed Sacrament. When they arrive in the sacristy, the ministers take off their maniples; and if they are to assist the Bishop, and their vestments be not white, they take them off and put on white. (Decree S. C. R., 20th Sept., 1806.) Then they assist the Bishop to vest, and proceed to the altar, preceded by the acolytes with their candles, and followed by the train-bearer and mitre-bearer. When they come in sight of the Blessed Sacrament, the deacon

takes off the Bishop's mitre, and after making a genuflection on both knees, both kneel on the first step, on which the master of ceremonies will put a cushion for the Bishop. The function is then continued as prescribed above, and the mitre-bearer during the benediction kneels down.

9. The greater part of the ceremonies prescribed in this chapter, have been taken from the 6th volume of the Collection of Decrees of the S. C. R., Part II., in which Gardellini explains the instructions of Clement XI. on the Forty Hours.

CHAPTER IV.

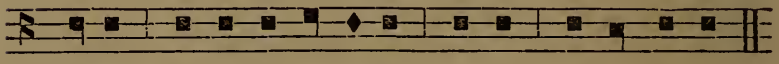
DIFFERENT INTONATIONS FOR VESPERS AND SOLEMN MASS.

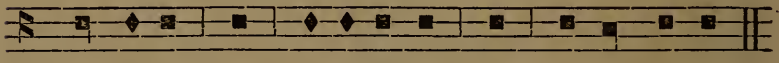
It was deemed advisable to add, at the end of this Manual, the different intonations for Vespers and Solemn Mass.

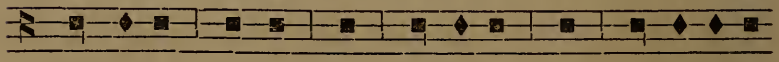
It may be well to remark that the priest who officiates or celebrates, if capable of regulating his voice, or intoning *Deus in adjutorium*, &c., or in commencing a prayer, &c., should take a moderate pitch, neither too high nor too low—such a note, for instance, that would answer that of *sol* or *la* of the organ, would suit the generality of voices of the choir that is to sing the responses.

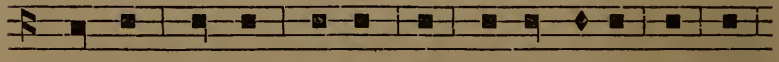
Deus in adjutorium, &c.

For Festivals.

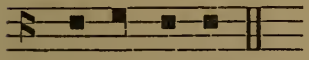






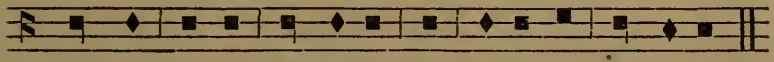


et semper, et in sæc - u - la sæc - u - lo-rum. Amen.



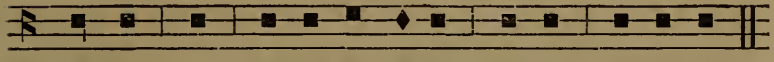
Al - le - lu - ia.

During Paschal time.

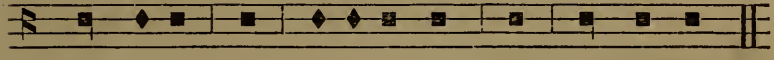


La - us ti - bi Do - mine, rex æ-ternæ glo - ri - æ.

Ferial Intonation.



V. De - us in ad - ju - to - rium meum in - ten-de.



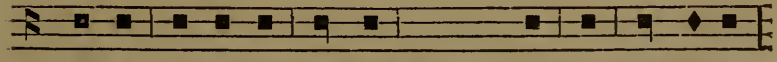
Do - mi-ne ad ad-juvandum me fes - ti - na.

Glo - ri - a Pa-tri, &c. Al - le - lu - ia.

Laus tibi Domine, as above.

The Chapter

is sung on the note *Do*, *recto tono*, all the way through, except the last word, which is sung on *la*, *sol*, *la*.



Ec-ce sa - cerdos magnus, &c. et in tem-po-re

i - ra-cun-di- æ fac-tus est re-con-ci - li - a - ti - o.

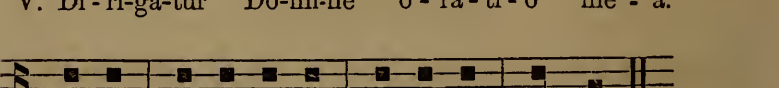
R. De- o gra - ti- as.

or *Laus tibi*, as above.

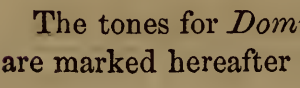
The Verses

Immediately after the Hymn.

V. Glo-ri-a et ho-no-re co-ro-nasti e-um Domine . . . .



. . . . . e. R. Et consti-tuisti . . . tu - - - a-



- - - rum.

The Verses

Within the Commemorations.

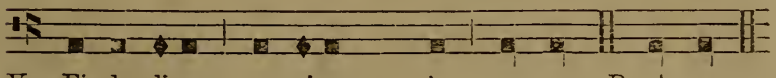
V. Di - ri-ga-tur Do-mi-ne o - ra - ti - o me - a.

R. Si-cut in-censum in conspectu tu - o.

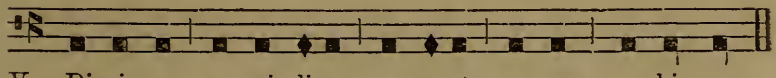
The tones for *Dominus vobiscum* and for the prayers are marked hereafter at page : and as the different

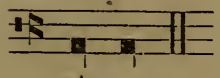
intonations for *Benedicamus* are to be found in every missal, we abstain from noting them here.

After the *Deo gratias*, in response to the *Benedicamus*, the priest sings in the low note *do*, *Fidelium animæ*, in the following manner:



After the prayer that follows the Antiphon of the Blessed Virgin, the officiating priest sings, in a low note of voice:—



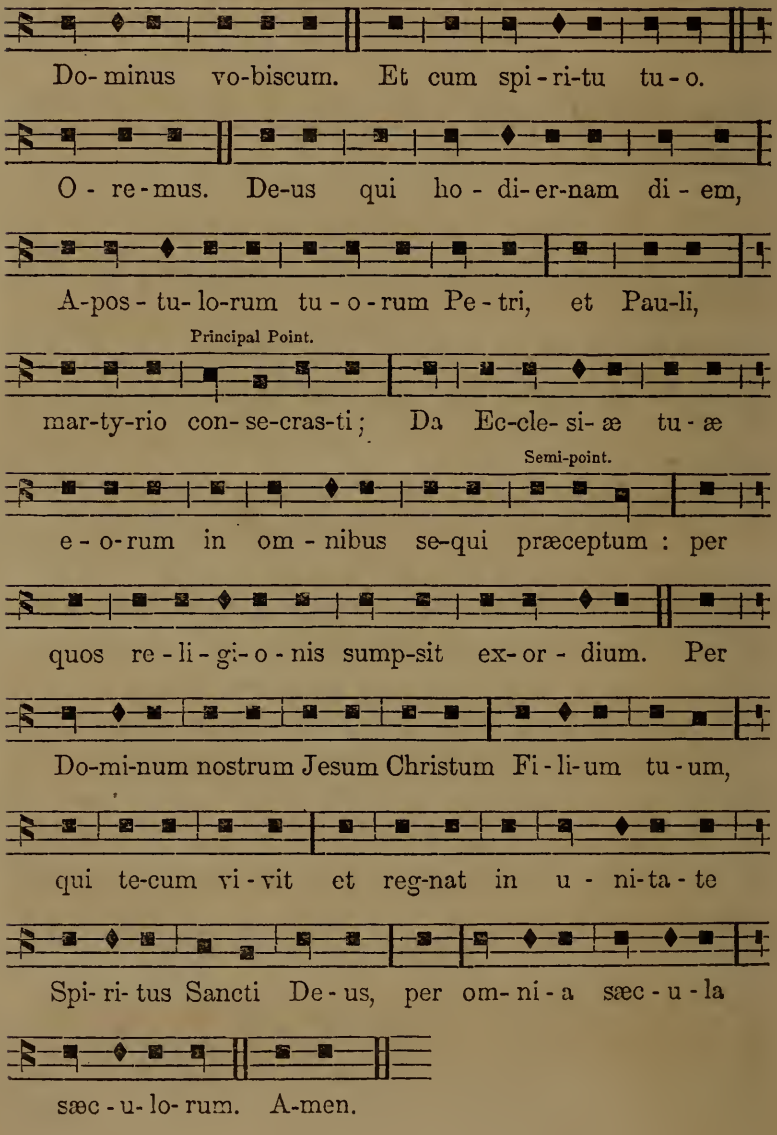


In the Festival tone the prayers are sung on one note, *do*, with the exception of two variations, *do*, *si*, *la*, *do*, *do*, and *do*, *si*. The former of these variations is made on a principal point, the second on a semi-point.

It will be observed that in every prayer there is the address to God, the petition through the mystery, or the intercession of a saint whose mass is celebrated, and the conclusion. The end of the address is generally marked by a semicolon; and on the word preceding it the principal point is sung. If in the petition, the sentences are divided so as to admit a semicolon, the semi-point is then sung on the last word of the first part of the sentence. In the conclusion the semipoint is sung

first, and the principal point in the second place, as will be seen in the following example :—

PRAYERS.


Do- minus vo-biscum. Et cum spi - ri-tu tu - o.
O - re - mus. De-us qui ho - di-er-nam di - em,
A-pos - tu- lo-rum tu - o - rum Pe - tri, et Pau-li,
Principal Point.
mar-ty-rio con- se-cras-ti ; Da Ec-cle- si- æ tu - æ
Semi-point.
e - o-rum in om - nibus se-qui præceptum : per
quos re - li - gi- o - nis sump-sit ex- or - dium. Per
Do-mi-num nostrum Jesum Christum Fi - li-um tu - um,
qui te-cum vi - vit et reg-nat in u - ni-ta - te
Spi- ri- tus Sancti De - us, per om- ni - a sæc - u - la
sæc - u- lo- rum. A-men.

Ferial Tones.

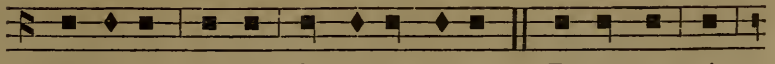
The ferial tone is more simple, and is used in the prayers of ferial Masses, and in the Mass of Requiem. The inflection is from *Do* to *Re*, and is made at the end of the prayer, and at the conclusion. When there is more than one prayer, the inflection is made at the end of the first, at the end of the last, and at the conclusion.

Example.

Epistle.

The Epistle is intoned and continued throughout on the note *Do*. A prolonging of the voice is made on the fourth, fifth, or sixth syllable before the end of a period, according as the accents may require an inflection of the voice, from *Do* to *Si*. Another inflection, sanctioned by custom, may be made at the end, as it may suit the accents.

Example.

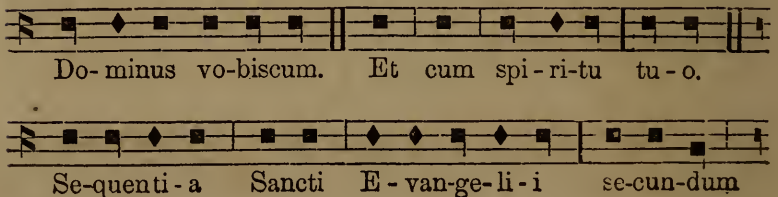


qui in-ven-tus est si-ne ma-cu-la, et qui post
au-rum non a-bi it, nec spe-ra-vit in pe-
-cu-ni-a et the-sau-ris. Quis est hic, et
lau-da-bimus e-u-m. . . . Om-nis ec-cle-si-a
sancto-rum.

The Gospel

is sung on the note *Do*, as its dominant, with three variations. At the end of a period the voice is lowered to *La* in the fourth, fifth or sixth syllables, returning immediately to *Do*. The interrogation point is sung as at the Epistle. At the close of the Gospel the voice descends to *La* on the fourth, fifth or sixth last syllable, which are sung on three notes, *La*, *Si*, *Do*, the remaining syllable being sung in *Do*.

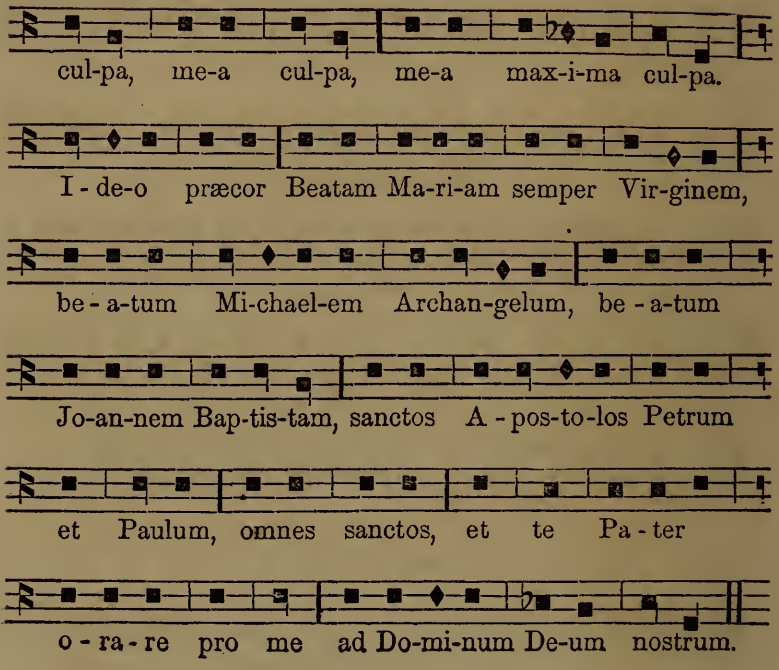
Example.



Mattheum. Glo-ri-a ti-bi Do-mi-ne. In il-lo
tem-po-re dix-it Je-sus dis-ci-pu-lis su-is: vos
es-tis sal ter-ræ. Quod si sal e-va-nu-e-rit, in
quo sa-li-e-tur? . . Hic magnus vo-ca-bi-tur in
reg-no cæ-lo-rum La-us ti-bi. Christe.

Confiteor.

Con-fi-te-or De-o om-ni-po-tenti, Be-a-tæ
Ma-ri-æ semper Vir-gi-ni, be-a-to Michae-li
Archan-ge-lo, be-a-to Jo-an-ni Baptis-tæ, sanc-tis
A-pos-to-lis Petro et Paulo, om-ni-bus sanc-tis
et ti-bi Pa-ter; qui-a pec-ca-vi ni-mis
co-gi-ta-ti-o-ne, verbo, et o-pe-re: me-a


cul-pa, me-a cul-pa, me-a max-i-ma cul-pa.
I-de-o præcor Beatam Ma-ri-am semper Vir-ginem,
be-a-tum Mi-chael-em Archan-gelum, be-a-tum
Jo-an-nem Bap-tis-tam, sanctos A-pos-to-los Petrum
et Paulum, omnes sanctos, et te Pa-ter
o-ra-re pro me ad Do-mi-num De-um nostrum.

INDEX.

Absolution after Mass for the dead, 383.
Acolytes, Instruction for the, at High Mass, 193; at Solemn Vespers, 243.
Acunctis, What Saint to be named in, 25, *n.*
Adorna thalamum, 110.
Advent, Sundays in, when Bishop officiates, 416.
All Souls, Vespers of, 264; when Bishop officiates, 415.
Altar, Mode of kissing, 24, *n.*
Altar-veil, 105.
Ambry, 14, *n.*
Antependium, what, 14, 105.
Archbishop, 357; vesting of, 233.
Ash-Wednesday, necessary preparations, 112, 275; blessing of ashes, 112, 276; Mass, 116, 279; when Bishop officiates, 423.
Ashes, Blessing of, 112, 276; distribution, 115, 276.
Ashes, Putting on of, 115.
Asperges, when there is but one priest, 163.
Assistant Deacon, Instructions for, 392; their quality, dress, and place, 392; at Pontifical Vespers, 392; at Pontifical Mass, 393; when the Bishop does not celebrate, 396.
Assistant Priest, his quality, dress, and place, 387; his office in general, 388; his office at Pontifical Vespers, 388; at Pontifical Mass, 393; when the Bishop does not celebrate, 396.

Baptism of Infants on Holy Saturday, 159.
Benediction with the Blessed Sacrament, 169; ceremonies when

but one priest, 170; when assisted by another priest, 175; by Bishop, 177.
Bishop, what bishop to be named in Memento, 36, *n.*; what Mass on Ember Days when he ordains, 53, *n.*; serving of, at Low Mass, 82; when there is but one chaplain, 88; Mass in presence of, 65; Mass and Vespers solemnly celebrated by, 338, 340; Solemn Vespers in presence of, 340; Complins by, 345; Matins, 345; 378; Lauds, 348, 378; Matins and Lauds for the Dead, 378; Solemn Pontifical Mass, 348; Seat of, 350; Vespers for the Dead, by, 377; Instruction for officers who attend, 389; on All Souls, 415; Sundays in Advent, 416; Christmas, 417; Festivals between Christmas and Candlemas, 419; Candlemas 419; Ash Wednesday, 423; Sundays in Lent, 426; Palm Sunday, 426; Maundy Thursday, 431; The Mandatum, or Washing of Feet, 442; Good Friday, 444; what to be prepared for, *ib.*, to the beginning of the office, 446; the Office, 447; Holy Saturday, 454; what to be prepared for, 454; Solemn administration of Confirmation, 485; Visitation of Parishes, 489.
Blessed Sacrament, how often to be renewed, 48, *n.*; Low Mass, when it is exposed, 63; Solemn Vespers, when it is exposed, 257; when exposed, no bow made to any one in the Sanctuary, 260; Collect of, to be said when Blessed Sacrament is exposed, 56.
Book-bearer, Instruction for, 412.
Bows, 19, *n*, 75; not made when Blessed Sacrament is exposed, 260.
Burse, 50, 75.

Calotte, what, 183.
Candle-bearer, Instruction for, 413.
Candlemas, blessing of candles, 104, 268; distribution, 108, 268; procession, 109, 272; when Bishop officiates, 419; of the Mass after the procession, 111.
Candles, Blessing of, 106; distribution of, 108.
Canon, what, 89, *n.*
Cappa magna, 377.
Celebrant, at High Mass, instruction for the, 228; at Vespers, 254.
Censer-bearer, Instruction for, at High Mass, 189; at Solemn Vespers, 245.

Ceremonies of Low Mass, 13; High Mass, 91, 180; Pontifical High Mass, 348; for the Dead, 237; Pontifical Mass for tho Dead, 379; for the principal Festivals, 267, &c.; Chapter, Intonation for, 519.
Choir, Rules for clergy in, at High Mass, 180; at Vespers, 241; order to be observed, 181; internal dispositions, 184; order in going from, 186.
Christmas, when Bishop officiates, 417; Festivals between Christmas and Candlemas, 419.
Ciborium, Veil of, 31, *n.*; Purification of, 71.
Cincture, how made, 18, *n.*
Commemoration of all the faithful departed, 264, 415.
Communion at Masses for the dead, 62, *n.*; general rules for Communion at Mass, 68; at other times, 72; at High Mass, 185.
Complins, when Bishop officiates solemnly, 345.
Confirmation, Solemn administration of, 485; things to be prepared for, 485; the administration of the sacrament, 487.
Corporal, what, 17, *n.*; Confiteor, Intonation for, 525.
Corpus Christi, Procession on, and its octave, 262.
Cope-bearers, Instruction for the, at Solemn Vespers, 251; Vespers without, 96.
Credence, what, 14.
Credo, generally omitted in Votive Masses, 56.
Crosier-bearer, Instructions for, 411.
Cross, Veneration of, on Good Friday, 135.
Cruets, not to be of glass, 142.
Cum appropinquaret, 121.

Deacon, Instruction for the officiating, 396; deacon at High Mass, 207.
Dead, Low Mass for the, 60; High Mass, 236; Vespers for the, 264.
Deus in adjutorium, Intonation, 518.
Dies iræ, when said, 62.
Diocesan Synods, Ceremonies to be observed in, 479.

Epistle, Intonation for, 523.

Faldstool, what, 351; Ferial tones, 523.

Flowers, none on altar in Mass for the Dead, 60.
Font, Blessing of the, 157.
Forty Hours' Exposition, 499; things to be prepared, *ib.*; of the Mass of the Exposition, 500; of the Procession for the Exposition, 503; of the Mass *pro pace*, 507; things to be prepared for the Mass of the Reposition, 508; of the Mass of the Reposition, 508; from the Litany to the end of the Forty Hours, 514.

Genuflection, how made, 76.
Gloria in Excelsis, in what votive Masses omitted, 55.
Good Friday, what is to be prepared, 135; when Bishop officiates, 444; Office to the uncovering of the Cross, 135, 306; uncovering and veneration of the Cross, 136, 310; Procession, 143, 314; Remaining part of the Office, 316; from the entrance of the Bishop to the beginning of the Office, 446; the Office, 447.
Gospel, Intonation for the, 524.

High Mass, without deacon or sub-deacon, 91; vesting, 92; ceremonies, 92; Rules for clergy in choir, 180; order to be observed, 181; internal dispositions, 184; receiving Holy Communion, 185; going from choir, 186; Preparation for, 187; Instructions for the offices at, 187–227; instruction for celebrant, 228; incensing, 233. (*See Pontifical Mass, Solemn Mass.*)
High Mass for the Dead, What to be observed particularly at, 237; Pontifical, 379.
Holy Saturday, things to be prepared, 150, 321; when Bishop officiates, 454; Office, 152; Benediction of the new fire, 323; by Bishop, 455; Exultet, 323; Blessing of the Paschal Candle, 154, 327; by Bishop, 456; Prophecies, 156, 329; Blessing of the Font, 157, 330; by the Bishop, 457–9; Baptism of Infants, 159; Litany, Mass, 161, 334; Vespers, 161; bringing back the Pyx to the altar, 162; to the beginning of Mass, when Bishop officiates, 460; Mass, 461.
Holy Week and other Festivals, ceremonies for, 104, 526.
Host, how broken, 44, *n.*

Incense-boat, 104.
Incensing candles at Candlemas, 107; ashes, 114; palms, 119; the Blessed Sacrament in the Repository, 143; on Holy Satur-

day, 155; at Benediction of the Blessed Sacrament, 174, 175; at High Mass, 230, 233; in High Mass for the Dead, 239; at Solemn Vespers, 258; Corpus Christi, 263.
Inferior ministers, at Pontifical Mass, Instructions for, 410.
Intonation for Mass and Vespers, 518.

Lætare and Gaudete Sundays, 280.
Lauds, when the Bishop officiates, 348; for the Dead, 378.
Lent, Sundays in, 56; when the Bishop officiates, 426.
Low Mass, Ceremonies of, 13; what to be prepared for, 13; Priest's preparation, 15–22; from commencement to Introit, 22; Introit to the Epistle, 25; Epistle to the Offertory, 27; Offertory to the Canon, 30; Canon to the Consecration, 35; Consecration to the Pater Noster, 40; Pater Noster to the Communion, 43; Communion to the end of Mass, 50; Low Mass for the Dead, 60; when the Blessed Sacrament is exposed, 63; in the presence of Prelates, 65; Manner of serving at, 75; Bishop at Low Mass, 82.

Mandatum, or Washing of the Feet, 442.
Mass, Preparations for, 15; ceremonies for Low Mass, 13; Votive Masses, 53; Mass pro Sponso et Sponsa, 54; Low Mass for the Dead, 60; High Mass, 91; High Mass for the Dead, 237; Pontifical Mass, Solemn, 348; for the Dead, 379.
Masses for the Dead, classed among Votive Masses, 53; when prohibited, 53, 60, *n.*; when allowed, 54; Mass, 236; *Dies iræ*, when said, 62; Low Mass for the Dead, 60; Communion at, 62 *n.*; High Mass, 236; Pontifical, 379; things to be prepared *ib.*; the Mass, 380; absolution after Mass, 383.
Master of Ceremonies, duty of; at High Mass, 198; at Solemn Vespers, 245.
Matins, when the Bishop officiates, 345; for the Dead, 378, of Tenebræ, 431.
Maundy Thursday, Preparation, 125, 295; Mass, 126, 297; Procession, 129, 300; removal of the Pyx, 131; Vespers, 303; Stripping of the Altar, 132, 303; when the Bishop officiates, 431; repository, how prepared, 126, 296.
Mitre-bearer, Instruction for, 412.
Monstrance, 171.

Mozetta, 339.

Newly ordained priest, The three Masses of, 53.

Obtulerunt Domino, 111.
Officers, Instructions for the, at High Mass, 187; censer-bearer, 189; acolytes, 193; master of ceremonies, 198; sub-deacon, 207; deacon, 217, 387; celebrant 228; instruction for officers who attend Bishop, 387.
Officiating deacon, Instruction for, 387.
Ordo, to be observed by priest celebrating in another church, 56.

Pall, what, 16, *n.*
Palm Sunday, Preparation for, 116, 280; blessing of the palms, 117, 282; distribution of, 119, 284; procession, 121, 286; Mass and Passion, 289; when Bishop officiates, 426.
Parishes, Episcopal visitation of, 489.
Paschal Candles, Blessing of, 154.
Pax, how given, 183.
Peace, Instrument of, 67.
Pontifical mantle, 377.
Pontifical Mass, Solemn, 348; things to be prepared, *ib.*; vesting of the clergy and Bishop, 353; the Pontifical Mass, 258; for the Dead, 379; things to be prepared, *ib.*; the Mass, 380; absolution after Mass, 383.
Popule meus, 138.
Prelates, what, 65.
Priest, preparation for Mass, 15; at Low Mass, 22; after Mass, 52; instruction for, at High Mass, 228; assistant priest, 387.
Procession at Candlemas, 109; Palm-Sunday, 121, 286; Maundy Thursday, 129; Good Friday, 143; Corpus Christi and its octave, 262–273; at Provincial Councils, 465.
Prophecies on Holy Saturday, 156.
Provincial Councils, Ceremonies to be observed in, 462; how the Metropolitan church is to be adorned and arranged, 463; opening of the Council, 464; procession, 465; Mass, 466; Ceremonies for first session or opening of the Council, 467; Mode of procedure, 471; second Solemn Session, 473; third Solemn Session, 475.

Purification, Feast of the, necessary preparations, 267; from the Vesting to the distribution of the candles, 268; to the Procession 270; the Procession, 272.
Purificator, what, 16, *n.*
Pyx, Of the removal of the, 131; bringing back to the altar, 149, 162.

Quarant' Ore; 499.

Remonstrance, see *Monstrance.*
Repository, how prepared, 126, 296; procession to, on Maundy Thursday, 149, 300; on Good Friday, 143, 314.
Requiem Masses, 53; Communion at, 62, *n.*

Sacred species, Renewal of, 48.
Sanctuary, Chairs in, 181, *n.*; rules for clergy in, 180, 241.
Serving Mass: Low Mass, 75; Vesting, 77; the Mass, 77; Bishop's Low Mass, 82.
Sign of the Cross, how made, 23, *n.*
Solemn Mass, in presence of Bishop in mitre and cope, 371; when in rochet and cope, 376; Intonations for, 518.
Solemnities when Bishop officiates, 415.
Stole, Use of, 97, *n.*
Sub-deacon, Instruction for, at High Mass, 207; Pontifical Ma. 404.

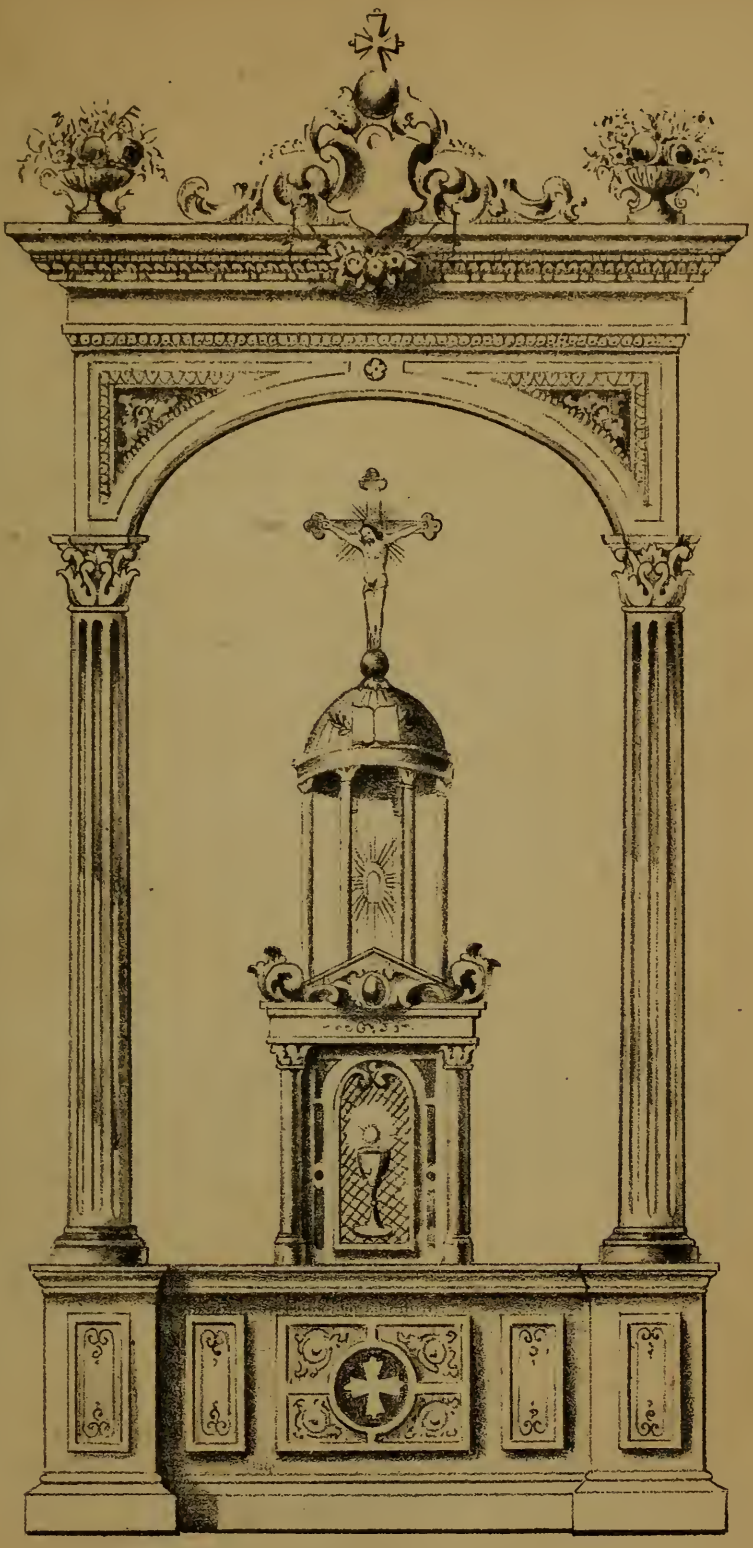
Tenebræ, Office of, 293; when Bishop officiates, 431
Two Masses on the same day, Order of, 58.

Unrobing after Mass, 52.

Vespers, without cope-bearers, 96; Solemn, 240; things to be prepared, *ib.*; general rules for the clergy in the sanctuary, 241; instruction for cope-bearers, 251; for the celebrant, 254; Solemn Vespers, the Blessed Sacrament being exposed, 257; for the dead, on Nov. 1st, 264; things to be prepared, *ib.*; peculiar ceremonies, 265; on Maundy Thursday, 303; Solemn Pontifical, 338; things to be prepared, *ib.*; from the entrance to the beginning of Vespers, 339; to the end of Vespers, 340; Solemn

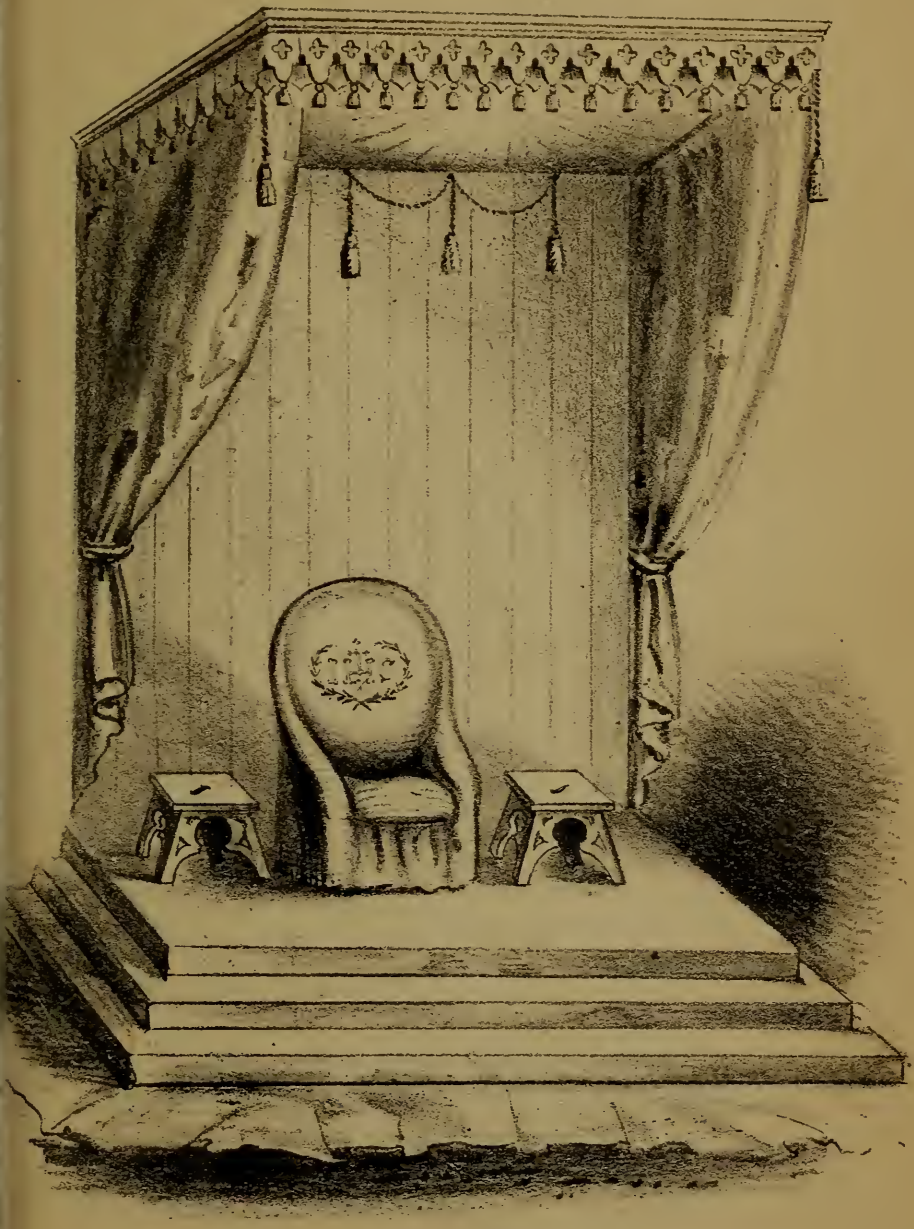
Vespers in the presence of the Bishop, 377; All Souls, when the bishop officiates, 415; Christmas, 417; Intonations for, 518.
Vesting priest at Low Mass, 14; Bishop, 83.
Vexilla regis, 144.
Visitation of the Parishes, 489; the bishop's reception, *ib.*; things subject to the Episcopal visitation, 495.
Votive Masses, 53; Vestments at, 56.
Votive Masses of the Holy Ghost, what does not warrant singing, 55, *n.*

Water, what quantity to be poured into chalice, 32, *n*

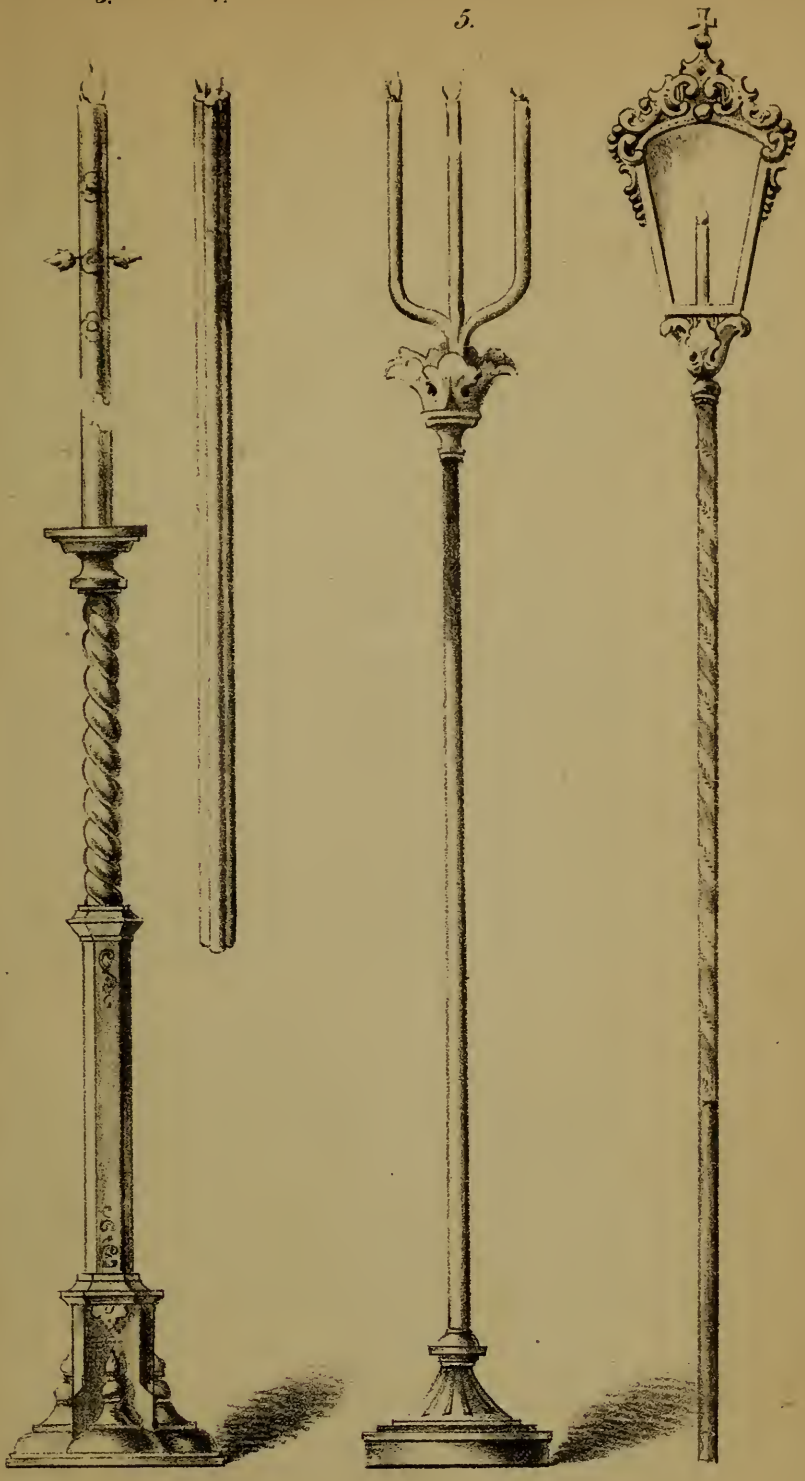


1. Altar with Canopy.

2.



2. Throne for the Bishop.



. Paschal Candle.

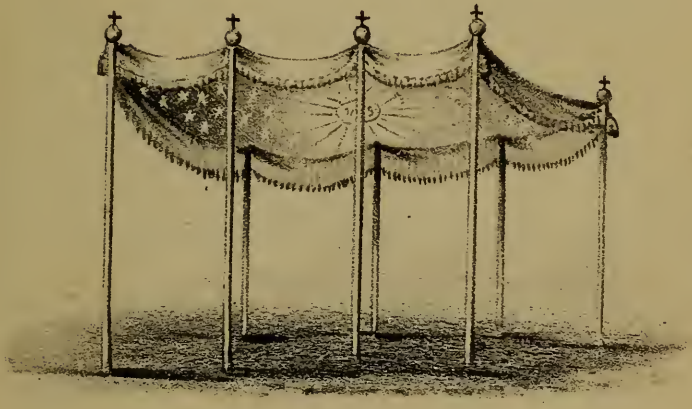
. Torch used at the Benediction, Elevation and Procession of the B. S.

. Triangle used on Holy Saturday.

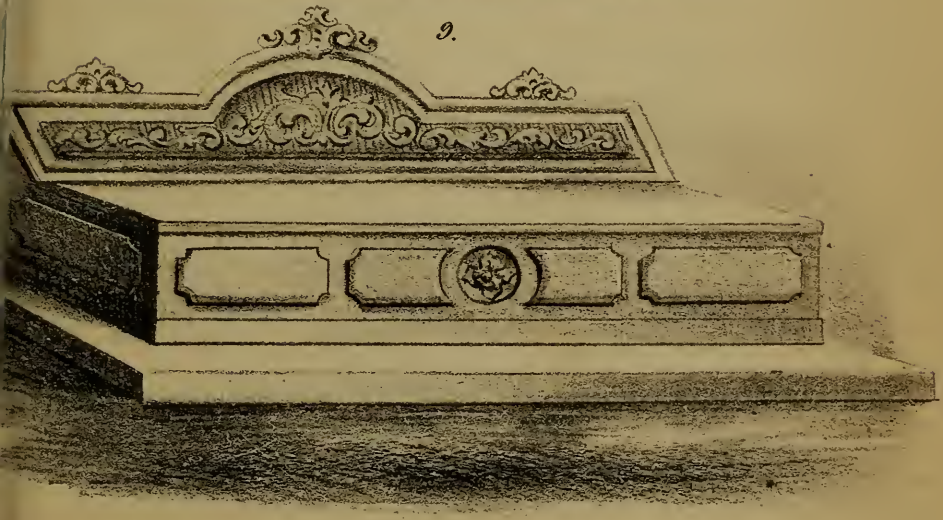
. Lantern used during the procession of the Blessed Sacrament.

7.

8.



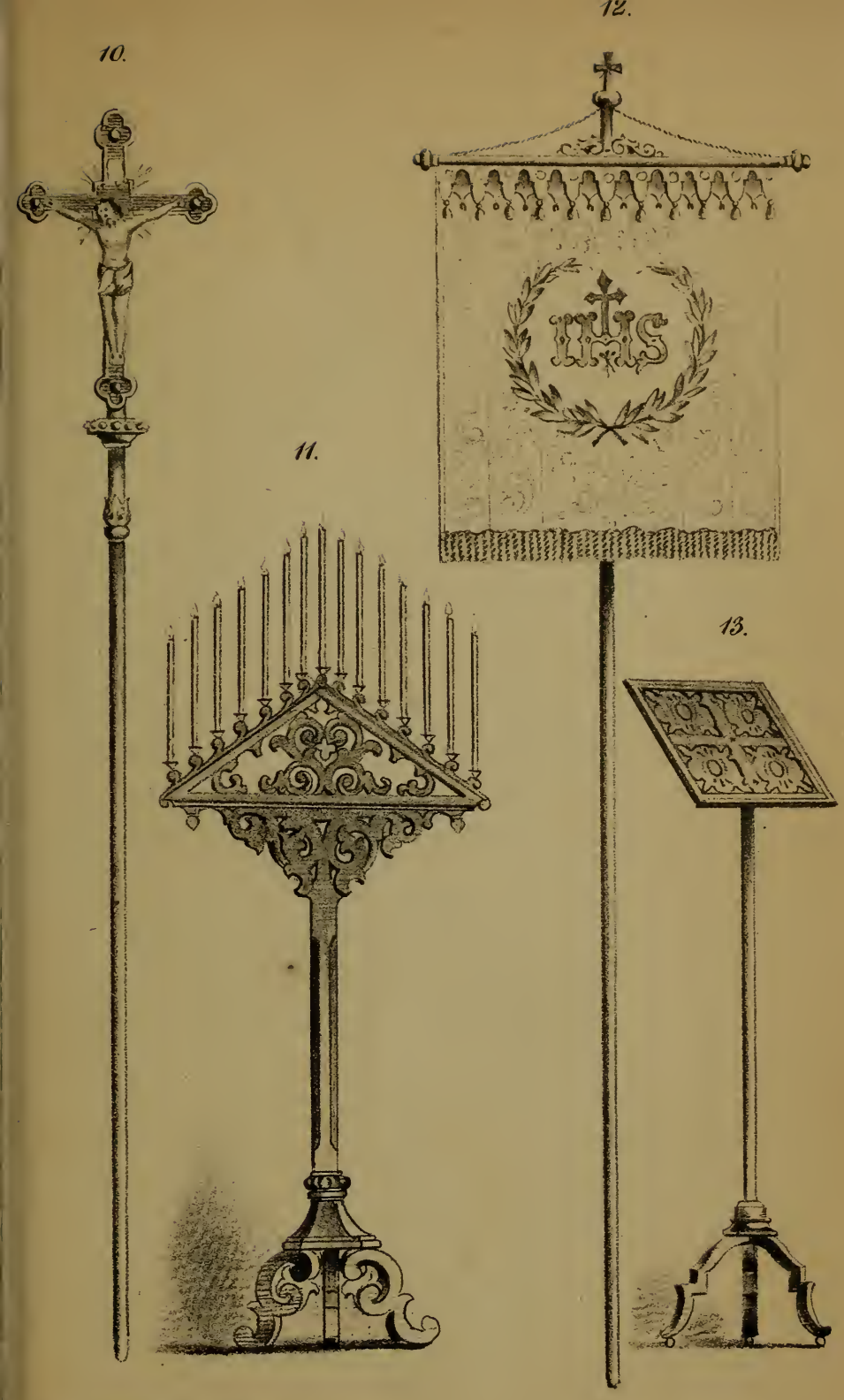
9.



7. Antipendium, or altar veil.

8. Canopy used in the procession of the Blessed Sacrament.

9. Bench for Celebrant, Deacon and Subdeacon.

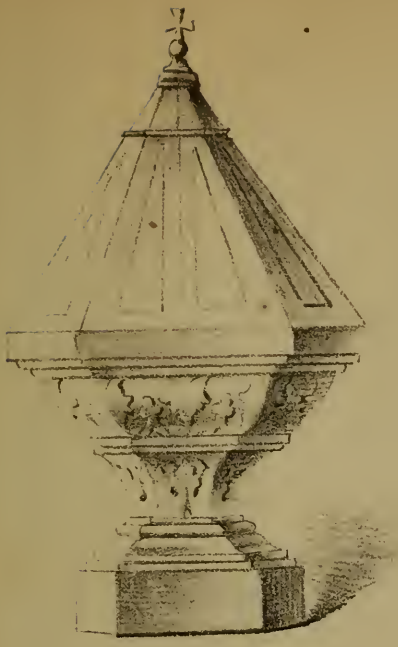


10. Processional Cross.

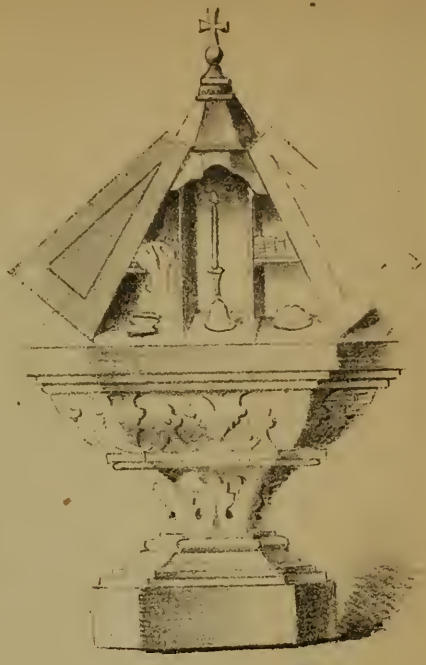
11. Triangle used during the office of Tenebrae.

12. Veil to be placed before the B. Sacrament exposed during a sermon.

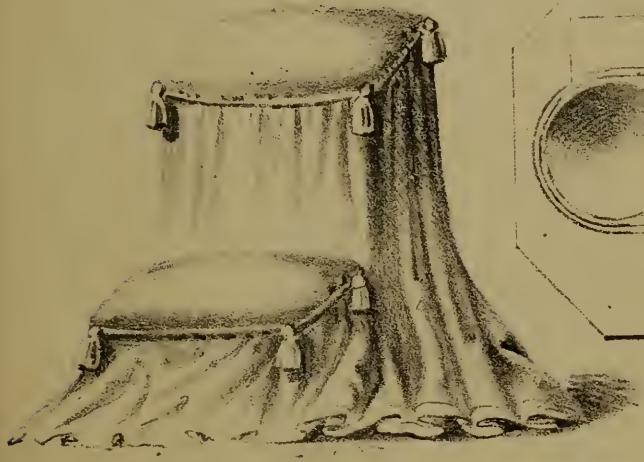
13. Book-stand for the Exultet, Prophecies, or Vespers.

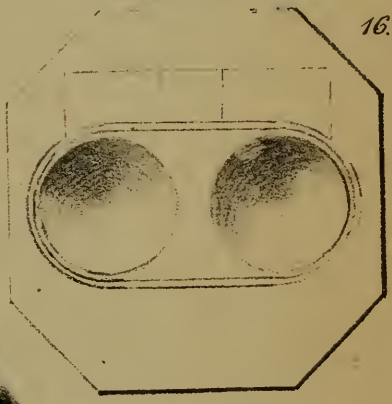


17.



16.



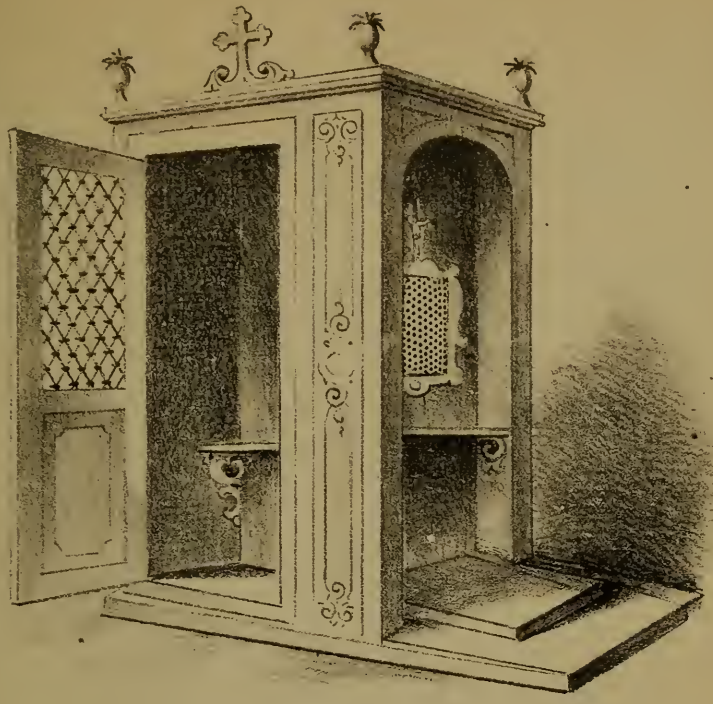


19.

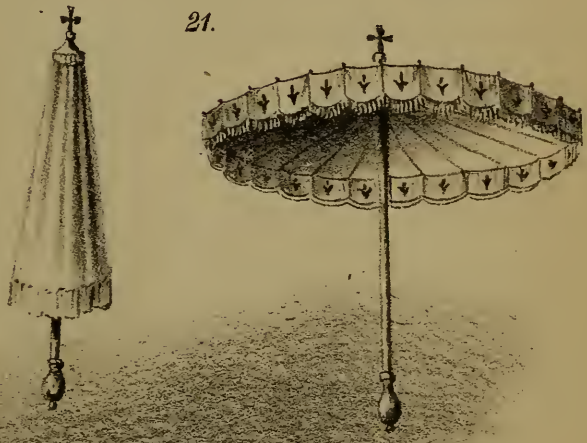
18.

14. Baptismal Font closed, which should be covered with a white silk cloth.
15. A form of a simple Baptismal Font, opened.
16. Horizontal section showing the basin containing baptismal water and the recipient of same when dripping from the head of the Baptized.
17. Kneeling desk covered with green drapery.
18. Clapper used during holy week instead of the little bell.
19. Stool for cope-bearers.

20.

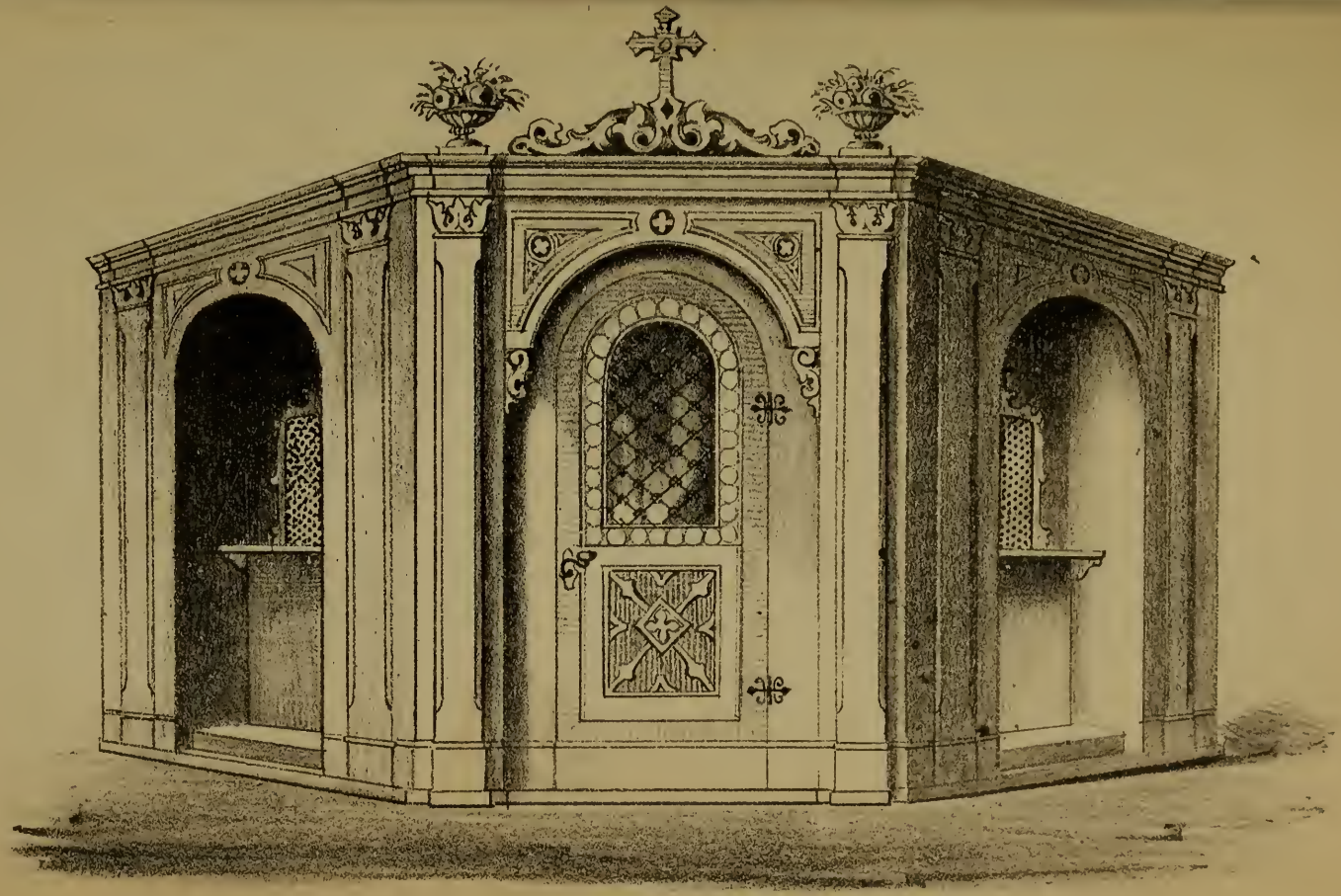


21.



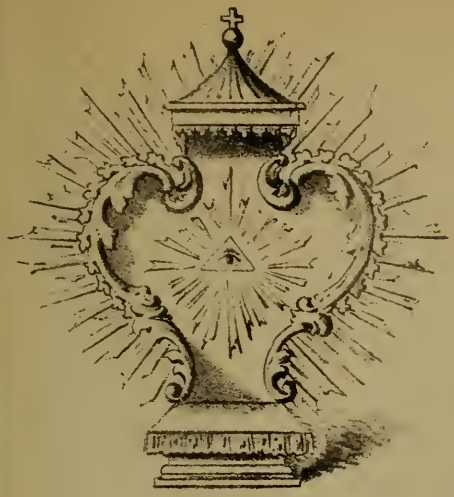
20. Simple Confessional after the model given by St. Charles Borromeo.

21. Umbrellino, closed and opened, used instead of a canopy in transferring the Blessed Sacrament from one altar to another.

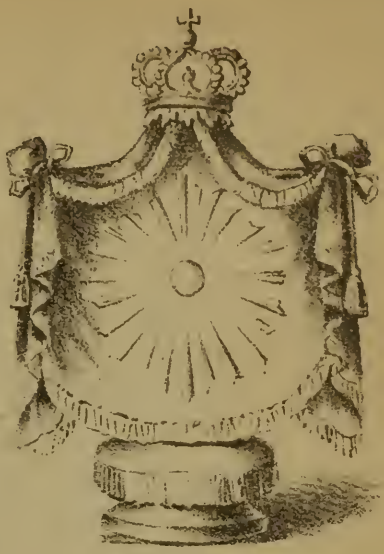


22. Double Confessional.

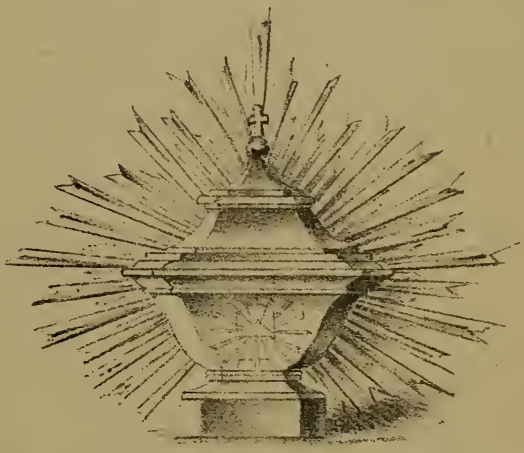
23.



23.

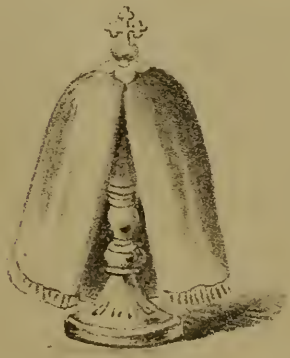


24.



25.

26.



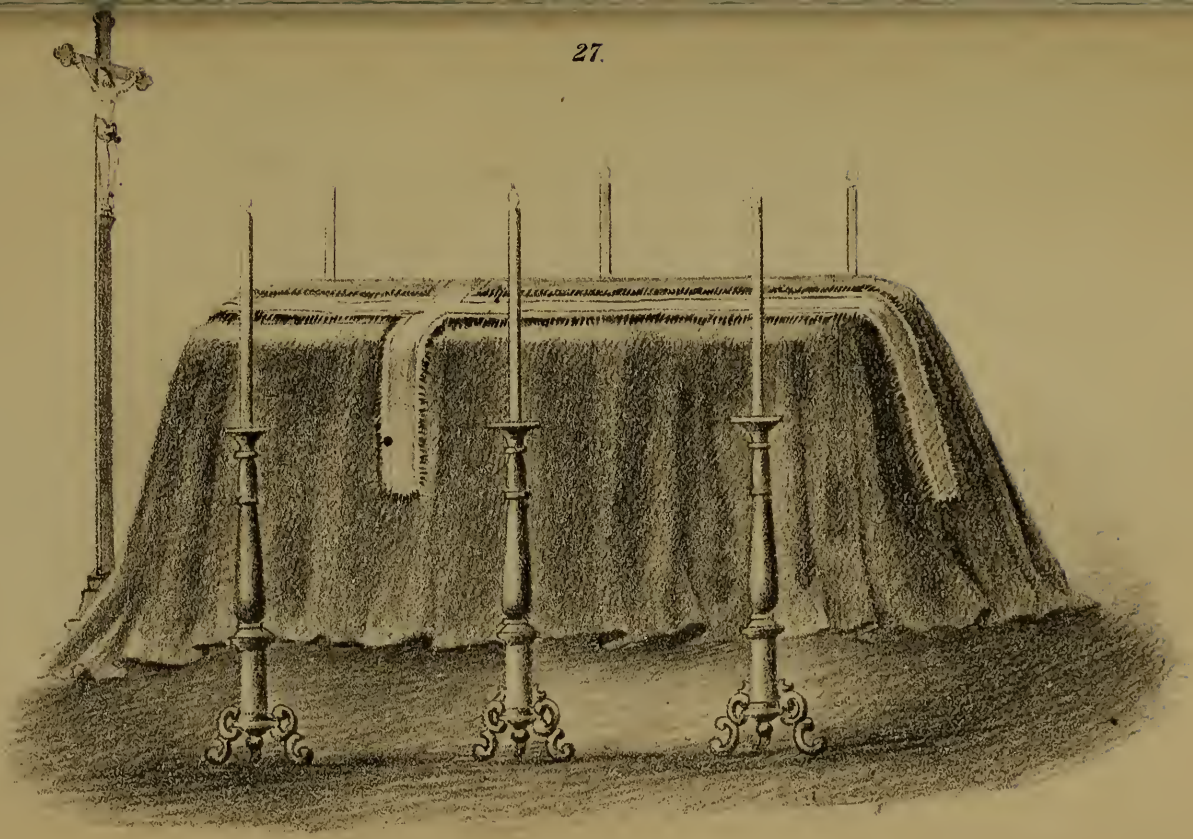
25.

23. Two niches for the exposition of the Blessed Sacrament.

24. Urn wherein to deposit the B. S. in the Chapel of the Repository.

25. Relic-cases.

26. Pyx covered with white silk cloth trimmed with gold or silver fringe.



27. Simple Cenotaph.

691

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Jan. 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 017 339 678 8